



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

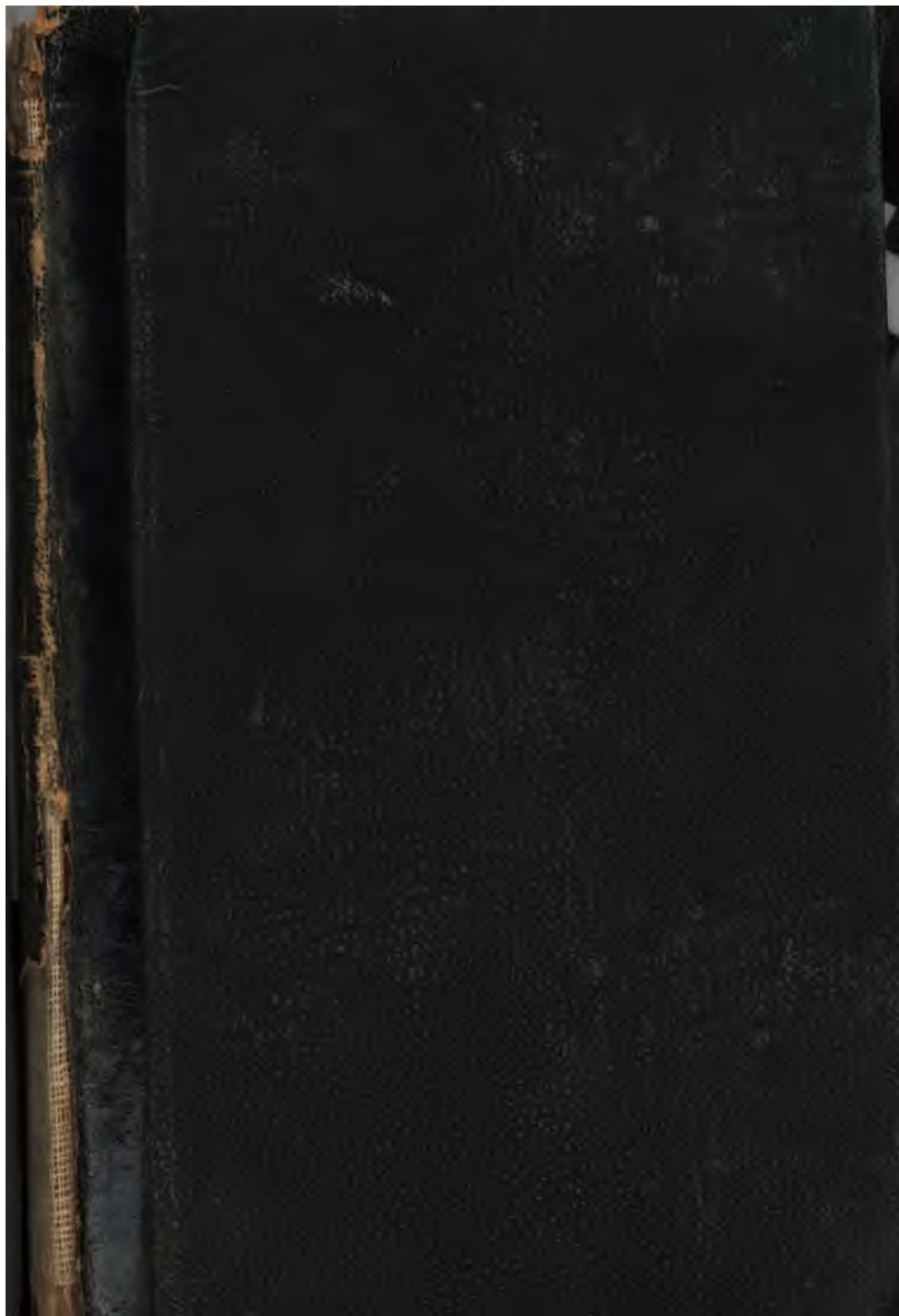
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

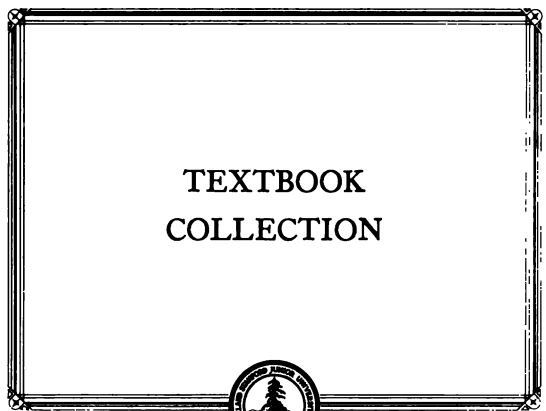
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



*Handwritten notes:*  
 Lizzie. fair. have a care  
 Yours. are. a good brother  
 Love you Medley 2. 1881



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY



TEXTBOOK  
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES

*Handwritten notes:*  
 162  
 162  
 162

ANALYTICAL AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

---

A

# PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

ENGLISH LANGUAGE;

WITH

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

BY

REV. PETER BULLIONS, D.D.,

LATE PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY, AND AUTHOR OF THE SERIES  
OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN, AND ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN, ETC.

REVISED EDITION  
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION  
STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK:

PUBLISHED BY SHELDON AND COMPANY,

498 & 500 BROADWAY.

---

1869.

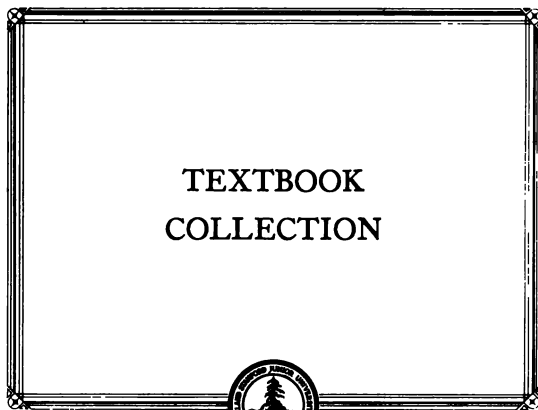


*Handwritten notes in the top left corner, including "Lippi-fair" and "have a care".*

*Lippi-fair. have a care  
 Now, are. ...  
 ...  
 ...*



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
 LIBRARY



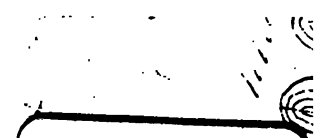
TEXTBOOK  
 COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
 LIBRARIES

*Handwritten notes in the bottom left corner, including "Lippi-fair" and "have a care".*

*Handwritten number "16" in the bottom center.*



ANALYTICAL AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

---

A

# PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

ENGLISH LANGUAGE;

WITH

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

BY

REV. PETER BULLIONS, D.D.,

LATE PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY, AND AUTHOR OF THE SERIES  
OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN, AND ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN, ETC.

REVISED EDITION  
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION  
ILLINOIS AND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK:

PUBLISHED BY SHELDON AND COMPANY,

498 & 500 BROADWAY.

1869.

# LELAND STANFORD JR. UNIVERSITY.

X 472 13

DEC 1 1882

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1862, by  
PETER BULLIONS, D.D.,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Northern  
District of New York.

Entered, according to act of Congress, in the year 1867, by  
EXECUTORS OF PETER BULLIONS,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Northern  
District of New York.

## BULLIONS' SERIES OF GRAMMARS, ETC.

BULLIONS' ENGLISH GRAMMAR, 90 cents.  
BULLIONS' EXERCISES IN ANALYSIS AND PARSING, 25 cents.  
BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR, \$1.50.\* SPENCER'S LATIN LESSONS, \$1.00.\*  
BULLIONS' LATIN READER, \$1.50. BULLIONS' SALLUST, \$1.50.\*  
BULLIONS' EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION, \$1.50.\* KEY TO DO., 80 cents.\*  
BULLIONS' CAESAR (with Vocabulary), \$1.50. BULLIONS' CICERO, \$1.50.\*  
BULLIONS' GREEK LESSONS, \$1.00. BULLIONS' GREEK GRAMMAR, \$1.75.\*  
BULLIONS' GREEK READER, \$2.25.\* COOPER'S VIRGIL, \$2.50.\*  
KALTSCHMIDT'S LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY, \$2.50.\*

### *The new books of Bullions' Series are :*

BULLIONS' COMMON-SCHOOL GRAMMAR (with Analysis), 50 cents.  
BULLIONS' ANALYTICAL AND PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (with complete Analy  
of Sentences), \$1.00.  
BULLIONS' EXERCISES IN ANALYSIS AND COMPOSITION (in preparation), 50 cents.  
BULLIONS AND MORRIS' LATIN LESSONS, \$1.00.  
BULLIONS AND MORRIS' LATIN GRAMMAR, \$1.50.  
BULLIONS AND KENDRICK'S GREEK GRAMMAR, \$2.00.  
BULLIONS' LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, \$4.50.\*  
BAIRD'S CLASSICAL MANUAL, 90 cents.\*  
LONG'S CLASSICAL ATLAS, \$4.50.\*

## THE NORMAL MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

STODDARD'S JUVENILE MENTAL ARITHMETIC, 25 cents.  
STODDARD'S INTELLECTUAL ARITHMETIC, 50 cents.  
STODDARD'S RUDIMENTS OF ARITHMETIC, 50 cents.  
STODDARD'S NEW PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC, \$1.00.  
STODDARD'S COMPLETE ARITHMETIC, \$1.25.\*  
SCHUYLER'S HIGHER ARITHMETIC, \$1.25.\*  
STODDARD AND HENKLE'S ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA, \$1.25.  
STODDARD AND HENKLE'S UNIVERSITY ALGEBRA, \$2.00.  
METHODS OF TEACHING, AND KEY TO INTELLECTUAL ARITHMETIC, 50 cents.\*  
KEY TO STODDARD'S NEW PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC, \$1.00.\*  
KEY TO STODDARD AND HENKLE'S ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA, \$1.25.\*  
KEY TO STODDARD AND HENKLE'S UNIVERSITY ALGEBRA, \$2.00.\*  
KENTLE'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING FRENCH, \$1.75.  
PEISSNER'S ELEMENTS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, \$1.75.  
HOOKER'S HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY, \$1.75. FIRST BOOK, 80 cents.  
WHATELY'S ELEMENTS OF LOGIC, \$1.75.\* ELEMENTS OF RHETORIC, \$1.75.\*  
WAYLAND'S INTELLECTUAL PHILOSOPHY, \$1.75.\*  
BROOKSBY'S ASTRONOMY, \$1.75. PALMER'S BOOK-KEEPING, \$1.00.  
HERSCHEL'S OUTLINES OF ASTRONOMY, \$2.50.\*  
ALDEN'S SCIENCE OF GOVERNMENT, \$1.50. CITIZENS' MANUAL OF DO., 50 cent  
COMSTOCK'S NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, \$1.75. CHEMISTRY, \$1.75.\*  
SOHNITZ'S ANCIENT HISTORY, \$1.75.\* ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY, \$1.75.\*  
SHAW'S OUTLINES OF ENGLISH LITERATURE, \$1.75.\*  
SHAW'S NEW MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE, \$2.00.\*

We furnish to Teachers, postpaid, a copy of any of the above books, not  
annexed, at half price. Those marked with a \* we send on receipt of  
annexed.

## PREFACE.

---

It is now nearly a quarter of a century since the first publication of Dr. Bullions's "Principles of English Grammar." The history of that book, and of the "Analytical and Practical English Grammar" which followed it, has been contemporary with the progress we have made in mastering the principles, laws, and usages of the language itself; and it is safe to say that we are indebted to no one more than to the author of this treatise for the results that have been achieved.

Among the first to discuss the Analysis of Sentences, he has given a clear and succinct statement of the principles relating to this department, and reduced all elements, and even idioms, to a simple, yet comprehensive system.

This treatise is therefore not the work of a day, but the fruit of twenty-five years of intelligent thought, aided by the daily practical experience of the school-room.

In the present revised edition of the "Analytical and Practical English Grammar," the order of subjects, method and classification, which had given the former work such enviable reputation among a large class of our most successful teachers, have been for the most part retained. The language, even, has been generally preserved, and only such changes have been admitted as the present wants of the school-room seem to demand. It is hoped that the few alterations which have been thought necessary will enhance, rather than diminish, the value of the treatise as a text-book of practical grammar.

The most radical departures from the text of the author's edition have been made in the divisions of the verb, and the classification of sentences; yet these present, in point of fact, little else than a change of nomenclature,—the distinctive characteristics, illustrations, and examples being retained.

Tables of the different parts of speech have been given, for the purpose of presenting to the eye of the learner, at one view, the distinctions which are more fully discussed under the separate heads.

Tabular classifications of the analysis of the sentence have been presented, for the sake of greater clearness.

The alterations which have been cautiously admitted in the phraseology of the rules of Syntax will, it is hoped, meet with favour.

The brief divisions of accent and structure of words in the places, pp. 16 and 18, and the fuller discussion in the Appendix can not but enhance the value of the book, and afford facilities for more intimate acquaintance with the integral structure of our language, to many who will have access to no other source of such information.

It is believed that little is omitted that would add value to the treatise as a text-book for general use, whilst much is presented, not found in books of its class, but so tersely and clearly stated, and judiciously arranged, as not to make the volume cumbersome.

As to the general plan and scope of the work, the following, from the author's Preface, is suggestive:—

“The subject of the ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES \* \* \* is here introduced in its proper place, and to an extent in accordance with its importance. Many questions on disputed points have been examined with much care; and something, it is hoped, has been done to contribute to their settlement: and when this required more space than was proper to be taken up in the body of the work, the discussion has been thrown into the Appendix. A variety of exercises has been introduced at every step, with directions for the manner of using them. To every part of speech, an oral exercise of the inductive kind, has been annexed as a specimen of the way in which the mind of the learner may be trained to think and reason on the subject, and prepared to profit more by the exercises that follow.

“By adopting the plan of a running series of numbers to mark the paragraphs, reference from one part to another is rendered more convenient, and is employed wherever it was thought to be profitable.

“In the Syntax, \* \* \* the rules are arranged so that all that belongs to one subject is collected under one head, instead of being scattered in different places; and the proper subordination of part is exhibited in a series of subordinate rules, wherever it was necessary. \* \* \* In the rules and definitions throughout, accuracy, brevity, euphony, and adaptation to the practical operations of the school-room have been particularly attended to. No startling novelties have been introduced; at the same time, where it was thought that a change would be an *improvement*, it has been made.”

*August, 1867.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
<i>Language</i> .....	3
<i>Grammar</i> , DEFINITIONS AND DIVISIONS.....	3

## PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

<i>Letters</i> , DIVISIONS AND POWER OF.....	5
ELEMENTARY SOUNDS.....	6
PHONETIC CLASSIFICATION.....	8
<i>Syllables</i> .....	9
<i>Spelling</i> , RULES FOR.....	11
<i>Capitals</i> , USE OF.....	14
<i>Accent</i> .....	16

## PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

<i>Words</i> , GENERAL DIVISIONS OF.....	17
STRUCTURE OF.....	18
PARSING OF.....	22
<i>Parts of Speech</i> .....	23
<i>Nouns</i> , DEFINITION AND DIVISION OF.....	23
OBSERVATIONS ON.....	24
TABLE OF, AND EXERCISES.....	25
ACCIDENTS OF.....	26
PERSON OF—Observations on.....	27
GENDER OF.....	28
Observations on.....	30
Exercises on.....	31
NUMBER, Definition of.....	32
Plural, Rules for.....	32
Irregular.....	33
Exercises on.....	36
Observations on.....	37
Plural of Proper Names.....	39
CASE OF, General Rules for.....	39, 40
Nominative, Use of.....	39
Construction of.....	100, 211, 213, 219
Possessive, Use of—how formed.....	39
Observations on.....	40
Construction of.....	223
Objective, Use of.....	40
Following Transitive Verbs.....	221
Prepositions.....	224
Without a Governing Word.....	226

<b>Nouns, INFLECTION OF.....</b>	P.
ORAL EXERCISES ON.....	
PARSING OF.....	
EXERCISES ON.....	
<b>Article, DEFINITION AND CLASSES OF.....</b>	
PARSING OF—EXERCISES ON.....	
CONSTRUCTION OF.....	
<b>Adjectives, DEFINITION OF.....</b>	
DIVISION OF.....	
TABLE OF.....	
COMPARISON OF.....	
Rules for.....	
IRREGULAR COMPARISON.....	
NOT COMPARED.....	
PARSING OF.....	
ORAL EXERCISES ON.....	
EXERCISES ON.....	
CONSTRUCTION OF.....	11
<b>Pronouns, DEFINITION AND DIVISION OF.....</b>	1
TABLE OF.....	1
PERSONAL.....	1
Simple.....	6
Declension of.....	6
Observations on.....	6
Compound.....	6
Parsing of, and Oral Exercises on.....	6
Exercises on.....	6
Construction of.....	204
RELATIVE.....	66
Inflection and Use of.....	67
Compound.....	69
Parsing of.....	70
Exercises on.....	71
Construction of.....	209
INTERROGATIVE AND RESPONSIVE.....	72
Parsing of, and Exercises on.....	73
ADJECTIVE, Definition and Division of.....	74
Possessive.....	75
Distributive.....	76
Demonstrative.....	67
Indefinite.....	77
Parsing of, and Exercises on.....	78
Construction of.....	196
<b>Verbs, DEFINITION OF.....</b>	79
CLASSIFICATION OF.....	80
ORAL AND OTHER EXERCISES ON.....	82
FORMATION OF TENSES.....	82
AUXILIARY.....	8
Use of "Shall," "Will," etc.....	8

# CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
<b>Verbs, PARSING OF</b> .....	85
<b>AUXILIARY, Exercises on</b> .....	85
Anomalous Use of.....	89
<b>INFLECTION OF ; ACCIDENTS OF</b> .....	90
<b>VOICE, Active.</b> .....	90
Passive.....	90
<b>MOODS, Division of.</b> .....	93
Indicative.....	93
Potential.....	93
Subjunctive....	94
Construction of.....	287
Imperative.....	95
Infinitive.....	95
Construction of.....	289
<b>TENSES, Division of</b> .....	96
Of the Indicative Mood.....	97-100
Of the Potential Mood.....	100
Of the Subjunctive Mood.....	101
Of the Imperative Mood.....	103
Of the Infinitive Mood.....	103
Construction of.....	289
<b>CONNECTION OF</b> .....	246
<b>PARTICIPLES, Division of.</b> .....	104
In <i>ing</i> in a Passive Sense.....	105
as a Verbal Noun.....	107
Construction of.....	248-246
<b>NUMBER AND PERSON OF</b> .....	107
<b>CONJUGATION OF</b> .....	108
Table of.....	109
Of the Irregular Verb "to be".....	113
Sentences—the Subject.....	116
Of the Regular Verb "to love," Active Voice.....	117
Parsing of.....	118
Oral Exercises and Exercises on....	119
The Objective Case.....	121
Negative Form.....	123
Interrogative Form.....	124
Progressive Form.....	125
<b>PROGRESSIVE FORM, Exercises on</b> .....	125
Passive Voice.....	126
Observations on, Exercises on.....	128, 139
<b>IRREGULAR, List of</b> .....	130
<b>DEFECTIVE</b> .....	136
<b>IMPERSONAL</b> .....	136
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	137
<b>CONSTRUCTION OF</b> .....	215-219
<b>Adverbs, DEFINITION OF</b> .....	138
<b>CLASSIFICATION OF</b> .....	139
<b>CONJUNCTIVE</b> .....	140



<i>Adverbs</i> , FORMATION AND DERIVATION OF.....	1
COMPARISON OF.....	
PARSING OF, AND EXERCISES ON.....	
CONSTRUCTION OF.....	254
<i>Prepositions</i> , DEFINITION.....	
TABLE—LIST.....	
OBSERVATIONS ON.....	
PARSING OF, AND EXERCISES ON.....	
CONSTRUCTION OF.....	
<i>Interjections</i> , DEFINITION AND LIST OF.....	
PARSING.....	
CONSTRUCTION OF.....	
<i>Conjunctions</i> , DEFINITION AND DIVISION OF.....	
<i>Conjunctions</i> , TABLE OF.....	
PARSING OF, AND EXERCISES ON.....	151,
CONSTRUCTION OF.....	
<i>Parsing</i> , DIFFERENT KINDS OF.....	
ETYMOLOGICAL, Method of.....	
Model of.....	
Exercises in.....	156-1

## PART III.—SYNTAX.

<i>Syntax</i> , DEFINITIONS.....	1
<i>Sentences</i> , CLASSIFICATION OF.....	11
ELEMENTS OF.....	11
ANALYSIS OF.....	16
A SINGLE SENTENCE, Its Parts.....	16
Observations on.....	16
Subject of.....	17
Modifications of.....	17
Of Modifying Words.....	174
Predicate of.....	174
Modifications of.....	175
Limiting Clauses.....	177
COMPOUND, Definition of.....	180
Members, Connection of.....	181
ANALYSIS, Directions for.....	182
Models of.....	183
Exercises in.....	187
CONSTRUCTION OF—General Principles.....	188
<i>Syntax</i> , PARTS OF.....	189
RULES OF.....	190-193

## RULES.

<i>Rule I.</i> —SUBSTANTIVES IN APPPOSITION.....	193
<i>Rule II.</i> —ADJECTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.....	196
Comparatives and Superlatives.....	198

# CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE.
<i>Rule III.</i> —ARTICLE AND ITS NOUN.....	201
<i>Rule IV.</i> —PRONOUN AND ITS ANTECEDENT—Special Rules.....	206
<i>Rule V.</i> —Relative and its Antecedent.....	209
<i>Rule VI.</i> —THE SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE.....	211
<i>Rule VII.</i> —THE NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE or Independent.....	213
Special Rules for.....	213
<i>Rule VIII.</i> —THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.....	214
Special Rules for.....	215
<i>Rule IX.</i> —THE PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.....	219
<i>Rule X.</i> —THE OBJECT AFTER TRANSITIVE VERBS.....	221
Special Rules.....	221
<i>Rule XI.</i> —THE OBJECTIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.....	224
<i>Rule XII.</i> —PREPOSITIONS AFTER CERTAIN WORDS.....	228
<i>Rule XIII.</i> —POSSESSIVE LIMITING SUBSTANTIVES.....	232
<i>Rule XIV.</i> —SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.....	237
<i>Rule XV.</i> —INFINITIVE MOOD.....	239
Special Rules.....	239
<i>Rule XVI.</i> —PARTICIPLES.....	242
Special Rules.....	243
<i>Rule XVII.</i> —CONNECTION OF TENSES.....	246
<i>Rule XVIII.</i> —ADVERBS—Special Rules.....	249-251
<i>Rule XIX.</i> —CONJUNCTIONS.....	253
Special Rules.....	254
<i>Rule XX.</i> —INTERJECTIONS.....	258
<i>General Rule.</i> .....	258
<i>Ellipsis.</i> —WHEN ADMISSIBLE.....	260
WHEN NOT ADMISSIBLE.....	262
<i>Parsing,</i> SYNTACTICAL, Definition of, Model of.....	263
<i>Exercises,</i> PROMISCUOUS, on Rules of Syntax.....	266-269
<i>Improper Expressions,</i> LIST OF.....	269, 270
<i>Punctuation.</i> .....	270
COMMA, Rules for.....	271
SEMICOLON, Rules for.....	273
COLON, Rules for.....	274
PERIOD.....	275
INTERROGATION.....	275
OTHER MARKS USED IN WRITING.....	276, 277
<i>Figures,</i> DIFFERENT KINDS OF.....	277
OF ETYMOLOGY.....	278
OF SYNTAX.....	278
OF RHETORIC.....	279
PORTIO LICENSÆ.....	281-283

## PART IV.—PROSODY.

<i>Prosody,</i> DIVISION OF.....	284
ELOCUTION.....	284
VERSIFICATION.....	285

<i>Prosody, Versification, Feet</i> .....	
Poetic Pauses.....	
<i>Composition</i> .....	
THE USE OF GRAMMAR IN COMPOSITION.....	
THE LAW OF LANGUAGE.....	
Rules for.....	296
HINTS FOR CORRECT AND ELEGANT WRITING.....	
THEMES FOR COMPOSITION.....	
<i>Appendix,</i>	
I.—SUFFIXES.....	
II.—GENDER OF NOUNS.....	
III.—THE PRONOUNS, MINE, THINE, ETC.....	
IV.—“WHAT,” AS A RELATIVE.....	
V.—“AS” AS A RELATIVE.....	
VI.—ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.....	
VII.—THE VERB.....	
VIII.—DIVISION OF VERBS.....	
IX.—PASSIVE PARTICIPLE. ANALYSIS OF THE VERB.....	
X.—FIRST AND SECOND.....	3
XI.—TWO FIRST, THREE LAST, ETC.....	3
XII.—ABBREVIATIONS.....	3
XIII.—FOREIGN WORDS.....	3

## INTRODUCTION.

---

BEFORE a text-book is put into the hands of the pupil, he is already in practical possession of the elements of his mother-tongue. Grammar should supplement this practical knowledge, by reducing it to fixed laws; classifying its elements, and establishing canons of criticism for the preservation of the purity of its forms, and giving power and elegance to expression.

A series of preparatory exercises in a simple, and, at the first, somewhat informal, manner, both in the discussion of the meaning and use of words in familiar sentences, and in the construction of such sentences, will be found of incalculable value, as tending to awaken a definite interest in mastering the successive steps of the science. These exercises should develop at least—

*I. The meanings and uses of the “construction-words” of the language, as—*

1. Such verbs as *do, be, have, may, can, shall*, etc., that are so closely connected with our existence, our experiences of the external world, and our modes of thought and speech in regard thereto. The words of this class have a conventional use, not for themselves, but chiefly as aids in expressing the relations of ideas represented by other words. Thus, in the expression, “Grass is green,” the use of *is* is not to express existence, for that is assumed, but to indicate relation. So, *do* means to *act*, and it is hence used to strengthen or give emphasis to the expression of another act; as, “I *do* desire.” *Have* means to *possess, own*, etc., and in some sense, it never loses this force, even as an “auxiliary.” [See discussion of the auxiliaries, 329, *et seq.*]

2. The *meaning and force of connectives*; as—

(1) *Conjunctions*.—*And* means *added, in addition to; but, separation*, and the like.

(2) *Prepositions*, or words that relate by expressing a limitation; as—“The book is *on* the table.”—“The book is *under* the table.”—“The book is *beside* the table.”—“He went *to* the house, *from* the house, *into* the house,” etc.

In the same grammatical structure, the force of the phrase depends upon the *meaning of the particles on, under, beside*, etc.

*II. The Nature of the Sentence.*—Grammatical distinctions, of words merely, are of little account, save as they lead to correct forms of speech in accordance with the laws of language.

1. It may be readily shown by simple illustration—

(1.) That every *word* is the *sign* of an *idea*.

(2.) That *related ideas* are expressed by *related words*.

(3.) That a *judgment* of the mind may be put into the form *proposition*, and that such proposition is expressed by a *sentence*.

Every sentence consists of two parts—(1.) The word or phrase names the *subject* of thought; (2.) The word or form of words *affirms* or tells something of the subject; and this is a *universal*

After a clear exemplification of this by a sufficient number of samples, the pupils may have practical exercises in framing sentence second parts for given first parts; and first parts of which given second parts may be predicated.

2. It will be found of interest, not only as leading to a more correct understanding of the use of language, but as a preparation for classification of verbs, to show the *three forms of sentence* the nature and use of their principal verbs, thus—

(a.) "Horses eat grass."—(b.) "Birds fly."—(c.) "Sugar is sweet."

In the first of these, the *meaning* of the affirming verb is that the act can not be done without involving the existence of a person or thing as *receiving it*.

In the second, the *meaning is satisfied* by naming the act and the act.

In the third, the chief office of the verb is to *connect an attribute*, expressing some quality or circumstance of the *subject*.  
Syntax, Classification of Sentences.

**III. The relation of words** in a phrase or sentence for the order of the relation of the ideas which they express.

1. Words may be united *without any sign*; as, good horse runs.

2. In a few instances the *inflection* is the *sign of relation* as children's shoes.

3. When words have no natural relation, they may be put in relation by *another word*; as, "love of country," "grass is green," "John and James study," etc. At the proper time, a classification may be made of these distinctions.

**IV.** It should always be borne in mind, that, in order to the intelligent study of Grammar, whose office it is to teach "to speak and write correctly," pupils must be constantly exercised in this practice, that the principles which the Grammar teaches may be practically exemplified, and power be gained in their application.

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

---

**1. Language** is the means by which we express our thoughts.

**2. Grammar** treats of the laws of language, and the right method of using it.

*Grammar* is both a *Science* and an *Art*.

As a *Science*, it investigates the principles of language in general: as an *Art*, it teaches the right method of applying these principles to a particular language, so as thereby to express our thoughts in a correct and proper manner, according to established usage.

**3. English Grammar** is the art of speaking and writing the English language with propriety.

**4. Language** is either spoken or written.

**5.** The elements of spoken language, are *vocal* and *articulate sounds*. (25 and 26).

**6.** The elements of written language are *characters* or *letters* which represent these sounds.

**7. Letters** are formed into syllables and words: *words* into sentences; and by these, properly uttered or written, men communicate their thoughts to one another.

**8. Grammar** is divided into four parts: *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

**9. Orthography** treats of letters and syllables; *Etymology*, of words; *Syntax*, of sentences; *Prosody*, of elocution and versification.

## PART I.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

---

**10.** *Orthography* treats of letters, and of the mode of combining them into syllables and words.

**11.** A *Letter* is a mark, or character, used to represent an elementary sound of the human voice.

**12.** There are *Twenty-six* letters in the English Alphabet.

**13.** Letters are either *Vowels* or *Consonants*.

**14.** A *Vowel* is a letter which represents an unobstructed sound (25); and, in a word or syllable, may be sounded alone. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *w* and *y* not before a vowel sounded in the same syllable, as in *law, bay*.

**15.** A *Consonant* is a letter which represents an obstructed sound (26); and, in a word or syllable, is never sounded alone, always in connection with a vowel. The consonants are *b, c, d, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*, and *w* and *y* before a vowel sounded in the same syllable, as in *war, youth*.

[Properly speaking, *w* and *y* are always vowels, and represent respectively the sounds of *oo* and *é*, as *wish* (*oo-ish*), *yet* (*é-et*). They are sometimes called *coalescents*].

**16.** A *Diphthong* is the union of two vowels in one sound, as *oi*, in *oil*; *ou*, in *found*.

**17.** When a letter in a word is not used in pronunciation, it is called a *Silent* letter, as *h* in *hour*; *a* in *bread*; *e* in *mate*.

---

\* Orthography is properly a part of Grammar, as it belongs to "the art of speaking and writing a language with propriety." As the whole subject is treated more fully in the spelling-book dictionary, a brief synopsis of its principles only is here given, rather as a matter of *form*, than with a view to its being particularly studied at this stage. The teacher may therefore, if he thinks proper, begin with PART I. for the present, and begin with PART II.

18. A union of two vowels in the same syllable, only one of which is sounded, is called a digraph, and sometimes, an improper diphthong, as *oa* in *boat*; *ou* in *court*.

19. A *Triphthong* is the union of three vowels in one sound, as *eau* in *beauty*.

## The Powers of Letters.

20. In analyzing words into their elementary sounds, it is necessary to distinguish between the *name* of a letter and its *power*.

21. The *name* of a letter is that by which it is usually called; as *A*, *bē*, *sē*, *dē*, etc.

22. The *power* of a letter is the effect which it has, either by itself, or combined with other letters, in forming a word or syllable.

23. Each of the vowels has several powers. Several letters have the same power; and certain powers or elements of words are represented by a combination of two letters.

24. The elementary powers or sounds in the English language are about *forty-three*, and are primarily divided into *unobstructed sounds* or *Vocals*, represented by vowels and diphthongs; and *obstructed sounds* (*Subvocals* and *Aspirates*), represented by consonants, single or combined.

25. *Vocals* or tonics are unobstructed sounds produced by the organs of voice, with the mouth more or less open, and with no change, or but slight change, of position in the organs of speech.

26. *Subvocals* or subtonics are sounds produced by the organs of voice, obstructed or modified by certain changes in the position of the organs of speech.

27. *Aspirates* or atonics are mere whispering sounds without vocality, but which still have an audible effect in the enunciation of words. They are all obstructed except *h*.

28. The elementary powers of letters can not be exhibited to the eye, but must be learned from the living voice.

29. The *name* of a vowel is always one of its powers (except *u* and *y*), and if from the name of a consonant, we take away the vowel sound, what remains is generally the power of that consonant.

30. A full view of the elementary powers of letters in the forms



tion of words, is exhibited in the following table. In the ~~two~~ annexed as examples, the letter whose power is indicated is printed in *Italic*. By pronouncing the word distinctly, and then leaving out but the power of the *Italic* letter, and uttering that alone, we show the power of that letter.

### 31. Elementary Sounds in the English Language

TABLE I.

VOCALS.		SUBVOCALS.		ASPIRATES.	
A.	<i>ale, able.*</i>	B.	<i>bat, orb.</i>	F.	<i>fix.</i>
A.	<i>art.</i>	D.	<i>do, did.</i>	H.	<i>hat.</i>
A.	<i>all.</i>	G.	<i>gone, dog.</i>	K.	<i>keep, bo</i>
A.	<i>at.</i>	J.	<i>fudge.</i>	P.	<i>pen, top</i>
A.	<i>ask.</i>	L.	<i>lie.</i>	S.	<i>sun.</i>
E.	<i>me.</i>	M.	<i>man.</i>	T.	<i>top, bal.</i>
E.	<i>met, egg.</i>	N.	<i>no.</i>	Th.	<i>faith.</i>
I.	<i>ire.</i>	NG.	<i>ring.</i>	Sh.	<i>show.</i>
I.	<i>in.</i>	R.	<i>far.</i>	Ch.	<i>chide.</i>
O.	<i>old.</i>	R.†	<i>rope.</i>	Wh.‡	<i>when.</i>
O.	<i>move, ooze.</i>	Th.	<i>this.</i>	.	
O.	<i>odd.</i>	V.	<i>van.</i>		
U.	<i>tune, use.</i>	Z.	<i>zinc.</i>		
U.	<i>up.</i>	Z.	<i>azure.</i>		
U.	<i>full.</i>				
Oi.	<i>oil.</i>				
Ou.	<i>thou.</i>				
W.	<i>we.</i>				
Y.	<i>yes.</i>				

The following analysis exhibits the nature of the different so  
1. Classified by the ear; 2d. By the position of the organs in for  
them.

\* Some make *a* in *care* a distinct element. It is only long *a* followed by the *r* following.

† R before a vowel has a hard or trilling sound; as, *rat*, *re* after a vowel, a soft and liquid sound; as, *arm*, *far*.

‡ *Wh* is a combined sound, nearly equivalent to *h-ss*, and is placed here only for convenience.

1. There are two general classes, *unobstructed* and *obstructed* sounds.

The Unobstructed Sounds are	SIMPLE, . . .	Long, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} oo \text{ in mood.} \\ o \text{ in go.} \\ e \text{ in me.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \text{ in late.} \\ ah \text{ in father.} \\ aw \text{ in fall.} \end{array} \right.$
		Medial, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \text{ in grass.} \\ e \text{ in her.} \end{array} \right.$	
		Short, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} oo \text{ in book.} \\ i \text{ in tin.} \\ e \text{ in met.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \text{ in fat.} \\ u \text{ in tub.} \\ o \text{ in not.} \end{array} \right.$
		Coalescent,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} w \text{ in wish.} \\ y \text{ in yet.} \end{array} \right.$	
		Whispered,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} h \text{ in hat.} \end{array} \right.$	
	SERIAL, . . .	Open, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ou \text{ in out.} \\ oi \text{ in oil.} \end{array} \right.$	
		Close, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} u \text{ in tube.} \\ i \text{ in fine.} \end{array} \right.$	
	EXPLODENT,	Mutes, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} p \text{ in pin.} \\ t \text{ in time.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ch \text{ in church.} \\ k \text{ in king.} \end{array} \right.$
		Sonants,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} b \text{ in bad, tub.} \\ d \text{ in do.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} j \text{ in joy.} \\ g \text{ in go.} \end{array} \right.$
		Hisses, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} r \text{ in fan, life.} \\ th \text{ in think.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} s \text{ in sin.} \\ sh \text{ in show.} \end{array} \right.$
		Buzzes, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} v \text{ in vine.} \\ th \text{ in the.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} z \text{ in zone.} \\ zh \text{ in azure.} \end{array} \right.$
The Obstructed Sounds are	CONTINUANT,	Liquids, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} l \text{ in life.} \\ r \text{ in rich.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} r \text{ in far.} \end{array} \right.$
		Trill, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} r \text{ in rich.} \end{array} \right.$	
		Nasals, . . .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} m \text{ in man.} \\ n \text{ in no.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ng \text{ in sing.} \end{array} \right.$

2. The *organs* chiefly employed in the formation of sounds are the lips, tongue, teeth, gums, palate, and throat. It is impossible perfectly to separate the functions of these organs, but an approximate reference of the sounds is made in the table subjoined.

REMARK.—The ordinary distribution of long and short vowels in English is arbitrary; for it must be noticed that short *i* is not the

short sound of long *i*, but rather of long *e*. The corresponding and short sounds are those made with the organs in the same positions, as indicated in Table II.

TABLE II.

*Phonetic Classification.*

		Lips		Tongue, Teeth, Gums.		Hard Palate.
Elementary Sounds.	UNOBSTRUCTED	SIMPLE	Long . .	oo o e a ah		
			Medial . .	e a		
			Short . .	oo i e a i		
			Coalescent .	w y		
			Whispered			
		SERIAL	Open . .		ou	
			Close . .		u i	
	OBSTRUCTED	EXPLOD- ENT	Mutes . .	p t ch		
			Sonants . .	b d j		
		CONTIN- UANT	Hisses . .	f th s sh		
			Buzzes . .	v th x zh		
			Liquids . .	l	r	
			Trill . .		r	
			Nasals . .	m	n ng	

**32.** Certain letters in the English Alphabet have no power their own, but represent the sound of others in the preceding tab and may therefore be called *Equivalents*. Equivalents of vowels and diphthongs are numerous.

**33.** Of the Subvocals and Aspirates, eight pairs are *Correlatives*. In sounding the first of any of these pairs, the organs of voice

\*The *Organs of Voice* are those parts (called by physiologists the larynx and its appendages) which are employed in the production of simple vocal sounds.

The *Organs of Speech* are those parts employed to obstruct modify whispering or vocal sounds. These are the tongue, lips, teeth, gums, palate, and throat.

and speech are in the same position as in sounding its fellow, but the first, or subvocal, has vocality ; the second, or aspirate, has not.

**34. *Equivalents and Correlatives.***

TABLE III.

EQUIVALENTS.		CORRELATIVES.	
		<i>Subvocals.</i>	<i>Aspirates.</i>
W	=u cow, mew.	V. vow.	F. fame.
Y	=i tyrant, system.	G. gone.	K. keep.
C hard	=k cat.	B. bat.	P. pen.
Q	=k liquor.	Z. zinc.	S. sin.
C soft	=s cent.	D. do.	T. top.
G soft	=j gin.	Th. this.	Th. thick.
X	=ks fix.	Z. azure.	Sh. show.
		J. judge.	Ch. chide.

**35.** The elementary sounds of the human voice, sometimes simple, but more commonly combined, are formed into *Syllables* and *Words*.

## Syllables.

**36.** A *Syllable* is represented, in written language, by a letter or combination of letters uttered by one impulse of the voice, as *farm*, *farm-er*, *ea-gle*, *a-e-ri-al*.

**37.** Every word contains as many syllables as it has distinct vocal sounds, as *gram-ma-ri-an*.

**38.** A word of one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*.

**39.** A word of two syllables is called a *Dissyllable*.

**40.** A word of three syllables is called a *Trisyllable*.

**41.** A word of more than three syllables is called a *Polysyllable*.

*Division of Words into Syllables.*

**42.** The division of words into syllables is called *Syllabication*.

## GENERAL RULE.

**43.** Place together in distinct syllables, those letters which up the separate parts or divisions of a word, as heard in its pronunciation.

**44.** The only definite rules of much value on this subject are following:—

**45. Rule 1.** Two or more consonants forming but one element sound, are never separated; such as, *ch, tch, th, sh, ng, ph, w* silent, or sounding *f, lk* sounding *k*, etc.; as, *church-es, watch-es, thy, fish-es, sing-ing, philoso-phy, sigh-ing, cough-ing, walk-ing*.

**46. Rule 2.** The terminations, *cean, cian, ceous, cious, cial, tious, tial, geon, gian, geous, stion*, are hardly ever divided; as *gracious, nation, courageous*, etc.

**47. Rule 3.** Compound words are divided into their simple parts, as, *rail-road, bee-hive, hope-less, thank-ful*, etc.

**48. Rule 4.** The terminations of words, when they form a syllable, are usually separated from their roots; as *writ-er, tea, think-ing, cold-er, old-est*.

**49.** Two separate words combined as one name, are usually separated by a hyphen; as, *glass-house, bee-hive*.

To this rule, according to modern usage, there are some exceptions.

**50.** In writing, a word of more than one syllable may be divided at the end of a line, but a monosyllable or a syllable, never.

## Spelling.

**51. Spelling** is the art of expressing a word by its proper letters.

**52.** The Orthography of the English language is so anomalous and in many cases arbitrary, that proficiency in it can be acquired only by practice, and the use of the spelling-book or dictionary. The following rules are of a general character, though even to these there may be a few exceptions:—

*General Rules for Spelling Words.*

RULE I.

53. Monosyllables ending with *f*, *l*, or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant; as, *staff*, *mill*, *pass*.

54. *Exceptions*.—Of, if, as, is, has, was, his, gas, yes, this, us, thus, pus.

RULE II.

55. Words ending with any consonant except *f*, *l*, or *s*, do not double the final letter; as, *sit*, *not*, *up*, *put*, *that*, *in*.

56. *Exceptions*.—Add, bunn, butt, buzz, ebb, egg, err, inn, odd, purr.

RULE III.

57.—1. Words ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *i* before an additional letter or syllable; as, *spy*, *spies*; *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*; *carry*, *carrier*, *carried*; *fancy*, *fanciful*.

58. *Exception* 1. But *y* is not changed before *ing*; as, *deny*, *denying*.

59.—2. Words ending in *y* preceded by a vowel, retain the *y* unchanged; as, *boy*, *boys*, *boyish*, *boyhood*.

*Exception* 3. But *lay*, *pay*, *say*, make *laid*, *paid*, *said*; and *day* makes *daily*.

RULE IV.

60. Monosyllables and words accented on the last syllable, ending with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double that consonant before an additional syllable beginning with a vowel; as, *rob*, *robber*; *admit*, *admittance*, *admitted*.

*Exception*.—But *x* and *h* are never doubled.

61. But when a diphthong or a double vowel precedes, or the accent is *not* on the last syllable, the consonant is

not doubled; as *boil, boiling, boiler*; *wool, woollen*; *foolish*; *visit, visited*.

**62. Exceptions.**—In about fifty words ending in *l* with a *v* before it, and not accented on the last syllable, many writers, trary to analogy and without necessity, double the *l* improper before an additional syllable. These are such words as *travel, teller, travelling, travelled*.\*

**63.** So also *s* and *p* are generally, though improperly, doubled *bias, worship, and kidnap*; as *biassing, worshipper, kidnappi* Webster, and many writers following him, in these words conform the general rule.

#### RULE V.

**64.** Silent *e* is preserved before the terminations, *men less, ly, and ful*; as, *paleness, peaceful, abatement, etc.*

**65. Exceptions.** Duly, truly, awful, and, generally, judgment, s knowledgment, lodgment, abridgment, are excepted. Argumen from the Latin *argumentum*, is not an exception.

#### RULE VI.

**66.** Silent *e* is omitted before terminations beginning with a vowel; as, *slave, slavish*; *cure, curable*; *sense, sensible*; *lodge, lodging*; *love, lovest*.

**67.** *Blame, move, reprove, sale*, and their compounds, sometimes, though improperly, retain *e* before *able*; as, *blameable, etc.*

**68.** But words ending in *ge* and *ce* retain *e* before *able*, in order to preserve the soft sound of *g* and *c*; as, *changeable, peaceable, etc.* For the same reason we have *singeing* and *swingeing*: *dye* has *dyeing*, to distinguish it from *dying*. So also words ending with *c* hard insert *k* before a syllable beginning with *e* or *i* to preserve the hard sound; as, *frolic, frolicked, frolicking*.

---

\* The words referred to are the following: Apparel, bevel, bowel, cancel, carol, cavil, channel, chisel, counsel, cudgel, dishevel, drivell, duel, embowel, enamel, empanel, equal, gambol, gravel, grovel, handsel, hatchel, imperil, jewel, kennel, label, level, libel, marshal, marvel, model, panel, parcel, pencil, peril, pistol, pommel, quarrel, ravel, revel, rival, rowel, shovel, shrivel, snivel, tassel, ~~trammel~~, travel, tunnel, unravel.

69. The letters *ie* at the end of a word, are changed into *y* before *ing* ; as, *die, dying ; lie, lying*.

RULE VII.

70. Words ending with *double l* drop one *l* before the terminations *less* and *ly*, to prevent trebling ; as, *skill-skilless ; full, fully* ; and some writers before *ness* and *ful* ; as, *fulness, skilful*.

71. But words ending in any other double letter preserve the letter double before *less, ly, ness, and full* ; as, *harmlessly, stiffly, gruffness, etc.*

RULE VIII.

72. Simple words ending in *double l*, when joined to other words, generally drop one *l* when they lose the accent ; as, *awful, hopeful, handful, careful, already*.

73. But when they are under the accent, the *double l* should be retained ; as, *fulfill, willful, recall, foretell*. But, *until, welcome, always, also, withal, therewithal, wherewithal*, have single *l*.

74. In words under this rule, however, usage is far from uniform : *fulfl* and *fulfull* ; *willful* and *wilful* ; *recal* and *recall* ; *foretel* and *foretell*, and similar varieties are common.

75. Other compounded words are generally spelled in the same manner as the simple words of which they are formed ; as, *glass-house, millwright, thereby*.

76. Many words in English admit of two or more different modes of spelling ; as, *connection, connexion ; enquire, inquire ; chemistry, chymistry* ; etc. In such cases, prevailing usage and analogy must be our guides.

The orthography of *primitive* words of Saxon origin—the root words of our language—can be learned only from the spelling-book or dictionary ; yet even in regard to them, there are certain modes of classification by which the intelligent teacher will much facilitate their mastery by the pupil.



## Capital Letters.

77. The letters commonly used in printing are distinguished and represented as follows:—

- (1.) CAPITAL LETTERS.
- (2.) SMALL CAPITALS.
- (3.) *Italic letters.*
- (4.) Lowercase (small letters).

Formerly, every noun began with a capital letter both in writing and in printing; and in the German language this usage is still retained: but at present, only the following words begin with capital letters:—

1. The first word of every book, chapter, letter, note, or any other piece of writing.

2. The first word after a period; also, after a mark of interrogation or exclamation, when the sentence before and the one after it, are independent of each other. (585).

But if several interrogatory or exclamatory sentences are so connected, that the latter sentences depend on the former, all of them except the first, may begin with a small letter “How doth the city sit solitary that was full of people! *how* are her habitations become as desolate! *how* is she become as a widow! (589).

3. Proper names, titles of office or honor; as, *George Washington, General Jackson, Judge Story, Sir Walter Scott, America, the Ohio, Sheldon & Co., New York.*

Also, when the title is used without the proper name, it is customary to use the capital; as, “O *King*, live forever!” But when such words are used as common nouns, or adjectives, they commence with small letters; as, “The *king*, and the *lords*, and the *people*.”

Names of the months, and of the days of the week, etc., begin with capitals. East, West, South, etc., when used to denote a *district of country, or its people*, commence with capitals; as, “The West is rapidly increasing in population;” but when used to indicate *direction*, they commence with a small letter; as, “Buffalo is west from Albany.”

The words river, lake, bay, etc., used as common nouns, commence with small letters; as, "There are many beautiful lakes and navigable rivers," etc., but when joined with a proper name, designating an individual, a capital is generally used; as, "The Ohio River, Great Salt Lake," etc.

4. The pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*, are written in capitals.

5. The first word of every line of poetry; as—

"Hark! how the sacred calm that breathes around  
Bids every fierce, tumultuous passion cease;  
In still, small accents whispering from the ground,  
A grateful earnest of eternal peace."

6. The appellations of the Deity; as, *God*, *Most High*, *he Almighty*, the *Supreme Being*, etc.; also, the personal pronouns thou and he, when standing for his name; as, "Praise Him, all ye people!" But when such words are used in a general sense, they commence with small letters, as, "The providence of God is over lords and peasants." "The gods of the heathen bow before our God."

7. Adjectives derived from the proper names of places; as, *Grecian*, *Roman*, *English*, etc.

8. The first word of a direct quotation (1123), when the quotation would form a complete sentence by itself; as, "Always remember this ancient maxim: '*Know thyself*.'"

When a quotation is not introduced in the direct form (1124), but follows a comma, the first word must not begin with a capital; as, "Solomon observes that '*pride goeth before destruction*.'"

7. Common nouns, when personified; as, "Come, gentle *Spring*." (1046, 1).

10. Every substantive and principal word in the titles of books; as, "*Euclid's Elements of Geometry*;" "*Goldsmith's Deserted Village*."

11. Historical eras, events, extraordinary physical phenomena, written instruments, and generally, all words

which are used in a specialized sense; as, *the Iron A Magna Charta, the Polar Sea, Aurora Borealis, the Day Judgment*, etc.

78. Other words, besides the preceding, may begin with capital when they are remarkably emphatic, or the principal subject of a composition.

In cases where there is any doubt as to the proper usage, employ small letter.

### + Accent.

In the pronunciation of words of more than one syllable *accent* is the superior *force of voice* upon some particular syllable, to distinguish it from the others; as, tender, suppress', tem'perance, indus'trious.

The *place* of the accent sometimes serves to distinguish words of the *same orthography*, but of different signification; as, *con'duc* (behavior), *conduct'*, (to lead); *ob'ject* (an end, purpose), *object'*, (to oppose); *gal'lant* (brave), *gallant'* (a gay or fashionable man).

*Derivative words* (84) generally take the accent upon the primitive part or *root*; as, boy, boy'ish. But when the primitive words consist of several syllables, a *prefix* or *suffix* has often the effect of *changing the accent*; as, chastise', chas'tisement.

Some *compounds* take *two accents*; but many permanent compounds have only one; as, mankind', gen'tlemen.

Many *polysyllables* have *two accents*, called primary and secondary; as, dis''-com-pose', cir''-cum-spec'-tion, sig''-ni-fi-ca'-tion.

*Monosyllables*, as separate words, have *no* distinction of *accent*; but, in composition, a periodic stress, analogous to accent, designates particular words. This is more noticeable in poetry, but is also recognized in prose; as, "And it came' to pass." This distinction is called *rhythm* (1060).

## PART II.

### ETYMOLOGY.

---

<sup>†</sup>  
**79.** *Etymology* treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivations.

---

### WORDS.

**80.** A *Word* is an articulate sound used by common consent as the sign of an idea.

**81.** A few words consist of vocal or vowel sounds only; as, *I, ah, awe, oh, owe, eye*, etc.

**82.-1.** Words in respect of their *Formation*, are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*, *Simple* or *Compound*.

**83.** A *Primitive* word is one that is not derived from any other word in the language; as, *boy, just, father*.

**84.** A *Derivative* word is one that is derived from some other word; as, *boyish, justice, fatherly*.

Derivatives are usually formed either by prefixing or affixing syllables to simple words.

**85.** A *Simple* word is one that is not combined with any other word; as, *man, house, city*.

**86.** A *Compound* word is one that is made up of two or more simple words; as, *manhood, horseman*.

**87.-2.** Words, in respect of *Form*, are either *inflected* or *uninflected*.

**88.** An *Inflected* word is one which undergoes cer-

tain changes of *form* or *termination*, to express the different relations of gender, number, person, case; degree, voice, mood, tense; usually termed in Grammar *ACCIDENTS*; as, *man, men*; *wise, wiser*; *love, loves, loved*, etc.

89. In the changes which they undergo, nouns and pronouns sometimes said to be *declined*, verbs, to be *conjugated*, adjectives and adverbs, *compared* (140, 209, 473, 536.)

90. An *uninflected* word is one which undergoes: change of form; as, *and, beside, some, perhaps*.

91. 3. In respect of *signification* and *use* words are divided into different classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

92. The principle according to which words are classified is their *use*, or the part they perform in the expression of thought. Words which are names of objects are classed as *nouns*; those which qualify nouns are *adjectives*; those which attribute an action or state to some subject are *verbs*, etc. Hence, when the same word is used for different purposes—at one time as a *name*, at another to *qualify* a noun, and at another to express an *action* or *state*—it should, in parsing, be assigned to that class of words, the office of which it performs for the time; thus, “Before *honor* [noun] is humility.” “*Honor* [verb] thy father and thy mother.”

+

## Structure of Words.

A *simple word* conveying a *single notion*, or *idea*, and of whose origin we can give no account, is called a *root*.

*Derivations* are formed from these, and also from *foreign roots*.

1. By *changing* the *vowel*, or *modifying* the *consonants* in the root. Thus, from *shake* we have

*shock*; from *strong*, *strength*; from the Latin *signum*, or French *signe*, we have *sign*.

2. By *prefixes* and *suffixes*, added to the root, as, *misguide*, *unable*, *withdraw*, *strengthen*, *shocking*, *reader*, etc.

Latin roots are rarely used in English in their primitive form. Thus, in *permit*, *submit*, the root is *mit*; and in *deport*, *porter*, it is *port*, but these are in English inseparable, retaining, however, their original signification, and imparting it to the derivative; as (Latin), *port* to carry, *er* (suffix) one who; porter, a carrier.

A *prefix* is a letter or syllable *before the root* of a derivative.

A *suffix* is a letter or syllable *after the root*.

The number of prefixes and suffixes is about two hundred, and their usual signification may be readily learned. It is estimated that there are not above ten thousand roots. The mastery, therefore, of these elements will put the learner in possession of more than one hundred thousand words, given in our standard dictionaries; whilst the exercise of verbal analysis is invaluable, in leading to nice discrimination in shades of meaning.

+

### *Prefixes.*

The *prefixes* are, for the most part, of *Saxon*, *Latin*, or *Greek* origin. The most common are as follows:—

#### *Prefixes of Saxon Origin.*

<b>A</b>	signifying in, on at;	as, abed, aboard.
<b>Be</b>	“ adding intensity;	as, bespeak.
<b>For</b>	“ the contrary;	as, forbear, forget.
<b>Fore</b>	“ before;	as, foretell, forewarn.
<b>Mid</b>	“ middle;	as, midway.
<b>Mis</b>	“ failure;	as, mistake.
<b>N (ne)</b>	“ not;	as, never.
<b>Over</b>	“ above;	as, overlay.
<b>Out</b>	“ excelling;	as, outrun.
<b>Un</b>	“ not;	as, unkind, unjust.
<b>To</b>	“ this;	as, to-day, to-morrow.

<i>With</i>	signifying against ;	as, withhold, with
<i>Under</i>	" beneath ;	as, underlay, und
<i>Up</i>	" upwards ;	as, uplift, upstart

*Latin Prefixes.*

<i>A, ab, abs</i>	" from ;	as, avert, abstract
<i>Ad*</i>	" to ;	as, admit, adhere
<i>Ante†</i>	" before ;	as, antecedent, an
<i>Bene</i>	" well ;	as, benevolent
<i>Bis (bi)</i>	" two, twice ;	as, biped, bisect
<i>Circum</i>	" around ;	as, circumference
<i>Con‡</i>	" with, together ;	as, connect, cons
<i>Contra</i>	" against ;	as, contradict
<i>De</i>	" down ;	as, descend, degr
<i>Dis (di)</i>	" apart ;	as, disperse, dive
<i>E, ex, ef</i>	" out (from) ;	as, eject, expel, e
<i>Equi</i>	" equally ;	as, equilateral
<i>Extra</i>	" beyond ;	as, extraordinary
<i>In (with v'b)</i>	" in or into ;	as, include
<i>In (" adjec.)</i>	" not ;	as, indecent
<i>Inter</i>	" between ;	as, intersperse
<i>Intro</i>	" within ;	as, introduce
<i>Non</i>	" not ;	as, nonsense
<i>Ob§</i>	" against or in way of ;	as, obstruct, oppo
<i>Per</i>	" through ;	as, persecute
<i>Post</i>	" after ;	as, postpone
<i>Pre (præ)</i>	" before ;	as, prejudice
<i>Preter</i>	" beside, past ;	as, pretermi
<i>Pro</i>	" forth ;	as, propel
<i>Re</i>	" back ;	as, remit

\* *Ad* sometimes changes *d* for the sake of euphony, the forms, *ac, af, ag, al, an, ap, ar, as, at* ; as, *acced* aggressor, *allude, annex, append, arrest, assent, attend*.

† *Anti* sometimes, but to be distinguished from the Gre against.

‡ *Con*, for euphony, takes the forms, *co, com, col* ; a *compel, collect*.

§ For euphony, *oc, of, op* ; as, *occur, offend, opposite*.

<b>Retro</b>	"	backward ;	as, retrograde.
<b>Se</b>	"	apart ;	as, seduce.
<b>Sub*</b>	"	under ;	as, subject.
<b>Subter</b>	"	underneath ;	as, subterfuge.
<b>Super</b>	"	over ;	as, superfluous.
<b>Sur</b>	"	over ;	as, surcharge.
<b>Trans</b>	"	across ;	as, transport.
<b>Ultra</b>	"	beyond ;	as, ultramarine.

*Greek Prefixes.*

<b>A or an</b> (ά, αν)	signifying	not ;	as, anarchy.
<b>Amphi</b> (αμφι)	"	both ;	as, amphibious.
<b>Ana</b> (ανα)	"	up ;	as, anagram.
<b>Anti</b> (αντι)	"	against ;	as, antichrist.
<b>Apo</b> (απο)	"	from ;	as, apostle.
<b>Arch</b> (αρχος)	"	chief ;	as, archbishop.
<b>Auto</b> (αυτος)	"	self ;	as, autobiography.
<b>Cata</b> (κατα)	"	down ;	as, catastrophe.
<b>Dia</b> (δια)	"	through ;	as, diameter.
<b>En</b> (εν)	"	in ;	as, encourage.
<b>Epi</b> (επι)	"	upon ;	as, epigram.
<b>Ex</b> (εξ)	"	out of ;	as, exodus.
<b>Eu</b> (ευ)	"	well ;	as, euphony.
<b>Hemi</b> (ημι)	"	half ;	as, hemisphere.
<b>Hetero</b> (heteros)	"	different ;	as, heterogeneous.
<b>Hyper</b> (υπερ)	"	over ;	as, hypercritical.
<b>Hypo</b> (υπο)	"	under ;	as, hypothesis.
<b>Meta</b> (μετα)	"	change ;	as, metamorphose.
<b>Para</b> (παρα)	"	beside ;	as, paradox.
<b>Peri</b> (περι)	"	around ;	as, perimeter.
<b>Syn†</b> (συν)	"	with ;	as, synthesis.

These prefixes have *other meanings* in *composition* ; the particular sense can be determined only by use.

Many *derivations*, and especially those of foreign roots, are used

\* Euphonic forms, *suc, suf, sur*, as *succor, suffer, surreptitious*.

† This takes, also, for euphony, the form, *sym, syl* ; as *sympathy, syllogism*.



in a somewhat *tropical*, or *conventional* sense, but their meaning always bears a relation to the original root.

*Some derivatives* have many *special meanings*, according to the subject to which they refer, and their relation to other words in composition.

It is recommended that at stated times the pupil be required to prepare lists of words under each of these prefixes, and that the teacher show how such as are used in a modified sense have their literal meaning.

For an additional exercise, some native or foreign root may be given, which will combine with each of several prefixes,—the pupil to form a list, and write out their meanings.

### *Suffixes.*

A *suffix* is a *letter* or *syllable*, placed *after* the *root*, or *primitive*, to modify its signification.

The suffixes are so numerous, and of such varied form and meaning, that they are more appropriately presented in separate work in the "Analysis of Words." It has been thought desirable, however, to present what may be regarded as their *grammatical features* in the structure of the different *Parts of Speech* (98), the discussion has, therefore, been removed to APPENDIX I, *vide* *see*.

## PARSING.

**93.** *Parsing* is the art of resolving a sentence into its elements or parts of speech (91. 3).

**94.** Parsing is distinguished into *etymological* and *syntactical*. (575).

**95.** A word is parsed *etymologically* by stating the class of words to which it belongs, with its *accidents* or grammatical properties. (576).

**96.** A word is parsed *Syntactically* by stating, in addition, the relation in which it stands to other words, and the rules according to which they are combined in phrases and sentences. (983).

**97.** These two, though related, are perfectly distinct; and in the early part of the student's course, nothing should be anticipated which he can be supposed to know only at a more advanced stage. *Let the student learn one thing at a time, each thing thoroughly in its proper order, and continue to combine things learned, as far as it can be done without anticipating what is future.* In this way the process will be simple and easy; every step will be taken in the light, and when completed, the result will be satisfactory. Besides, the student must be able to parse etymologically with great ease and promptness, before he can with any advantage begin the study of syntax. For this purpose the class should be properly drilled on the exercises furnished at every step in the following pages.

---

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

**98.** THE *Parts of Speech* in English are nine, viz.: *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Article, Adjective, Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction.*

**99.** Of these, only the *Noun, Pronoun, and Verb,* and some *Adjectives* and *Adverbs,* are *inflected.*

---

## NOUNS.

**100.** A *Noun* is the *name* of any person, place, or thing, when used in connection with other words; as, *John, London, book.* Hence,

The names of *persons, places, or things,* are Nouns.

**101.** Nouns are of two kinds, *Proper* and *Common.*

**102.** A *Proper Noun* is the name applied to an individual only; as, *John, London, America, the Ohio.*

**103. A Common Noun** is a name applied to things of the same sort; as, *man, chair, table, boy*.

**104. REMARKS.**—Proper nouns are used to distinguish individuals of the same class from one another. Common nouns distinguish *sorts* or *classes*, and are equally applicable to all things of the same class. Thus, the common noun, *boy*, is equally applicable to *all* objects of that class but the proper nouns, John, James, Robert, etc., are applicable only to *particular individuals* of a class.

#### *Observations on Nouns.*

**105.** When a proper noun is used to denote a whole class, it is usually reckoned common, and generally has an article before it. In such cases the noun becomes the type of a class, and forms a kind of transition between the proper and the common noun; as, “The twelve *Cæsars*,” “He is the *Cicero* of his age,” “A *Daniel* come to judgment.” A *Campbell*, i. e. one of the Campbells.

**106.** Common nouns become proper when personified (1046, 1), and also when used as proper names; as, *Hail, Liberty! The Park.*

**107.** Under common nouns are usually ranked—

1. *Class names*, which can be used to designate any single individual of the class.
2. *Collective nouns*, or nouns of multitude, which signify many in the singular number; as, *army, people.*
3. *Names of materials.*
4. *Names of measures*, etc.
5. *Abstract nouns*, or names of qualities. An abstract noun is the name of an attribute which the mind conceives apart, or abstracted from, its object; as, *whiteness, sleep, wisdom*, etc.

The names of actions, as *reading, writing*, etc., are sometimes called *verbal nouns*.

Class nouns, derived from other nouns, and denoting a small one of the kind; as, *stream*, *streamlet*; *hill*, *hillock*; are also called *diminutive nouns*.

*Table of Nouns.*

NOUNS.	1. Proper . .	1. PARTICULAR NAMES . . . . .	as Washington.
		2. IN TRANSITION STATE . . . . .	a Sampson.
	2. Common . .	1. CLASS NAMES	<i>Sensible</i> . . . . . Book. <i>Rational</i> . . . . . Scholar.
		2. COLLECTIVE NAMES . . . . .	Army.
		3. NAMES OF MATERIALS . . . . .	Iron.
		4. NAMES OF MEASURES, ETC. . . . .	Foot, etc.
		5. ABSTRACT	<i>1. Names of qualities</i> Goodness. <i>2. Names of actions</i> Flight. <i>3. Names of states</i> Sleep.

**108.** To the class of nouns belongs everything, whether word, letter, mark, or character, of which we can think, speak, or write, regarded merely as an object of thought, even when, as sometimes happens, we do not give it a name. Thus when we say, "*Good*" is an adjective, *a* is a vowel, *b* is a consonant, *A* is a capital, 4 is an even number,  $\frac{1}{2}$  is a fraction, ? is a mark of interrogation, + is the sign of addition, — of subtraction, = of equality—*Good*, *a*, *b*, *A*, 4,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , ?, +, —, =, are all to be regarded as nouns.

**109. REMARK.**—A noun is also called a *substantive*. But this term for convenience is here used in a more comprehensive sense, to mean a *noun*, a *personal pronoun*, or a *phrase*, or *sentence* used as a noun. Thus in such a rule as this, "An adjective qualifies the substantive," etc., the word *substantive* may mean either a noun, pronoun, substantive phrase, or substantive sentence.

EXERCISES.\*

1. In the following list, distinguish *proper* nouns from *common*, and give a reason for the distinction:—

\* The exercises furnished here, and throughout this work, are intended merely as a specimen of the way in which the leading truths and facts in Grammar may be wrought into the minds of pupils, by means of exercises properly devised. It is not, however, expected or



Albany, city, tree, nation, France, Philip, dog, hot house, garden, Dublin, Edinburgh, London, river, Hudson, Ohio, Thames, countries, America, England, Ireland, Spain, sun, moon, stars, planets, Jupiter, Venus, Mars, man, woman, boy, girl, John, James, Mary, Susan, mountain, stream, valley.

2. In the following sentences, point out the *nouns*. Say whether they are nouns; tell whether they are proper or common, and why. Thus: "*Table*" a noun, because the name of a thing; common, because applied to all things of the same sort.

[In subsequent exercises, the pupil may designate more particularly the sub-classes to which the nouns belong:—]

The table and chairs in this room belong to John; the book-case, writing-desk, and books, to his brother.—Time and tide wait for no man.—The largest city in Europe London; in America, New York.—The northern states produce wheat, oats, barley, rye, corn, and potatoes; while cotton, tobacco, rice, and sugar, are the products of the south.

★ 3. Write down ten nouns, or names of persons or things, and say something respecting each, so as to make a sentence; thus:—

*Summer*.—*Summer* is the warmest season of the year.

4. Tell what words in the sentences so made are nouns, and why which are proper, or common, and why.

### *Accidents of the Noun.*

**110.** The *accidents* of nouns are *Person, Gender, Number, and Case*.

---

desired that the teacher should limit himself to these. Every active and ingenious teacher will devise such new and various methods of exercising his pupils as their age, capacity, and circumstances, and his own judgment and experience may suggest, as best calculated to draw out their powers, and cultivate in them a habit of thinking and reasoning for themselves.

NOTE.—These accidents belong also to personal and relative pronouns (239).

## Person.

**111.** *Person*, in Grammar, is the distinction of nouns to denote the speaker, the person or thing spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of. (120). Hence,

**112.** There are three persons, called *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

**113.** A noun is in the *first* person, when it denotes the speaker; as, "I, *Paul*, have written it."

**114.** A noun is in the *second* person, when it denotes the person or thing addressed; as, "Thou, *God*, seest me."—"Hail, *Liberty*!"

**115.** A noun is in the *third* person, when it denotes the person or thing spoken of; as, "*Washington* was brave."—" *Truth* is mighty."

**116.** REMARK.—The third person is used sometimes for the *first*; as, "Thy *servant* became surety for the lad to my father." Gen. xliv. 82. Sometimes, particularly in the language of supplication, it is used for the *second*; as, "O let not the Lord be angry." Gen. xviii. 80. "Will the Lord bless us!"

## Observations on Person.

**117.** The first and the second person can belong only to nouns denoting persons, or things personified; because persons only can speak or be spoken to. The *third* person may belong to all nouns, because every object, whether person or thing, may be spoken of.

**118.** A noun can be the subject of a verb (600), only in the third person. A noun in the *first* or *second* person is never used as the subject of a verb, but only in apposition (608) with the first or second personal pronoun, for the sake of explanation or emphasis; and sometimes in the second person, without a pronoun, as the object addressed.

**119.** A noun in the predicate (629), is generally, though always, in the *third* person, even when the subject is in the first second; as, "I am *Alpha*," etc., "who *is*." So with the pronoun and *thou*; as, "I am *he*." "Thou art the *man*."

**120. REMARK.**—*Person* makes no change either in the meaning or form of a noun, but simply denotes the manner in which it is used as above stated. Moreover, as the name of the speaker, or of the person spoken to, is seldom expressed (the pronouns *I* and *thou*, and *you*, being used in their stead), it seems to be a useless waste of time, in parsing, to mention the person of a noun, unless it be in the first or second person, which will not happen more than once in a thousand times. Much time therefore will be saved, and no loss sustained, if it be considered as *taken for granted*, without stating it, that a noun is in the third person, unless it be otherwise mentioned.

---

## Gender.

**121.** *Gender* is the distinction of nouns with regard to sex. APPENDIX II.

**122.** There are three genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

**123.** Nouns denoting males are *Masculine*; as *man*, *boy*.

**124.** Nouns denoting females are *Feminine*; as *woman*, *girl*.

**125.** Nouns denoting neither males nor females i. e., things without sex, are *Neuter*; as, *house*, *book*, *tree*.

**126.** Nouns which denote either males or females, such as *parent*, *neighbor*, *friend*, etc., are sometimes, for the sake of convenience, said to be of the *Common Gender*, i. e., either masculine or feminine.

**127.** *There are three ways of distinguishing the sexes.*



*1. By Different Words; as,*

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Bachelor	maid	Horse	mare
Beau	belle	Husband	wife
Boy	girl	King	queen
Brother	sister	Lord	lady
Buck	doe	Man	woman
Bull	cow	Master	mistress
Drake	duck	Nephew	niece
Earl	countess	Ram, buck	ewe
Father	mother	Son	daughter
Friar	nun	Stag	hind
Gander	goose	Uncle	aunt
Hart	roe	Wizard	witch

*2. By a Difference of Termination; as,*

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Abbot	abbess	Arbiter	arbitress
Actor	actress	Author	authoress
Administrator	administratrix	Baron	baroness
Adulterer	adulteress	Bridegroom	bride
Ambassador	ambadress	Benefactor	benefactress
Count	countess	Peer	peeress
Deacon	deaconess	Poet	poetess
Duke	duchess	Priest	priestess.
Elector	electress	Prince	princess
Emperor	empress	Prior	prioress
Enchanter	enchantress	Prophet	prophetess
Executor	executrix	Protector	protectress
Governor	governess	Shepherd	shepherdess
Heir	heiress	Songster	songstress
Hero	heroine	Sorcerer	sorceress
Hunter	huntress	Sultan	{ sultana, or sultanness
Host	hostess	Tiger	tigress
Jew	jewess	Traitor	traitress
Landgrave	landgravine	Tutor	tutress
Lion	lioness	Viscount	viscountess
Marquis	marchioness	Votary	votress
Mayor	mayoress	Widower	widow
Patron	patroness		



### 3. By Preflating a Distinguishing Word; a

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Sparrow.	A <i>cock</i> sparrow.	A <i>hen</i> sparrow.
Goat.	A <i>he</i> goat.	A <i>she</i> goat.
Servant.	A <i>man</i> servant.	A <i>maid</i> servant.
Child.	A <i>male</i> child.	A <i>female</i> child.
Descendants.	<i>Male</i> descendants.	<i>Female</i> descendants.

#### Observations on Gender.

**128.** Many masculine nouns have no corresponding feminine; as, *baker, brewer*, etc.: and some feminine nouns have no corresponding masculine; as, *laundress, sestress*, etc.

**129.** Some nouns naturally neuter, are often, by a figure of speech. (1046, 1), converted into the masculine or feminine; as, when we say of the sun, "*He* is setting;" of the moon, "*She* is eclipsed;" or of a ship, "*She* sails."

**130.** REMARK.—This inferior species of personification, peculiar to the English language, is often used with great beauty to impart animation and liveliness to the style, without rendering it inflated or passionate. No certain rule, however, can be given as to the gender assumed, except that nouns denoting objects distinguished by strength or boldness, are usually regarded as masculine, while on the other hand, those denoting objects noted for softness, beauty or gracefulness, are considered feminine.

**131.** In speaking of animals whose sex is not known to us, or not regarded, we assign the masculine gender to nouns denoting objects distinguished for boldness, fidelity, generosity, size, strength, etc.; the dog, the horse, the elephant. Thus we say, "the dog is remarkably various in *his* species." On the other hand, we assign the feminine gender to animals characterized by weakness and timidity; the hare, the cat, etc.; thus, "The cat, as *she* beholds the light, dreads the ball of *her* eye small and long."

**132.** In speaking of animals, particularly those of inferior rank, we frequently consider them without sex, and use the neuter pronoun. Thus, of an infant, we say, "*It* is a lovely creature," of a cat, "*It* is cruel to *its* enemy."

**133.** When the male and female are expressed by distinct terms,

as, *shepherd*, *shepherdess*, the masculine term has sometimes also a general meaning, expressing both male and female, and is always to be used when the office, occupation, profession, etc., and not the sex of the individual, is chiefly to be expressed. The feminine term is used only when the discrimination of sex is necessary. Thus, when it is said, "the Poets of this country are distinguished for correctness of taste," the term "Poets" clearly includes both *male* and *female* writers of poetry. But, "the best Poetess of the age," would be said when speaking only of females.

**134.** Collective nouns, when the reference is to the aggregate as one whole, or when they are in the plural number, are considered as neuter; as, "The *army* destroyed everything in *its* course;" but when the reference is to the objects composing the collection as individuals, they take the gender representing the sex of the individuals referred to.

• EXERCISES.

1. *What is the feminine of*—Father, prince, king, master, actor, emperor, bridegroom, stag, buck, hart, nephew, friar, priest, heir, hero, Jew, host, hunter, sultan, executor, horse, lord, husband, brother, son, bull, he-goat, etc.?

2. *What is the masculine of*—Lady, woman, girl, niece, nun, aunt, belle, duchess, abbess, empress, heroine, wife, sister, mother, hind, roe, mare, hen-sparrow, shepherdess, daughter, ewe, goose, queen, songstress, widow, etc.?

3. *Tell of what gender the following nouns are, and why.*

Man, horse, tree, field, father, house, mother, queen, count, lady, king, prince, castle, tower, river, stone, hen, goose, seamstress, mountain, cloud, air, sky, hand, foot, head, body, limb, lion, tiger, mayor, countess;—friend, neighbor, parent, teacher, assistant, guide;—sun (129), moon, earth, ship;—cat (132), mouse, fly, bird, elephant, hare.

4. Take any of the above words, and say something respecting the person or thing which it denotes, so as to make a sentence; thus, "*My father* is at home."

## Number.

**135.** *Number* is that property of a noun which it expresses one, or more than one.

**136.** Nouns have two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The singular denotes *one*; as, *bo* *tree*: the plural, *more than one*; as, *books, trees*

### GENERAL RULE.

**137.** The *plural* is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, *book, books*.

### SPECIAL RULES.

**138. RULE 1.**—Nouns in *s, sh, ch* soft, *z, x*, or form the plural by adding *es*; as, *Miss, Misses*; *brushes*; *match, matches*; *topaz, topazes*; *fox, foxes*; *heroes*.

**139. Exceptions.**—Nouns in *eo, io, and yo*, have *s* only; *cameo, cameos*; *folio, folios*; *embryo, embryos*. So also, *canto, cantos*; *Junto, tyro, grotto, portico, solo, halo, quarto*, formerly had *s* in the plural; but now more commonly *es* under the Rule; as, *juntos*, etc. Nouns in *ch* sounding *k*, add *s* only; as, *monarchs*. See also 144.

**140.** Whenever *s* or *es* will not coalesce with the final syllable it adds a syllable to the word; as, *age*, pl. *ages*; *box, boxes*. Where *s* or *es* will coalesce, it does not add a syllable; as, *book, books*; *cargo, cargoes*. The *s* will make an additional syllable only after final, preceded by *g* or an *s*-sound; as, *cage, cages*; *race, races*; *roses*. *Es* will coalesce, and so not add a syllable, only after *o*; *echo, echoes*.

**141. RULE 2.**—Nouns in *y* after a consonant, change *y* into *ies* in the plural; as, *lady, ladies*. But

Nouns in *y* after a vowel, and all proper nouns in *y*, follow the general rule (137); as, *day, days*; the *Pompeys*, the *Tullys*, etc.

**142. RULE 3.**—Nouns in *f* or *fe*, change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural; as, *loaf*, *loaves*; *life*, *lives*.

**143. Exceptions.**—Dwarf, scarf, reef; brief, chief, grief; kerchief, handkerchief, mischief; gulf, turf, surf; safe, fife, strife; proof, hoof, reproof, follow the general rule. Also nouns in *ff* have their plural in *s*; as *muff*, *muffs*; except *staff*, plural, *staves*; but its compounds are regular; as, *flagstaff*, *flagstaffs*; *wharf* has either *wharfs* or *wharves*.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Give the plural of the following nouns, and the rule for forming it; thus, *Fox*, plural, *foxes*. *Rule*—Nouns in *s*, *sh*, *ch* soft, *z*, *x*, or *o*, form the plural by adding *es*. Or, more briefly; Nouns in *x* form the plural by adding *es*.

Fox, book, leaf, candle, hat, loaf, wish, fish, sex, box, coach, inch, sky, bounty, army, duty, knife, echo, loss, cargo, wife, story, church, table, glass, study, calf, branch, street, potato, peach, sheaf, booby, rock, stone, house, glory, hope, flower, city, difficulty, distress, wolf.

Day, bay, relay, chimney, journey, valley, needle, enemy, army, vale, ant, valley, hill, sea, key, toy, monarch, tyro, grotto, nuncio, punctilio, embryo, gulf, handkerchief, hoof, staff, muff, cliff, whiff, cuff, ruff, safe, wharf, fief.

2. *Of what number is*—Book, trees, plant, shrub, globes, planets, toys, home, fancy, mosses, glass, state, foxes, houses, prints, spoon, bears, lilies, roses, churches, glove, silk, skies, hill, river, scenes, stars, berries, peach, porch, glass, pitcher, valleys, mountain, cameos?

3. Take six of the above words, and say something respecting each; first in the *singular*, and then in the *plural*.

#### **Nouns Irregular in the Plural.**

**144.** Some nouns are irregular in the formation of their plural; such as—

## Number.

**135.** *Number* is that property of a word which it expresses one, or more than one.

**136.** Nouns have two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The singular denotes *one*; as, *tree*: the plural, *more than one*; as, *books*,

### GENERAL RULE.

**137.** The *plural* is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, *book*, *books*.

### SPECIAL RULES.

**138. RULE 1.**—Nouns in *s*, *sh*, *ch* soft, *z*, form the plural by adding *es*; as, *Miss*, *Misses*; *brushes*; *match*, *matches*; *topaz*, *topazes*; *fox*, *foxes*.

**139. Exceptions.**—Nouns in *eo*, *io*, and *yo*, have *i* in the plural; as, *cameo*, *cameos*; *folio*, *folios*; *embryo*, *embryos*. So also, *cajo*, *cajos*; *Junto*, *tyro*, *grotto*, *portico*, *solo*, *halo*, *quarto*, formerly had *i* in the plural; but now more commonly *es* under the Rule; as, *juntoes*, etc. Nouns in *ch* sounding *k*, add *s* only; as, *monarchs*. See also 144.

**140.** Whenever *s* or *es* will not coalesce with the final syllable of the word; as, *age*, pl. *ages*; *box*, pl. *boxes*; where *s* or *es* will coalesce, it does not add a syllable; as, *bark*, pl. *barks*; *cargo*, pl. *cargoes*. The *s* will make an additional syllable or final, preceded by *g* or an *s*-sound; as, *cage*, *cages*; *race*, *racers*; *rose*, *roses*. *Es* will coalesce, and so not add a syllable, only a syllable; as, *echo*, *echoes*.

**141. RULE 2.**—Nouns in *y* after a consonant form the plural by adding *ies* in the plural; as, *lady*, *ladies*. But

Nouns in *y* after a vowel, and all proper nouns follow the general rule (137); as, *day*, *days*; the *Tullys*, etc.

**142. RULE 3.**—Nouns in *f* or *fe*, change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural; as, *loaf*, *loaves*; *life*, *lives*.

**143. Exceptions.**—Dwarf, scarf, reef; brief, chief, grief; kerchief, handkerchief, mischief; gulf, turf, surf; safe, fife, strife; proof, hoof, reproof, follow the general rule. Also nouns in *ff* have their plural in *s*; as *muff*, *muffs*; except *staff*, plural, *staves*; but its compounds are regular; as, *flagstaff*, *flagstaffs*; *wharf* has either *wharfs* or *wharves*.

EXERCISES.

1. Give the plural of the following nouns, and the rule for forming it; thus, *Fox*, plural, *foxes*. *Rule*—Nouns in *s*, *sh*, *ch* soft, *z*, *x*, or *o*, form the plural by adding *es*. Or, more briefly; Nouns in *x* form the plural by adding *es*.

Fox, book, leaf, candle, hat, loaf, wish, fish, sex, box, coach, inch, sky, bounty, army, duty, knife, echo, loss, cargo, wife, story, church, table, glass, study, calf, branch, street, potato, peach, sheaf, booby, rock, stone, house, glory, hope, flower, city, difficulty, distress, wolf.

Day, bay, relay, chimney, journey, valley, needle, enemy, army, vale, ant, valley, hill, sea, key, toy, monarch, tyro, grotto, nuncio, punctilio, embryo, gulf, handkerchief, hoof, staff, muff, cliff, whiff, cuff, ruff, reef, safe, wharf, fief.

2. *Of what number is*—Book, trees, plant, shrub, globes, planets, toys, home, fancy, mosses, glass, state, foxes, houses, prints, spoon, bears, lilies, roses, churches, glove, silk, skies, hill, river, scenes, stars, berries, peach, porch, glass, pitcher, valleys, mountain, cameos?

3. Take six of the above words, and say something respecting each; first in the *singular*, and then in the *plural*.

**Nouns Irregular in the Plural.**

**144.** Some nouns are irregular in the formation of their plural; such as—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
Man	men	Tooth	te
Woman	women	Goose	ge
Child	children	Mouse	m
Foot	feet	Louse	lic
Ox	oxen	Cow formerly	ki
		but now regular,	co

**145.** Some nouns have both a regular and an irregular form of the plural, but with different significations:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Brother	(one of the same family)	brothers
Brother	(one of the same society)	brethren
Die	(a stamp for coining)	dies
Die	(a small cube for gaming)	dice
Genius	(a man of genius)	geniuses
Genius	(a kind of spirit)	genii
Index	(a table of reference)	indexes
Index	(a sign in algebra)	indices
Pea	(as a distinct seed)	peas
Pea	(as a species of grain)	pease
Sow	(an individual animal)	sows
Sow or swine	(the species)	swine
Penny	(a coin——)	pennies
Penny	(a sum or value)	pence

**146. NOTE.**—Though *pence* is plural, yet such an expression as *fourpence*, *sixpence*, etc., as the name of a sum, or of a coin denoting that sum, is often regarded as singular, and so capital; as, “Three fourpences, or two sixpences, make a shilling.” “A new sixpence is heavier than an old one.”

**147.** Compounds ending in *ful* or *full*, and generally those having the important word last, form the plural regularly; as *ful*, *cupful*, *coachful*, *handful*, *mouse-trap*, *ox-cart*, *court-yard*, *obscure*, etc.; plural, *spoonfuls*, *cupfuls*, *coachfuls*, etc.

**148.** Compounds in which the principal word stands first, pluralize the first word; as—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Commander-in-chief	commanders-in-chief
Aid-de-camp	aids-de-camp
Knight-errant	knights-errant

*Singular.*

Court-martial

Cousin-german

Father-in-law, etc.

*Plural.*

courts-martial

cousins-german

fathers-in-law, etc.

*Man-servant* changes both; as, *men-servants*. So also, *women-servants*, *knights-templars*.

149. The compounds of *man* form the plural as the simple word; as, *fisherman*, *fishermen*. But nouns accidentally ending in *man*, and not compounds of *man*, form the plural by the general rule; as, *Turcoman*, *Mussulman*, *talisman*; plural, *Turcomans*, *Mussulmans*, etc.

150. Proper names, when pluralized, and other parts of speech used as nouns, or mere names, form the plural like nouns of similar endings; as, the *Aristotles*, the *Solons*, the *Mariuses*, the *Pompeys*, the *Ciceros*; the *eyes* and *noes*, the *ins* and the *outs*; by *sixes* and *sevens*, by *fifties*; three *fourths*, two *halves*; "His *ands* and his *ors*;" "One of the *buts* is superfluous."

151. EXCEPTION.—Such words ending in *y* after a consonant, follow the general rule (137), and not the special rule (141); as, the *Livys*, the *Tullys*, the *Henrys*—"The *whys* and the *bys*."

152. Letters, marks, and numerical figures, are made plural by adding 's; as, "Dot your *i's*, and cross your *t's*."—"Your *s's* are not well made."—"The *+'s* and *-'s* are not in line."—"Four *6's* = eight *3's*."—"9's give place to 0's."

153. NOTE.—Some good writers form the plural of proper names, etc., in this way; as, the *Marius's*, the *Pompey's*—the *why's* and the *wherefore's*. But this is unnecessary and should be avoided.

154. Words adopted without change from foreign languages, generally retain their original plural. As a general rule, nouns in *um* or *on*, have *a* in the plural. Latin nouns in *is*, in the plural change *is* into *es*; Greek nouns in *is*, change *is* into *ides*: Latin nouns in *a*, change *a* into *æ*; but Greek nouns change *a* into *ata* in the plural. The following are the most common, some of which, however, from common use, have become so much a part of the English language as to have also the regular *English* form of the plural. In the following table, these are indicated by the letter R.

*Singular.*

Alumnus

Alumna

Amanuensis

*Plural.*

alumni

alumnae

amanuenses

*Singular.*

Analysis

Animalculum

Antithesis

*Plural*

analyses

animalcula, R.

antitheses



<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Apex	apices, R.	Ignis fatuus	ignes
Appendix	appendices, R.	Index ( <i>a pointer</i> )	indices
Arcanum	arcana	Index ( <i>in algebra</i> )	indices
Automaton	automata, R.	Lamina	laminae
Axis	axes	Larva	larvæ
Bandit	banditti	Magus	magi
Basis	bases	Medium	media,
Beau	beaux, R.	Memorandum	memoranda
Calx	calces, R.	Metamorphosis	metamorphoses
Cherub	cherubim, R.	Miasma	miasmas
Chrysalis	chrysalides	Momentum	momenta
Crisis	crises	Monsieur	messieurs
Criterion	criteria	Mr. ( <i>master</i> )	messars.
Datum	data	Nebula	nebulae
Desideratum	desiderata	Oasis	oases
Dieresis	diereses	Parenthesis	parentheses
Effluvium	effluvia	Phenomenon	phenomena
Ellipsis	ellipses	Radius	radii
Emphasis	emphases	Scholium	scholia, l
Encomium	encomia, R.	Seraph	seraphim
Ephemeris	ephemerides	Speculum	specula
Erratum	errata	Stamen	stamina,
Focus	foci	Stimulus	stimuli
Formula	formulae, R.	Stratum	strata
Fungus	fungi, funguses	Thesis	theses
Genius	genii (145)	Vertebra	vertebrae
Genus	genera	Vertex	vertices,
Gymnasium	gymnasia, R.	Virtuoso	virtuosi
Hypothesis	hypotheses	Vortex	vortices,

## EXERCISES ON NOUNS IRREGULAR IN NUMBER

*Give the plural of*—Man, foot, penny, mouse, ox woman, brother, goose, tooth ;—sow, die, courtier father-in-law, son-in-law ; cupful, coachful, spoon erratum, medium, radius, genius, lamina, automaton, phenomenon, stratum, axis, ellipsis, stamen, index, seraph, etc.

*Of what number is*—Dice, arcana, fishermen, geese

mice, alms, riches, thanks, snuffers, tongs, teeth, woman, child, court-martial, apparatus, miasma, genii, geniuses, indices, indexes, mathematics, Matthew, James, John?

### *Observations on Number.*

**155.** Some nouns are used in the singular only. Such are the names of metals, virtues, vices, arts, sciences, abstract qualities, and things weighed or measured; as, gold, meekness, piety, idleness, intemperance, sculpture, geometry, wisdom, flour, milk, etc. Except when different sorts of things are expressed; as, wines, teas, sugars, liquors, etc.

**156.** Some nouns are used in the plural only; as, annals, antipodes, archives, assets, ashes, billiards, bitters, breeches, clothes, calends, colors (military banners), dregs, goods, hysterics, ideas, intestines, literati, lees, letters (literature), minutiae, manners, morals, nones, orgies, pleiads, or pleiades, shambles, tidings, thanks, vespers, vitals, victuals: Also, things consisting of two parts; as, bellows, drawers, hose, nippers, pincers, pliers, snuffers, scissors, shears, tongs, etc.

A few words usually plural, viz., bowels, embers, entrails, lungs, have sometimes a singular, denoting a part or portion of that expressed by the plural; as *bowel*, *lung*, etc.

**157.** Some nouns are alike in both numbers; as, deer, sheep, swine, vermin; grouse, salmon, tench, trout; apparatus, hiatus, series, congeries, species, superficies; head (in the sense of individual), cattle; certain building materials; as, brick, stone, plank, joist in mass; also fish and sometimes fowl, denoting the class. But several of these, in a plural sense, denoting individuals have the regular plural also; as, salmona, trouts, fishes, fowls, etc.

**158.** The words brace, couple, pair, yoke, dozen, score, gross, hundred, thousand, and some others, after adjectives of number, are either singular or plural; as, a brace, a dozen, a hundred; two brace, three dozen, six hundred, etc. But without an adjective of number, or in other constructions, and particularly after *in*, *by*, etc., in a distributive sense, most of these words, in the plural, assume a plural form; as, "In braces and dozens."—"By scores and hundreds."—"Worth thousands."

**159.** 1. The following words, plural in form, are sometimes singular, but most commonly plural in signification, viz.: amends, means, riches, pains (meaning laborious efforts), odds, alms, wages; and the

names of certain sciences; as, *mathematics, ethics, opt metaphysics, politics, pneumatics, hydrostatics, etc.*

2. *Means* and *amends*, referring to one object, are more than one, plural. *Mean*, in the singular form, is signify the middle between two extremes. *Alms* (*æln* Saxon) and *riches* (*richesse*, French) are really singular, used commonly in a plural sense. *News*, formerly singul is now mostly singular. *Molasses* and *measles*, though e plural, are singular, and are so used. *Oats* is generally *lours* is both singular and plural, though a distinct plur *lours*, is also in use.

160. The following are singular in form, but in cons rious; thus, *foot* and *horse*, meaning bodies of troops, meaning *persons*, are always construed as plural; *cannon cavalry, infantry*, as singular or plural. *People* (also *fol* signifies a community or body of persons, is a collective n singular, and sometimes, though rarely, takes a plural "Many *peoples* and nations." Rev. x. 11.

### *The Plural of Proper Names.*

161. Proper names for the most part want the plural ;

1. Proper names without a title are used in the plural, refer to a race or family; as, "The *Campbells*," "the *Stuar* several persons of the same name; as, "The twelve *Casars* , they are used to denote character; as, "The *Ciceros* of the

2. Proper names with the title of *Mrs.* prefixed, or with preceded by the numerals, *two, three, etc.*, pluralize the *nam* the title; as, "The *Mrs. Howards* ;" "the two *Miss Morto* two *Mr. Henrys*."

3. But when several persons of the same name are spok vidually, and distinguished by a particular appellation, or sons of different names are spoken of together, the *title* onl the name is made plural; as, "*Misses* Julia and Mary F "*Messrs.* George and Andrew Thomson;" "*Messrs.* Jonc and Robinson."

Thus far, usage and the rule are settled and uniform ; bi

4. In other cases, usage is still unsettled. Some writr the majority, pluralize the *title* and not the name; as, "F. Brown;" "the *Messrs.* Harper." Others, of equal authori ing the title as a sort of adjective, or the whole as a compo pluralize the *name*, and not the title; as, "The *Miss Brow*

*Mr. Harpers.*" This form is more common in conversation, and, being less stiff and formal, is more likely to prevail. A few improperly pluralize both name and title; as, "The *Misses Browns*;" "the *Messrs. Harpers.*"

5. Names, with other titles prefixed, follow the same analogy; as, "Lords Wellington and Lynedoch;" "the lords bishops of Durham and St. David's;" "the generals Grant and Sherman."

---

## Cases of Nouns.

**162.** *Case* is the state or condition of a noun with respect to the other words in a sentence. See 164-166.

**163.** Nouns in English have three cases, the *Nominative*, *Possessive*, and *Objective*.

**164.** A noun is in the *Nominative* case—

1. When it is used as the subject of a finite verb (315); as, "*John* reads."
2. When it is used as a predicate (586); as, "*John* is a good *boy*."
3. When it is used absolutely, or independent of any other word; as, "O *Absalom*, my son!"

REMARK.—A noun used in direct address, as in the last instance, is by some said to be in the *vocative* case.

**165.** The *Possessive* case connects with the name of an object, the idea of *origin*, *possession*, or *fitness*; as, The *sun's* rays; *John's* book; a *boy's* cap; *men's* shoes. It is always found with another substantive, whose meaning it limits (839).

A noun in the possessive case limits the noun to which it is joined, like an adjective, but should be parsed as a noun; for it never loses its characteristics as such; as, "If this comes to the *governor's* ears, we will persuade *him*," etc. (Matt. xxiii. 14).

**166.** The *Objective* case is used—

1. To denote the object of a transitive verb (i active voice (368); as, "James assists *Th*
2. To denote the object of a relation expr preposition (538); as, "They live in *Lou*
3. To denote time, value, weight, or measure, governing word (828); as, "James is ten

[*Note.*—Some authors assign the nominative case to merely as names. Words not in relation can, strictly spe no case, but, for convenience in referring to them, this di in some instances, retained.]

#### GENERAL RULES.

**167.** The *nominative* and the *objec* nouns are alike in *form*.

**168.** The *possessive* singular is formed ing an apostrophe and *s* to the nominati *John's*.

**169.** When the plural ends in *s*, the pc is formed by adding an apostrophe only ; as, But when the plural does not end in *s*, l apostrophe and *s* are added ; as, *men's*, *chi*

#### *Inflection of Nouns.*

**170.** Nouns are thus inflected—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>s</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Lady	ladies	Man	men	.
<i>Poss.</i>	Lady's	ladies'	Man's	men's	.
<i>Obj.</i>	Lady	ladies	Man	men	.

**171.** Proper names for the most part want the plural

#### *Observations on the Possessive.*

**172.** The *'s* in the possessive case is evidently an abbre the old English termination of the genitive in *es* or *is*. I king's crown" was written, "The king's crown." That *s* is breviation for *his*, as some have supposed, is manifest fro that it is used where *his* could not be properly employed

*man's, men's, children's, book's*, etc., can not be resolved into *woman his, men his, children his*, etc.

The *apostrophe* (') after *s* in the plural, is not a mark of abbreviation, but is used in modern times, merely as a sign of the possessive. Its use in the plural is of but recent date.

**173.** When the nominative singular ends in *ss*, or in letters of a similar sound, though to retain the *s* after the apostrophe is never wrong, yet, as a matter of taste, it is sometimes omitted in order to avoid harshness, or too close a succession of hissing sounds; as, "For goodness' sake;" "for conscience' sake;" so also "Moses' disciples;" "Jesus' feet."

**174. NOTE.**—There is considerable diversity of opinion and usage on this point. Some few insist on retaining *s* after the apostrophe in every position; as, "Xanthus's stock of patience."—*L'Estrange*. Others drop the *s* only before a word beginning with an *s* or an *s*-sound, as above; while others drop the *s* wherever the use of it would produce harshness, or difficulty of pronunciation. Though in this last, the usage which omits the *s* is less prevalent and less accurate than that which retains it, yet, from the sanction it has obtained—from the stiffness and harshness which retaining the *s* often occasions—and from the tendency in all spoken language to abbreviation and euphony, it seems destined to prevail against all arguments to the contrary.

**175. REMARK.**—In written language, the omission of the *s* occasions but little inconvenience; for the apostrophe sufficiently indicates the case, and the construction will generally indicate the number. In spoken language, however, the use of the *s* is more necessary, to avoid obscurity, especially in proper names. Thus, in spoken language, "Davy's Surveying," and "Davies' Surveying," sound precisely alike, though the names are different. Hence, to indicate the last name correctly in speaking, it will be more accurate, though less euphonic, to say, "Davies's Surveying." Thus, also, "Perkins' Arithmetic," "Sparks' Analysis," in spoken language, may be mistaken for "Perkin's Arithmetic," "Spark's Analysis." In such cases, precision will be secured at the expense of euphony, by retaining the *s*, while euphony will be attained, frequently at the expense of precision, by dropping it.

**176.** The meaning of the possessive may, in general, be expressed by the word *of* with the objective; thus, for "*man's* wisdom," "*vir-*

**166.** The *Objective* case is used—

1. To denote the object of a transitive verb (317) in active voice (368); as, "James assists *Thomas*."
2. To denote the object of a relation expressed by preposition (538); as, "They live in *London*."
3. To denote time, value, weight, or measure, without governing word (828); as, "James is ten *years* old."

[*Note*.—Some authors assign the nominative case to words used merely as names. Words not in relation can, strictly speaking, have no case, but, for convenience in referring to them, this distinction in some instances, retained.]

#### GENERAL RULES.

**167.** The *nominative* and the *objective* cases of nouns are alike in *form*.

**168.** The *possessive* singular is formed by adding an apostrophe and *s* to the nominative; as, *John's*.

**169.** When the plural ends in *s*, the possessive is formed by adding an apostrophe only; as, *ladies*. But when the plural does not end in *s*, both the apostrophe and *s* are added; as, *men's*, *children's*.

#### *Inflection of Nouns.*

**170.** Nouns are thus inflected—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Lady	ladies	Man	men	John
<i>Poss.</i>	Lady's	ladies'	Man's	men's	John's
<i>Obj.</i>	Lady	ladies	Man	men	John

**171.** Proper names for the most part want the plural (161).

#### *Observations on the Possessive.*

**172.** The *'s* in the possessive case is evidently an abbreviation from the old English termination of the genitive in *es* or *is*. Thus, "The king's crown" was written, "The king*is* crown." That *s* is not an abbreviation for *his*, as some have supposed, is manifest from the fact that it is used where *his* could not be properly employed; thus, *the*

*man's, men's, children's, book's*, etc., can not be resolved into *woman his, men his, children his*, etc.

The *apostrophe* (') after *s* in the plural, is not a mark of abbreviation, but is used in modern times, merely as a sign of the possessive. Its use in the plural is of but recent date.

**173.** When the nominative singular ends in *ss*, or in letters of a similar sound, though to retain the *s* after the apostrophe is never wrong, yet, as a matter of taste, it is sometimes omitted in order to avoid harshness, or too close a succession of hissing sounds; as, "For goodness' sake;" "for conscience' sake;" so also "Moses' disciples;" "Jesus' feet."

**174. NOTE.**—There is considerable diversity of opinion and usage on this point. Some few insist on retaining *s* after the apostrophe in every position; as, "Xanthus's stock of patience."—*L'Estrange*. Others drop the *s* only before a word beginning with an *s* or an *ss*-sound, as above; while others drop the *s* wherever the use of it would produce harshness, or difficulty of pronunciation. Though in this last, the usage which omits the *s* is less prevalent and less accurate than that which retains it, yet, from the sanction it has obtained—from the stiffness and harshness which retaining the *s* often occasions—and from the tendency in all spoken language to abbreviation and euphony, it seems destined to prevail against all arguments to the contrary.

**175. REMARK.**—In written language, the omission of the *s* occasions but little inconvenience; for the apostrophe sufficiently indicates the case, and the construction will generally indicate the number. In spoken language, however, the use of the *s* is more necessary, to avoid obscurity, especially in proper names. Thus, in spoken language, "Davy's Surveying," and "Davies' Surveying," sound precisely alike, though the names are different. Hence, to indicate the last name correctly in speaking, it will be more accurate, though less euphonic, to say, "Davies's Surveying." Thus, also, "Perkins' Arithmetic," "Sparks' Analysis," in spoken language, may be mistaken for "Perkin's Arithmetic," "Spark's Analysis." In such cases, precision will be secured at the expense of euphony, by retaining the *s*, while euphony will be attained, frequently at the expense of precision, by dropping it.

**176.** The meaning of the possessive may, in general, be expressed by the word *of* with the objective; thus, for "*man's* wisdom," "*vir-*



*tue's reward*," we may say, "the wisdom of *man*," "the reward *virtue*." This mode will generally be preferred, when the use of a possessive would appear stiff or awkward; thus, "the length of a day," is better than "the day's length." In some few words which want the possessive plural, such as *father-in-law*, *court-martial*, etc. this is the only substitute. These two modes of expression, however, are not always equivalent; thus, "the *king's* picture," means any picture belonging to the king; "a picture of the king," means a portrait of him, without saying to whom it belongs. So also, *of* with the collective, can not always be represented by the possessive; as, "A pie *of gold*," "a cord *of wood*," "the house *of representatives*," etc. (844).

### *Parsing the Noun (93).*

**177.** A noun is parsed *etymologically*, by stating its accidents, or grammatical properties (110), as exemplified (181).

**178.** NOTE.—The possessive is easily known by its form. As the nominative and objective of nouns are alike, in parsing nouns in the following lists, all nouns not in the possessive, may be said to be in the nominative. The method of distinguishing the nominative and objective will be explained in its proper place. As *person* belongs not to the *form*, but to the *relations* of the noun, the mention of it may be omitted for the present.

**179.** N. B.—In all parsing, much time will be saved, if the pupil be accustomed to say everything necessary to be said, at once, without waiting to have each particular drawn from him by a question—to say it in the shortest possible manner—and also to say the same things always in the *same order*. Every teacher will of course select that order which he prefers. The order here presented may perhaps be acceptable to most teachers (182).

**180.** As it makes no difference in the construction of a sentence, whether a noun be proper or common, there seems to be little or no advantage in mentioning this distinction in parsing. Some accordingly omit this, as well as *person* in parsing, for the sake of brevity—an object worthy of consideration in a large school, where economy of time is important. Or, when a proper noun occurs, which is comparatively seldom, it may be mentioned, taking it always for granted that a noun is common when not otherwise mentioned. This appears to be sufficient for every purpose.

PRELIMINARY ORAL EXERCISE.

**181.** In proceeding to parse the noun, the teacher, if he thinks proper, may begin by some such inductive process as the following:

The class having gone through the preceding definitions and rules, the teacher may call on some one to mention the NAME of any thing he sees, or happens to think of; and suppose he mentions the words *house, tree, book, desk, pen*, etc., let these words be written on the blackboard. He may then call on another, and another, in the same way, still writing the *names* as mentioned. In this way the pupils will furnish a list of exercises for themselves.

The teacher may then take the first of these, "house," and write it by itself on the board, at the left hand, and proceed with some such questions as the following, the answers to which, from what has been previously learned, will be obvious, and readily given:—

Is *House* the *name* of any thing?

What part of speech is the name of a thing?

Then, what part of speech is *House*? Ans. "*A noun.*"

(After the word *house* on the board now write the word "*noun.*")

What is a noun?—How many kinds of nouns are there?

What is a proper noun?—what a common noun?

Is the word *house* proper or common? Ans. *Common.* Why?

(Then after the word "*noun*" write the word *common*, as before.)

What are the properties or accidents of the noun?

What is gender?—How many genders are there?

What nouns are masculine?—what feminine?—what neuter?

To which of these does the word *house* belong? Ans. *Neuter.* Why?

(Then write the word *neuter* after *common*, as above.)

What is the next property of the noun?

What is number?—How many numbers are there?

What does the singular denote?—the plural?

Does *house* denote one or more than one?

Of what number then is *house*? Ans. *Singular.*

(Now add as above the word *singular*.)

What is the next property of a noun?

How many cases are there? Name them.

Inflect *house* in the singular: in the plural.

Which of these cases is used when a noun is mentioned simply as the name of an object? (166—Note).

*House* being used in this manner here, in what case is it? Ans. In the *Nominative*.

(Then write *nominative* at the end, as above.)

There will now have been written on the blackboard the following:—

HOUSE, *Noun, Common, Neuter, Singular, Nominative.*

The teacher may then ask, as a sort of review: Why do you call *house*, a *noun*?—why, *common*?—why, *neuter*?—why, *singular*?—why, the *nominative*?—requiring a distinct answer to each question. And lastly, he may require the pupil to state these reasons in order without the questions being asked; thus:—

HOUSE—a *Noun*, because the name of a thing;

*Common*, because it belongs to all things of the sort;

*Neuter*, because without sex;

*Singular*, because it denotes one, plural, *houses*;

*Nominative*, because it is used *only* as a name (166).

By repeating this process a few times, occasionally, all that belongs to the parsing of a noun will become so familiar, and so clearly understood, as to be always easy.

182. In parsing, these accidents may be stated, either in the order above, or in such as the teacher prefers. Some say, “A *common neuter noun, in the nominative singular.*” Others prefer, as giving more prominence to the accidents, and sufficiently euphonious, to say, “A *noun, common, neuter, in the nominative singular*;—or omitting the kind of noun, except when a proper noun occurs, for reasons stated (180), to say more briefly, “A *noun, neuter, in the nominative singular.*” This last method is the one here recommended, as being brief and sufficiently descriptive.

#### EXERCISES.

1. State the gender, case, and number of the following nouns, and always in the same order; thus, “Father, a *noun, masculine, in the nominative, singular.*”

Father, brothers, mother’s, boys, book, loaf, arms, wife, hats, sisters’, bride’s, bottles, brush, goose, eagles’ wings, echo, ox’s horn, mouse, kings, queens, bread, child’s toy, grass, tooth, tongs, candle, chair, Jane’s boots, Robert’s shoe, horse, bridle.

2. Go over the same list, giving a reason for everything stated; thus, “Father, a *noun*, because the name of an object; *masculine*, because it denotes a male; *nominative*, because mentioned simply as the name of an object (166); *singular*, because it denotes *one.*”

## THE ARTICLE.

**183.** *An article* is a word put before a noun, to indicate the manner in which it is used (707, etc.).

**184.** There are two articles, *a* or *an* and *the*.

**185.** *A* or *an* is called the *indefinite* article, because it shows that its noun denotes a person or thing *indefinitely*, or without distinction; as, *A* man, i. e., *any* man, or *some* man, without stating which one.

**186.** *A* is used before a consonant; as, *a book*: also before a vowel or diphthong, which combines with its sound the power of initial *y*, or *w*; as, *a unit*, *a use*, *a eulogy*, *a ewe*, many *a one*.

**187.** *An* is used before a vowel or silent *h*; as, *an age*, *an hour*; also before words beginning with *h* sounded, when the accent is on the second syllable; as, *an heroic* action, *an historical* account;—because *h* in such words is but slightly sounded.

**188.** NOTE.—The primary form of this article is *An (ane)*. The *n* has been dropped before a consonant, from regard to euphony.

**189.** *A* or *an* is sometimes used in the sense of *one*, *each*, *every*; as, "Six cents *a* pound;" "two shillings *a* yard;" "one dollar *a* day;" "four hundred *a* year" (192).

**190.** REMARK.—In the expressions *a hunting*, *a fishing*, *a going*, *a running*, *a building*, and the like; also, in the expressions, now nearly obsolete, "*a Wednesdays*," "*a nights*," "*a pieces*," etc., *a* is equivalent to *at*, *to*, *in*, *on*, and is to be regarded, not as an article, but as a *preposition* (548). In the same sense, it is used as a *prefix* in such words as *afloat*, *ashore*, *asleep*, *abed*, etc.

**191.** *The* is called the *definite* article, because it shows that its noun is used *definitely*, and refers to some particular person or thing; as, *the man*, i. e., some particular man ascertained or pointed out. See Syntax (707-2).

**192.** NOTE.—The article is sometimes said to limit the signifi-

tion of a noun, and is therefore called a "definitive." This is scarcely correct. A noun with *a* or *an* prefixed, is always used in an individual sense, to denote *one of a class*. But this being for the most part sufficiently indicated by the singular number, the use of the article to mark the individual is necessary only in the few cases in which the noun, in the singular number, is used in a generic, as well as individual sense. Thus, the terms *man*, *woman*, *oak*, etc., without an article mean the *species*; but with *a* or *an* prefixed, they mean the *individual*; as, *a man*, *a woman*, *an oak*. So far only can *a* or *an* properly be said to limit, or perform the part of a definitive. In other respects it rather shows the want of limitation.

193. In like manner, the article *the* commonly indicates that its noun is limited, and refers to some particular person or thing, but still the *article* is not the limiting word. A noun may be limited in a variety of ways; by notoriety or eminence, by previous mention, by an adjective, a possessive, a relative clause, a preposition and its case, etc., but never by the article, except perhaps in the case of previous mention, and even that is doubtful. Thus, when we say, "The *red* book," "the *boy's* book," "the book *which we lost*," "the book *on the table*," we perceive that the word *book*, following *the*, is limited—not, however, by the article, but by the words *red*, *boy's*, etc. This fact constitutes a specific difference between the article and the adjective: *the adjective always describes or limits its noun* (195); *the article does not*, but is only a sort of index, to give previous notice that the noun is used in a particular way.

### *Parsing the Article.*

194. The article is parsed by stating whether it is *definite* or *indefinite*, and to what noun it belongs; thus, "A book." *A* is the indefinite article, and belongs to *book*.

### EXERCISES.

Is it proper to say—a man,	or an man?	why?
a apple,	or an apple?	why?
a house,	or an house?	why?
a hour,	or an hour?	why?
a unicorn,	or an unicorn?	why?
a ewe,	or an ewe?	why?

1. Prefix the indefinite article *a* or *an* correctly to the following words.

2. Tell which words are nouns, and why—parse them (177)—inflect them.

Chair, table, horse, cart, book, house, garden, bird, owl, egg, oar, eye, tree, cow, unit, use, old man, young man, word, hook, pot, bench, desk, room, oven, oak, eulogy, ewe, uncle, aunt;—open wagon, useful contrivance, round stone, old hat.

3. In the following, correct such as are wrong, and give a reason for the change;—parse the articles and nouns.

An cup, a door, a apple, a pear, a ounce, a pound, an hat, an wig, an eulogy, an youth, a honor, a heir, a crow, a ostrich, a pen—a ugly beast, a useful tree, an humming-bird, an neat cottage, a upper room, an huge monster.

---

## THE ADJECTIVE.

**195.** *An Adjective* is a word used to qualify a substantive (109); as, “A *good* boy;” “a *square* box;” “*ten* dollars;” “we found him *poor*.”

**196.** A noun is *qualified* by an adjective, when the object named is thereby *described, limited, or distinguished* from other things of the same name. This is done in two ways:—

1. Certain adjectives connect with their nouns some *quality* by which the objects named are described or distinguished from others of the same kind; as, “A *red* flag;” “an *amusing* story.” Such are *common* and *participial* adjectives (203, 206).

2. Others merely limit, without expressing any quality; as, “An *American* book;” “*ten* dollars;” “*last* week;” “*this* year;” “*every* day,” etc. Such are *circumstantial, numeral, and definitive* adjectives (204, 205, 206, V.).

**197.** Adjectives, as predicates (586), may qualify an infinitive mood (393), or clause of a sentence (585) used as

a substantive; as, "*To play is pleasant.*"—" *That the rich are happy* is not always *true*" (684).

**198.** Several adjectives sometimes qualify the same noun; as, "*A smooth, round stone*" (583, 1; 716).

**199.** An adjective is sometimes used to qualify the meaning of another adjective, the two forming a sort of compound adjective; as, "*A bright-red color*;" "*a dark-blue coat*;" "*a cast-iron ball*" (618).

**200.** When other parts of speech are used to qualify or limit a noun or pronoun, they perform the part of an adjective, and should be parsed as such; thus,

**Noun**; as, *A gold ring*; *silver cup*, *sea water*, *a stone bridge*.

**Pronouns**; as, *A he bear*; *a she wolf*.

**Adverbs**; as, *Is the child well?* for *very* age; the *then* king.

**Prepositions**; as, *The above remark*; the *under* side.

**201.** On the contrary, adjectives without a substantive are sometimes used as nouns; as, "*God rewards the good, and punishes the bad.*"—" *The virtuous* are the most *happy*." Adjectives used in this way are usually preceded by *the*, and when applied to persons, are for the most part considered plural.

### *Division of Adjectives.*

**202.** Adjectives are sometimes divided into the following classes, viz.:

— **203. I.** Adjectives denoting *quality*, called *Common Adjectives*; as, *good, sweet, large, short*.

Various kinds of qualities may be expressed—

1. Those which are recognized directly *by the senses*; as, *white snow, flowing stream*.

2. Those which we can affirm of anything only as *compared with others*; as, *large* man, *short* pencil.

3. Those which express *a relation* in which any thing stands to ourselves or others; as, an *agreeable* acquaintance.

— 204. II. Adjectives denoting *quantity*; as, *one*, *much*, *little*.

NOTE.—When adjectives of magnitude refer to distinct individuals, they indicate *quality* rather than *quantity*; as, *great* lion, a *small* tree.

Of adjectives denoting quantity, there are four classes:

— 1. *Definite numeral* adjectives, denoting some exact number; as, *seven* men.

— Numeral adjectives are of two kinds, *Cardinal* and *Ordinal*.

— The *Cardinal* numbers indicate *how many*; they are *one*, *two*, *three*, *four*, etc.

— The *Ordinal* numbers indicate *which one of a number*; they are *first*, *second*, *third*, etc. In compound numbers, the last only has the ordinal form; as, *twenty-FIRST*; *two hundred and fifty-THIRD*, etc.

Numeral adjectives, being also *names* of numbers, are often used as *nouns*, and so have the inflection and construction of nouns; thus, by *twos*, by *tens*, by *fifties*. For *ten's* sake, for *twenty's* sake. *One* and *one* are *two*. *Two* is an even number. *Five* is the half of ten. Three *fives* ARE fifteen. *Fifteen* is divisible by three. Twice *two* IS four.\* *Four* is equal to twice two. Three *fourths*.

---

\* In some arithmetics, the language employed in the operation of multiplying—such as “Twice two *are* four, twice three *are* six”—is incorrect. It should be, “Twice two *is* four,” etc.; for the word *two* is used as a singular noun—the name of a number. The adverb “twice” is not in construction with it, and consequently does not make it plural. The meaning is, “The number two taken twice is equal to four.” For the same reason we should say, “Three times



2. *Indefinite numeral* adjectives are such as do not denote any exact number; as, *few, many, several, certain, etc.*

3. *Distributive numeral* adjectives are such as point out a number of objects individually; the principal are *each, every, either, neither*.

These are sometimes called adjective pronouns (296.)

4. Those denoting *quantity as applied to materials*; as, *much, little, some, any*.

205. III. *Circumstantial*, which express circumstances of time, place, nation, etc.

206. IV. *Participial*, consisting of participles, or compounds of participles, used as adjectives; as, an *amusing* story, an *unmerited* rebuke; to pass *unmolested*.

The former of these loses its verbal character, and simply describes; the latter sometimes performs the office of a participle, although evidently compounded after its derivation.

[To these some add—

V. *Definitive* or *distinguishing* adjectives, which do not express any property of an object, but merely point it out, or limit in various ways the meaning of the noun. To this class belong such words as *this, that, these, those, former, latter*. These sometimes accompany the noun, and sometimes refer to it understood, or stand instead of it, after the manner of pronouns, and hence are sometimes called *Pronominal adjectives*, and sometimes *Adjective pronouns*. (See 289.)]

REMARK.—The articles, *a* or *an*, and *the*, are sometimes classified as adjectives. (See 192, 193.)

*two is six*," because the meaning is, "*Two* taken three times is six." If we say, "*Three times one are three*," we make "*times*" the subject of the verb, whereas the subject of the verb really is "*one*," and "*times*" is in the objective of number (828). 2:4::6:12, should be read, "*As 2 is to 4, so is 6 to 12*;" not "*As two are to four, so are*," etc. But when numerals denoting more than one are used as adjectives, with a substantive expressed or understood, they must have a plural construction; as, "*Two are better than one*."

207.

*Table of Adjectives.*

Classes of Adjectives.	1. OF QUALITY . . .	1. <i>Sensible</i> . . . . .	Red.
		2. <i>Comparative</i> . . . . .	Long.
		3. <i>Relational</i> . . . . .	Pleasant.
	2. OF QUANTITY . . .	<i>Definite numeral</i> . . . . .	Cardinal . One.
			Ordinal . First.
		<i>Indefinite</i> . . . . .	Few, many.
		<i>Distributive</i> . . . . .	Each.
	3. CIRCUMSTANTIAL . . .	<i>Measure</i> . . . . .	Much.
		<i>Time</i> . . . . .	Daily.
		<i>Place</i> . . . . .	Eastern.
		<i>Nation, etc.</i> . . . . .	American.
	4. PARTICIPIAL . . .	(Proper adjectives.)	
		<i>Descriptive</i> . . . . .	Amusing.
		<i>Verbal</i> (Compound) . . . . .	Unmerited.

208. Adjectives in English are inflected only to express *degrees of comparison*; as, *wise, wiser, wisest*.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

209. Common and participial adjectives for the most part have three forms, called degrees of comparison; namely, *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

210. The *Positive* expresses a quality, simply; as, "Gold is *heavy*."

211. The *Comparative* expresses a quality in a higher degree in one object than in another, or in several taken together; as, "Gold is *heavier* than silver." "He is *wiser* than his teachers."

212. The *Superlative* expresses a quality in one object in the highest degree compared with

*several others*

several others ; as, "Gold is the *most precious* of the metals."

Sometimes, in the comparison of two objects, the quality compared is not named, but the meaning of the adjective sufficiently indicates the quality ; as, "My barn is larger than your house ;" that is, the size, etc., is *larger*.

**213. REMARK.**—The superlative degree, when made by prefixing the adverb *most*, is often used to express a very high degree of a quality in an object, without directly comparing it with others ; as, "He is a *most distinguished* man." Thus used, it is called the *superlative of eminence*, and commonly has *a* or *an* before it, if the noun is singular ; and is without an article, if the noun is plural. The same thing is expressed by prefixing the adverb *very*, *exceedingly*, etc. ; as, "a *very distinguished* man ;" "*very distinguished* men." The superlative of comparison commonly has *the* before it.

#### RULES FOR COMPARISON.

**214. RULE 1.** Adjectives of one syllable form the comparative by adding *er* to the positive, and the superlative by adding *est* ; as, *sweet*, *sweeter*, *sweetest*.

Words ending in *e* mute, drop *e* before *er* and *est* ; as, *large*, *larger*, *largest*. (66).

**215. RULE 2.** Adjectives of more than one syllable, are commonly compared by prefixing *more* and *most* to the positive ; as, *numerous*, *more numerous*, *most numerous*.

**216. REMARK.**—Though these rules indicate the prevailing usage, yet adjectives of two syllables are not unfrequently compared by *er* and *est* ; as, "Our *tendèrest* cares ;" "The *commonest* materials ;" and some adjectives of one syllable, as *wise*, *apt*, *fit*, etc., from regard to euphony or taste, are sometimes compared by *more* and *most*. Dissyllables in *le* and *y* are generally compared by *er* and *est* ; as *able*, *abler*, *ablest*. All adjectives in *y* after a consonant, change *y* into *i* before *er* and *est* ; as, *dry*, *drier*, *driest* ; *happy*, *happier*, *happiest* (57) ; but *y* after a vowel is not changed ; as, *gay*, *gayer*, *gayest*.

**217.** A lower degree of a quality in one object compared with another, and the lowest compared with several others, is expressed

by prefixing *less* and *least* to the positive ; as, *sweet, less sweet, least sweet*. This, by way of distinction, is sometimes called the comparison of diminution, or comparison descending.

218. The meaning of the positive is sometimes diminished without employing comparison, by annexing the syllable *ish* ; as *white, whitish ; black, blackish*. These may be called diminutive adjectives. So also various shades, degrees, or modifications of quality are frequently expressed by connecting with the adjective such words as *rather, somewhat, slightly, a little, too, very, greatly*, etc., and, in the comparative and superlative, by such words as *much, far, altogether, by far*, etc.

219. Such adjectives as *superior, inferior, exterior, interior*, etc., though derived from Latin comparatives, and involving the idea of comparison, are not considered the comparative degree in English, any more than such words as *preferable, previous*, etc. They have neither the form nor the construction of the comparative (968-2).

### *Irregular Comparison.*

220. The following adjectives are compared irregularly, viz. :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Good	better	best
Bad, evil, or ill	worse	worst
Little	less, ( <i>sometimes</i> lesser)	least
Much or many	more	most
Late	later, ( <i>irregular, latter</i> )	latest or last
Near	nearer	nearest or next
Far	farther	farthest
<i>Forth</i> (obsolete)	further	furthest
Fore	former	foremost or first
Old	older or elder	oldest or eldest

221. 1. *Much*, is applied to things weighed or measured ; *many*, to things that are numbered ; *more* and *most*, to both.

2. *Farther* and *farthest* generally denote place or distance ; as, "The *farther* they went, the more interesting was the scene ;" *further* and *furthest* refer to quantity or addition ; as, "I have nothing *further* to say."

3. *Older* and *oldest* are applied to persons or things, and refer to age or duration ; as, "Homer is an *older* poet than Virgil ; "The pyramids are *older* than the pantheon."

4. *Elder* and *eldest* (from the obsolete *eld*) are applied only to persons of the same family, and denote priority of birth ; as, "An *elder* brother."

5. *Later* and *latest* have respect to time ; *latter* and *last*, to position and order.

222. Some superlatives are formed by annexing *most*, sometimes to the comparative, and sometimes to the word from which the comparative is formed ; as, *upper*, *uppermost* or *upmost*, from *up* ; *nether*, *nethermost* ; *inner*, *innermost*, or *inmost*, from *in* ; *hinder*, *hindermost*, or *hindmost*, from *hind* ; *outer*, *outermost*, or *utmost*, from *out*.

#### *Adjectives not Compared.*

223. Adjectives whose signification does not admit of increase or diminution, can not properly be compared. These are—

1. *Numerals* ; as, *one*, *two* ; *third*, *fourth* ; *each*, *all*, *some*, etc.

2. *Proper* adjectives ; as, *English*, *American*, *Roman*.

3. Adjectives that denote *figure*, *shape*, or *material* ; as, *circular*, *square*, *wooden*, etc.

4. Such adjectives as denote *posture* or *position* ; as, *perpendicular*, *horizontal*.

5. *Definitives* ; as, *this*, *that*, etc.

6. Adjectives of an *absolute* or *superlative* signification ; as, *true*, *perfect*, *universal*, *chief*, *extreme*, *infinite*, *complete*.

224. REMARK.—Of these last, however, comparative and superlative forms are sometimes used, either to give greater force to the

expression, or when the words are used in a sense not strictly absolute or superlative. The following are examples:—

*Extreme*.—"The *extremest* of evils."—*Bacon*. "The *extremest* verge."—*Shakes*. "His *extremest* state."—*Spencer*. [So in Greek *ἐσχάτως*.]

*Chief*.—"Chiefest of the herdsmen."—*Bible*. "*Chiefest* courtier."—*Shakes*. "First and *chiefest*."—*Milton*.

*Perfect*.—"Having *more perfect* knowledge of that way," i. e., knowledge nearer to perfection.—*Bible*. So, "The *most perfect* society."—*E. Everett*. "*Less perfect* imitations."—*Macaulay*.

*More complete, most complete, less complete*, are common.

### *Parsing the Adjective.*

225. In parsing an adjective fully: 1. State its class. 2. Compare, if admitting comparison (209), and if not compared, so state it. 3. Tell its degree of comparison, if compared. 4. The noun which it qualifies. Do this always in the same order and in the fewest words possible.

### EXAMPLES.

"A *wise* son maketh a *glad* father."—"Wisdom is *more precious* than rubies."—"The sluggard is *wiser* in his own conceit, than *seven* men that can render a reason."—"Blessed are the *pure* in heart."

*Wise* is a common adjective, compared by *er* and *est* (214), positive, and qualifies *son* (196).

*Glad* is a common adjective compared by *er* and *est*, positive, and qualifies *father*.

*More precious* is a common adjective, compared by *more* and *most*, comparative, and qualifies *wisdom* (705, 4).

*Wiser* is a common adjective, compared by *er* and *est*, comparative, and qualifies *sluggard* (196) and (705, 4).

*Seven* is an adjective of quantity, numeral, cardinal, not compared, and qualifies *men*.

*Blessed* is a participial adjective, compared by *more* and *most*, positive, and qualifies *men* understood.

*Pure* is a common adjective, compared by *er* and *est*, positive, and qualifies *men* understood.

**226. ABBREVIATION.**—This process may be abbreviated without loss, by omitting the *class* (202), as of no use in Syntax (584), and also omitting to mention the degree of comparison (209), except the comparative or superlative, taking it for granted, in adjectives compared, that it is in the positive, unless otherwise stated. Any mention of degree, in adjectives not compared, would be improper. In this way the preceding adjectives may be parsed, thus:—

*Wise* is an adjective, compared by *er* and *est*, and qualifies *son*.

*More precious* is an adjective, compared by *more* and *most*, comparative, and qualifies *wisdom*.

*Wiser* is an adjective, compared by *er* and *est*, comparative, and qualifies *sluggard*.

## **227. PRELIMINARY ORAL EXERCISE.**

What is an adjective? The pupil having given the definition (195) in answer, for the purpose of illustrating it, a list of nouns may again be formed on the blackboard as directed (181); and supposing the list to be *man, horse, apple, house, tree, book*, etc., the teacher may take them up, each in order, and proceed in some such way as the following:—

MAN.—What part of speech is *man*? Why? Are all men exactly alike? If not, mention some things in which they differ. Ans. Some are *tall*; some are *short*; some *old*; some *young*; some *learned*; some *unlearned*; some *wise*; some *foolish*, etc.

When you say “a *tall* man, a *short* man, an *old* man, a *young* man,” what is the use of the words *tall, short, old*, etc. Ans. They are used to qualify the word “*man*,” by telling what sort of a man is meant (196-1). What part of speech are words used to qualify nouns? Then what part of speech are *tall, short, old, young*, etc.? Prefix an adjective to each of the nouns in the list above, so as to make sense. Prefix as many adjectives to each noun separately, as you can think of, to make sense; thus: HORSE—a *large* horse, a *small* horse, a *young* horse, an *old* horse, etc. What part of speech is *large, small, young*, etc.? Why?

COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Are all men equally *tall*? Ans. No; some men are *taller* than others. When you say, "James is *taller* than John," in what form or degree is the adjective *taller*? What does the comparative degree express (211)? How is the comparative degree formed? When is the comparative formed by annexing *er*? When, by prefixing *more*? What is the comparative form of *tall, short, old, young, etc.*? What is the comparative form of *learned, unlearned, foolish, virtuous, etc.*? Put the adjectives prefixed to nouns in the list above, in the comparative form.—Form sentences, each of which shall contain a noun, and its adjective in the comparative degree.

SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

When you compare James with several other persons, and find that he exceeds them all in *tallness*, how would you express it? Ans. I would say, "James is the *tallest*." What form of the adjective is *tallest*? What does the superlative express? In how many ways is it formed? When by annexing *est* to the positive? When, by prefixing *most*? What is the superlative of *tall, short, old, young, rich, poor, etc.*?—of *learned, unlearned, beautiful, virtuous, etc.*? Put the adjectives prefixed to the nouns, in the list above, in the superlative form. Form sentences, in each of which there shall be one of the above nouns, and its adjective in the superlative degree.

EXERCISES.

1. COMPARE—Bright, diligent, thin, noble, bad, pretty, fearful, brave, warm, active, worthy, cold, large, industrious, affable, wise, obedient, gloomy, able, sad, little, strong, near, dutiful, serene, big, good, careless, hot, late, fruitful, lovely, gentle, pleasant, sagacious, prudent.

Add to each one of these adjectives a noun which it can properly qualify; as, "A bright *day*," "a diligent *student*," etc.

2. In what form are the following adjectives?—Mildest, better, high, more, uttermost, happiest, worthless, least, whiter, lowermost, worse, cruel, eldest, gentle, magnificent, best, many, less, gayest, peaceful, virtuous, sweetest, evil, inmost, happier, miserable, temperate, useful, delicate, honorable, meek, proud, amiable, morose.



Compare each of these adjectives.

To each of these add a noun which the adjectives can properly qualify.

8. In the following phrases, tell which words are nouns, and which are adjectives. Parse as directed (182, 194, 225).

A good man; a kind heart; a clear sky; the benevolent lady; the highest hill; a skillful artist; an older companion; man's chief concern; a lady's lap-dog; most splendid talents; the liveliest disposition; a pleasant temper; the raging billows; temples magnificent; silent shades; excellent corn; a loftier tower; a happier disposition; the third day; a round ball; a square table; one good book is better than many bad books.

4. Take a paragraph in any book: point out the *articles, nouns, and adjectives*. Parse them; but, in nouns, omit the *case*.

---

## PRONOUNS.

**228.** A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a noun; as, "*John* is a good boy; *he* is diligent in *his* studies."

**229.** The noun instead of which a pronoun is used, is called its *antecedent*, because the pronoun refers to it as *previously mentioned*, or in some way understood (236).

**230.** Pronouns of the third person are used in writing and speaking, to prevent the frequent and awkward repetition of the noun. Thus, without the pronoun, the above example would read, "*John* is a good boy; *John* is diligent in *John's* studies."

**231.** A pronoun is sometimes used instead of another pronoun; as, "*You* and *I* must attend to our duty." See 730.

**232.** Pronouns may be divided into *Personal, Relative, Interrogative, and Adjective*.

---

*Table of Pronouns.*

PRONOUNS.	I. PERSONAL . . .	<div> <div>Simple . . .</div> <div>Compound</div> </div>	<div> <div>I, thou, he, she, it, one.</div> <div>We, you, they.</div> <div>Myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself.</div> <div>Ourselves, yourselves, themselves.</div> </div>
	II. RELATIVE . . .	<div> <div>Simple . . .</div> <div>Compound</div> </div>	<div> <div>Who.</div> <div>Which.</div> <div>That.</div> <div>What.</div> <div>Who(so)ever.</div> <div>Which(so)ever.</div> <div>What(so)ever.</div> </div>
	III. INTERROGATIVE . . . . .		<div> <div>Who?</div> <div>Which?</div> <div>What?</div> </div>
	IV. ADJECTIVE . . .	<div> <div>Possessive</div> <div>Distributive</div> <div>Demonstrative . . .</div> <div>Indefinite . . .</div> </div>	<div> <div>My, thy, his, hers, its, one's.</div> <div>Our, your, their.</div> <div>Each.</div> <div>Every.</div> <div>Either.</div> <div>Neither.</div> <div>This, these.</div> <div>That, those.</div> <div>None, one.</div> <div>Any, other.</div> <div>All, another.</div> <div>Such, etc. (305).</div> </div>

1. Personal Pronouns.

**233. Personal Pronouns** are those which distinguish the *person* by their form. They are either *Simple* or *Compound*.

Personal pronouns, or *pronouns substantive*, are simple *substitutes* for the names of persons or things, and have the same *person*, *gender*, and *number* as the nouns for which they stand.

Every personal pronoun has a *possessive* pronoun answering to it, which is joined to a noun in the same way as an adjective (291.)

### *Simple Personal Pronouns.*

**234.** The simple personal pronouns are *I, thou, he, she, it*; with their plurals, *we, you, they*.

*I* is of the first person, and denotes the *speaker*;

*Thou* is of the second, and denotes the *person addressed*;

*He, she, it*, are of the third, and denote the person or thing *spoken of* (111).

**235.** The word *one*, standing for a person not named, may be regarded as a kind of indefinite personal pronoun; as, "*One* can never know," etc.

The plural form, *ones*, is used in a more definite sense; as, "The great *ones* of the earth."

**236.** 1. The pronouns *I* and *thou* denote the speaker, and the person addressed, without previous mention, or even knowledge of their names, the persons intended being sufficiently indicated by their presence, or some other circumstance.

2. The pronouns of the third person refer to some person or thing previously mentioned, or easily understood from the context, or from the nature of the sentence.

**237.** *He, she, it*, and *they*, are frequently used as general terms in the beginning of a sentence, equivalent to "the person," etc., without reference to a noun going before; as, "He [the person] that loveth pleasure shall be a poor man." "How far is it [the distance] to the city."

**238.** *They* is also used in a vague sense for "people,"

in such expressions as "They say," [like the French *on*, or the German *man*].

**239.** The *accidents* of personal pronouns, like those of nouns (110), are *Person*, *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case*. They are thus inflected :—

		SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
		<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Poss.</i>	<i>Obj.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Poss.</i>	<i>Obj.</i>
1.	<i>M. or F.</i>	I	mine	me	We	ours	us
2.	<i>M. or F.</i>	Thou (244)	thine	thee	You (245)	yours	you
3.	<i>Masc.</i>	He	his	him	They	theirs	them
	<i>Fem.</i>	She	hers	her	They	theirs	them
	<i>Neut.</i>	It	its	it	They	theirs	them

**Observations on Personal Pronouns.**

**240.** In many Grammars, the possessive of all the pronouns, except *he* and *it*, has two forms, as follows: *My* or *mine*; *thy* or *thine*; *her* or *hers*; *our* or *ours*; *your* or *yours*; *their* or *theirs*. According to this arrangement, the first form, *my*, *thy*, etc., is always used before a noun denoting the object possessed; the second form, *mine*, *thine*, etc., as referring to a noun previously mentioned, or evident from the connection. Both adjectives and possessive cases of nouns are used either before nouns, or standing alone after the verb, thus :

This is my house ; or, This house is mine.

This is a good house ; or, This house is good.

This is John's house ; or, This house is John's.

To this classification there is no important objection ; and such as prefer it may readily adopt it, though, for reasons assigned (290), a different classification is here preferred. *Mine* and *thine* are sometimes used, as possessives for *my* and *thy* (293).

**241.** Some, again, regard *my*, *thy*, etc., as the only form of the possessive case, and *mine*, *thine*, etc., not as a possessive case at all, but as a substitute for the possessive case of the pronoun and the noun referred to together, and that it is in the nominative or objective case, according as the noun referred to would be, in the full expression ; thus, " Your book is old, *mine* is new," is equivalent to " Your book is old, *my book* is new." Hence it is inferred, that *mine* is not a possessive case, but a substitute for *my book*, and the subject of *is*. This, though plausible, is obviously incorrect. If, instead of the pronoun *mine*, we substitute a noun, that noun must be in the possessive

case, thus, "Your book is old, *John's* is new." The construction in these two sentences being identical, if "*John's*" is the possessive case, so also is "*mine*," and if in the possessive, it can not be the subject of "*is*." The mistake lies in considering *mine* a substitute for *my book*, whereas it really is a substitute only for *my*, including such a reference to the word *book* in the first part of the sentence, as renders its repetition in the second part unnecessary. When it is deemed proper to express the noun after the pronoun, the form *mine*, etc., must be changed for *my*, etc. Thus, we can not say "*Mine* book," but "*My* book;" but we can with equal propriety say, "*John's* book," or "The book is *John's*." See Appendix III.

242. 1. In the same manner may be explained, the use of the possessive after transitive verbs in the active voice, and after prepositions: thus, "James lost his books, and I gave him *mine*," meaning *my books*.—"A picture of the king's," is a picture of (i. e. from) the king's pictures. So "A book of mine," is a book of (from) my books. "A friend of yours," is a friend of (from) your friends.

2. It is worthy of notice, that though this use of the possessive after *of* originally and strictly implies selection, or a *part* only, it has insensibly come to be used when no such selection is, or ever can be, intended. Thus we may say, "That house of yours," "that farm of yours," without intending to imply that any other houses or farms belong to you; and when we say, "That head of yours," selection is obviously excluded by the sense.

243. In royal proclamations, charters, editorial articles, and the like, where there is no individual responsibility, *we* is frequently applied to one person.

244. *Thou* is now used only in the solemn style—in addresses to the Deity, or to some important object in nature,—or to mark special emphasis,—or in the language of contempt. *Ye*, the plural of *thou*, is seldom used (except as the subject of the imperative), and only in the solemn style. It is sometimes used as the objective for *you*; as, "Vain pomp and glory of this world, I hate *ye*!"

245. *You*, the common plural of *thou*, is now used also to denote one person, but, even when it does so, it always takes a plural verb. This usage has become so fixed and uniform, that some eminent grammarians contend for its being regarded as singular. *No*

*advantage, however, would be gained by adopting this proposal*, and it seems to accord much more with simplicity, as well as with fact, to regard it as a plural which has come to be used for the singular by the figure *enallagè* (1044, 4). In certain kinds of writing (243), *we* is used in the same way, and so also is the corresponding pronoun in French, and some other modern languages, in which, however, it is always regarded as a plural form.

246. The pronoun *it* is used in a variety of ways:—

1. Properly it is used instead of a *neuter noun*, or substantive phrase; as, “*Life* is short; *it* should be well improved.” “James is a good scholar, and he knows *it*,” viz., that he is a good scholar.

2. It is used as an *indefinite subject* of the verb *to be*, followed by a predicate in any person or number; as, “*It* is *I*,” “*It* is *you*,” “*It* is *they*,” etc.

It is used in the same manner after the verb *to be*, in interrogative sentences; as, “Who is *it*?” “What is *it*?” etc.

3. It is prefixed as an *introductory subject* to such verbs as *to be*, *to happen*, *to become*, and the like, referring to an infinitive mood, or substantive phrase, which follows the verb, and is its true subject; as, “*It* is an honor for a man *to cease from strife*,” i. e., To cease from strife is an honor for a man. “*It* has been proved, *that the earth revolves on its axis*,” i. e., *It*, namely, *that the earth revolves on its axis*, has been proved.

4. It is used *indefinitely* before certain verbs, to denote some cause unknown,—or general,—or well known, whose action is expressed by the verb; as, “*It* rains;” “*It* snows;” “*It* is cold,” etc. Verbs before which *it* is thus used, are said to be impersonal (520).

5. It is sometimes used as a mere *expletive*; as, “Come and trip *it* as you go.”

247. The possessives, *hers*, *its*, *ours*, *yours*,

*theirs*, should never be written *her's*, *it's*, *our's*, *your's*, *their's*.

**248.** *His* and *its*, before a noun, are possessive pronouns; without a noun following, they are the possessive case (292). *Her*, before a noun, is the possessive pronoun; without a noun, it is the objective case.

### *Compound Personal Pronouns.*

**249.** *Myself* (*ourselves*), *thyself* (*yourselves*), *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, with their plurals, *ourselves*, *yourselves*, *themselves*, are called **Compound Personal Pronouns**. They are used in two cases—the nominative, and the objective. In the nominative they are emphatic, and are added to their respective personal pronouns, or are used instead of them; as, “I *myself* did it.” “*Himself* shall come.” In the objective they are *reflexive*, showing that the agent is also the object of his own act; as, “Judas went and hanged *himself*.”

**250.** The simple pronouns, also, are sometimes used in a *reflexive* sense; as, “Thou hast hewed *thee* out a sepulchre, as he that heweth *him* out a sepulchre on high.”—*Bible*.

**251.** *Ourself* and *yourself* are used as compounds, corresponding to *we* and *you*, applied to an individual; as, “We *ourselves* will follow.”—*Shakes*. “You must do it *yourself*.”

**252.** The possessive *emphatic* or *reflexive*, is made by adding the word *own* to the possessives *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, etc. (295); as, “God created man in *his own* image.” “The book is *mine own*.”

### *Parsing.*

**253.** Personal pronouns are parsed nearly like the substantives for which they stand (182). Thus,

“I love”—*I* is a pronoun of the first person, masculine or feminine, singular, nominative.

As an additional exercise, a reason may be assigned for each statement, thus:—

*I* is a *pronoun*,—it stands for the noun ——. *personal*,—its form determines its person.  
*first person*,—it represents the speaker.  
*Masculine*, or *Feminine*,—it denotes male or female.  
*Singular*,—it denotes but one.  
*Nominative*,—subject (315) of *love*.

## 254. PRELIMINARY ORAL EXERCISE.

What is a pronoun (228)? What is a personal pronoun (233)? In the sentence, “John is in the garden, he says it is full of trees,” for what noun or name, does the word *he* stand? Then what part of speech is *he*? Why? For what noun does the word *it* stand?—then what part of speech is *it*? Why? What other words stand instead of nouns? (Write a list of them on the blackboard.)

Write sentences, each containing one of these pronouns, and tell for what noun it stands.

Select the personal pronouns from sentences in any reading-lesson, or book, and say for what nouns they stand.

## EXERCISES ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Parse the following list, as directed* (253).—*I, thou, we, me, us, thine, he, him, she, hers, they, thee, them, its, theirs, you, her, ours, yours, mine, his, it;—myself, ourselves, yourself, himself, themselves.*

2. Select the personal pronouns in the following sentences, and parse them; if of the first or second person, state what they designate; if of the third, state the nouns for which they stand.

James says he is older than I; but I am taller than he.—That book is mine; take it and read it.—Let them do it themselves.—When you learn the lesson, come to me, and I will hear you say it.—They will go when we return.—



Thou art the man.—Your knife is sharper than mine; lend it to me, if you please, till I mend my pen.

3. Write sentences, each of which shall contain a pronoun in the nominative case—in the possessive case—in the objective case.

4 Change the following sentences, so that the pronoun *it* shall be omitted, and the subject or thing spoken of shall stand first (246-4).

It is pleasant to see the sun. It is criminal to deceive. It is manifest that you have been deceived. It is said that the cholera has appeared in England. It is easy to talk.

5. Write sentences of this kind both ways.

## 2. Relative Pronouns.

**255.** A *Relative Pronoun* is one that relates to, and connects its clause with, a noun or pronoun before it. The word to which it relates is called the *antecedent* (229); as, "The master *who* taught us."

REMARK.—The relative clause limits or describes the noun to which the relative refers.

**256.** The antecedent of a relative may be a noun—a pronoun—an infinitive mood—a clause of a sentence (636)—or any fact or thing implied in it; as,

"A *king who* is just, makes his people happy;"

"*He that* is wise, is wise for himself;"

"He who reads all will not be able *to think*, without *which* it is impertinent to read; nor *to act*, without *which* it is impertinent to think;"

"We are bound *to obey the Divine law, which* we can not do without Divine aid;"

"The man was said to be *innocent, which* he was not."

**257.** Relative pronouns are of two kinds, *Simple* and *Compound*.

*Simple Relative Pronouns.*

**258.** The simple relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*. *That* and *what* are indeclinable, and used only in the nominative and objective.

*Who* is masculine or feminine, and *which* is masculine, feminine, or neuter. They are inflected as follows:—

	SINGULAR AND PLURAL.	SINGULAR AND PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	Who	Which
<i>Poss.</i>	Whose	Whose
<i>Obj.</i>	Whom	Which

**259.** *Who* is applied to *persons* only; as, "The boy *who* reads."

**260.** *Which* is applied to inferior animals, and things without life; as, "The dog *which* barks"—"The book *which* was lost."

**261.** This relative, as in Latin, sometimes, for the sake of greater perspicuity, has its antecedent repeated after it; as, "I gave him a knife with an ivory handle, *which knife* he still has." The construction, however, is inelegant, and should be avoided.

**262.** *Which* is applied also to nouns expressing *collections of persons*, when the reference is to the collection, and not to the individuals composing it; as, "The committee *which* was appointed." Also to names of persons considered only as a word; as, "*Nero, which* is only another name for cruelty."

**263.** *Which* has for its possessive *whose*; as, "A religion *whose* origin is Divine;" Instead of "*whose*," however, the objective with *of* before it is more common; as, "A religion the origin *of which* is Divine."

**264.** *That* is applied to both *persons* and *things*; as, "The boy *that* reads;" "the dog *that* barks;" "the book *that* was lost" (748).

**265.** *What* is applied to *things* only, and is never used but when the antecedent is omitted; as, "This is *what* I wanted":—

**266.** In this example, properly speaking, *what* neither *includes* the antecedent, nor has it understood, in the ordinary sense of that expression. If it included the antecedent, then *what* would be of two cases at the same time, which, if not absurd, is an anomaly not to be readily admitted. If the antecedent were understood, it could be supplied, and then the sentence would stand; "This is the *thing what* I wanted." But this is not English. The truth is, *what* is a simple relative, having, wherever used, like all other relatives, but one case; but yet it has this peculiarity of usage, that it always refers to a general antecedent omitted, but easily supplied by the mind, and to which belongs the other case in the construction. The antecedent referred to is always the word "*thing*" or "*things*," or some general or indefinite term, obvious from the sense. When that antecedent is expressed, the relative following must be *which* or *that*, but never *what*. Thus, "This is what I wanted," is equivalent to "This is *that which*, or the *thing which*, I wanted." Hence, though it is true that *what* is equivalent in meaning to *that which*, or *the thing which*, yet the error to which this has imperceptibly led, viz., that *what* is a compound relative, and includes the antecedent, should be carefully avoided.—See Appendix IV.

**267.** The *office* of the relative is twofold:—

1. It is sometimes merely *additive* or *descriptive*, and connects its clause with the antecedent, for the purpose of further describing, without modifying it; thus used, it is a mere connective, nearly equivalent to *and* with a personal pronoun *he*, *she*, *it*, etc.; as, "Light is a body *which* moves with great celerity" = "Light is a body, *and it* moves with great celerity."

2. It is more commonly *restrictive*, and connects its clause with the antecedent, in order to modify or restrict its meaning. Thus used, the relative with its clause is equivalent to an adjective; as, "Every thing *which has life* is an animal" = "Every *living* thing is an animal." When used in this way, the relative can not be resolved into *and* with a personal pronoun, for we can not say, "Every thing is an animal, *and it* has life."

**268.** The relatives *who* and *which* are used in both

senses. *That* is used in restrictive, more commonly than in descriptive clauses.

**269.** *Which* is sometimes used as a demonstrative adjective pronoun (302), equivalent to *this* or *these*, and qualifies or limits the substantive following it (676); as, "*Which* things are an allegory" = "*These* things are an allegory."

**279.** *What* is, also, sometimes used in the same way; as, "*What* money he earned was given to his mother."

[REMARK.—In English, a relative must always be in the same sentence with its antecedent, and, if restrictive, in close connection with it. In Latin, the relative often has its antecedent in a preceding sentence, and connected with it by a conjunctive term. When this is the case, it should be rendered into English by a demonstrative, or personal pronoun. This difference of idiom should be carefully marked by classical students. See Lat. Gr., 295. Bullions and Morris', 701.

**271.** In such sentences as the following—"Shun such *as* are vicious"—"Send such *as* you have"—some grammarians consider the word *as* a relative: in the first example, as the subject of *are*; and in the second, as the objective, after *have*. Others, more properly, regard it, in all such sentences, as a conjunction, and the expressions as elliptical—to be supplied thus: "Shun such *as* [those who] are vicious." "Send such *as* [those which] you have."—See Appendix V.

### Compound Relative Pronouns.

†**272.** The relatives *who*, *which*, and *what*, with *ever* or *soever* annexed, are called *compound relatives*. They are used instead of the simple relative and a general or indefinite antecedent; as, "*Whosoever* committeth sin is the servant of sin;" that is, "*Any one* or *every one who* committeth sin," etc. "*Whatever* is evil should be avoided;" that is, "*Every thing which* is evil," etc.

They are inflected like the simple relatives from which they are derived; but the compounds of *which* and *what* have no possessive case.

273. Like the relative *what*, the compound relatives are used only when the indefinite antecedent is omitted. Whenever that is expressed, the simple relative *who*, *which*, or *that*, should be used as in the preceding examples.

274. It is therefore not correct to say, either that these relatives include the antecedents, and so have two cases, or that the antecedent is understood. The same reasoning that is applied to the relative *what* (266), is equally applicable to the compound relatives, only it must be remembered that the antecedent referred to in these, and to which one of the cases properly belongs, is always a general or indefinite term.

275. In old writings, the antecedent word is sometimes expressed, either before or after the compound relative, for the sake of greater emphasis or precision; as, "Blessed is *he*, *whosoever* shall not be offended in me."—*Eng. Bible*. "*Whosoever* will, let *him* take the water of life." This usage, however, is now nearly obsolete, except with the word *whatever*; as, "*Whatever* you do, let it be done well."

276. *Whoso*, formerly used in the sense of *whoever*, or *whosoever*, is now obsolete.

277. *Whatever*, *whatsoever*, *whichever*, and *whichever*, are often used before substantives, as a sort of *indefinite adjective*; as, "*Whatever* course you take, act uprightly." When thus used, the noun is sometimes placed between *what*, *which*, or *whose*, and *soever*; as, "What course *soever*."—"Into *whose* house *soever* ye enter" (856).

### *Parsing.*

278. The relative is parsed by stating its gender, number, case, and antecedent [the gender and number being always the same as those of the antecedent (742)]; thus:—

"The boy *who* studies *what* is useful, will improve."

*Who* is a relative pronoun, masculine, in the nominative singular, and refers to "boy," as its antecedent.

*What* is a relative pronoun, neuter, in the nominative singular, and refers to "thing," or "that," as its antecedent, omitted: if supplied, *what* must be changed into *which* (266); thus, the *thing which*, or *that which*.

The pupil may assign reasons for the statements made in parsing, as exemplified (253).

**EXERCISES ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.**

1. Write on the blackboard a list of nouns, arranged in a column on the left side, and write after each its proper relative; thus, "The man—*who* ; "The bird—*which*."

2. In the following sentences, point out the relative, and the antecedent or word to which it relates. Also state whether it is *additive* or *restrictive* (267):—

A man who is generous will be honored.—God, by whose kindness we live, whom we worship, who created all things, is eternal. ✕ That is the book which I lost.—He who steals my purse, steals trash.—This is the boy whom we met.—This is the man that did it.—These are the books that you bought. ✕ The person who does no good, does harm.—The woman who was hurt, is well.—This is the cat, that killed the rat, that ate the malt, that lay in the house that Jack built.

3. In each of the following sentences, point out the compound relative—mention the antecedent omitted, to which it refers. Insert the antecedent in each sentence, and make the necessary change in the relative (273):—

✕ Whoever steals my purse, steals trash.—Whoever does no good does harm.—Whatever purifies the heart, fortifies it. Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye to them also.—Whoever sins, will suffer.—I love whoever loves me.—Now whatsoever God hath said to thee, do.—Whosoever sins ye remit, they are remitted.

4. In the following sentences, wherever it can be done, change the relative and antecedent for the compound relative:—

Bring with you every thing which you see.—Any one who told such a story, has been misinformed.—Any thing that is worth doing at all, is worth doing well.—Any thing that gives pain to others, deserves not the name of pleasure.—Every one who loves pleasure, will be a poor man.

### 3. Interrogative Pronouns.

279. *Who*, *which*, and *what*, when used in asking questions, are called *Interrogative Pronouns*; as, "*Who* is there?" "*Which* will you take?" "*What* did he say?"

280. *Who* and *which* are inflected like the relative (258).

281. In questions, *who* is equivalent to *what person*; *which* and *what* have a noun following, to which, like an adjective, they belong; or they refer to one understood, but easily supplied; thus, "Who [what person] is there?"—"Which book will you take?"—"What [thing] did he say?"

282. *Who* applies to person only; *which* and *what*, to persons or things.

283. As applied to persons, *who* inquires for the name; *which*, for the individual; *what*, for the character or occupation; as, "*Who* wrote that book?"—"Mr. Webster."—"Which of them?"—"Noah Webster."—"What is he?"—"A lexicographer."

284. The same pronouns used responsively, in the beginning of a dependent clause (635), or in what is called the indirect question (i. e., in a way which, in an independent clause, would be a direct question), are properly neither *interrogatives* nor *relatives*, but a sort of *indefinite* pronouns (306). This will be best illustrated by an example:—

*Interrogative*.—"Who wrote that letter?"

*Relative*.—"I know the person *who* wrote that letter;" that is, I am acquainted with him.

*Indefinite*.—"I know *who* wrote that letter;" that is, I know by whom that letter was written.

285. It is necessary to these words being regarded as indefinite—

1. That they begin a dependent clause ; 2. That they do not ask a question ; 3. That an antecedent can not be supplied without changing the sense ; and 4. That the whole clause be either the subject of a verb, or the object of a verb or preposition. These remarks will apply to all the following examples : " I know *who* wrote that letter ? " — " Tell me *who* wrote that letter ? " — " Do you know *who* wrote that letter ? " — " Nobody knows *who* he is. " — " *Who* he is can not be known. " — " Did he tell you *who* he is ? " — " We can not tell *which* is he. " — " I know not *what* I shall do. " — " It is uncertain to *whom* that book belongs. " — " Teach me *what* is truth and *what* is error. "

### *Parsing.*

286. Interrogative pronouns, in both the direct and the indirect questions, are parsed by stating their gender, number, and case ; thus :—

" *Who* comes ? I know not *who* comes. "

*Who* is an interrogative pronoun, masculine or feminine, in the nominative singular.

*Who* is an indefinite pronoun (or an interrogative pronoun used responsively), masculine or feminine, in the nominative singular.

Reasons may be assigned for each statement, as exemplified (253).

### EXERCISES ON INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Point out in which of the following sentences, *who*, *which*, and *what* are *relatives* ; in which, *interrogatives* ; and in which, *indefinites*.

Who steals my purse, steals trash.—To whom did you give that book ?—What I do, thou knowest not now.—Who you are, what you are, or to whom you belong, no one knows.—What shall I do ?—Who built that house ?—Do you know by whom that house was built ?—Is that the



man who built that house?—Which book is yours?—Do you know which book is yours?—I saw a book which was said to be yours.—I know which book is yours.—What in me is dark, illumine.—What is crooked, can not be made straight.—What is wanting, can not be numbered.—What is wanted?—I know what is wanted.

2. Write sentences, each of which shall contain one of these pronouns in one or other of these different senses.

#### 4. Adjective Pronouns.

**287. Adjective Pronouns** are words used, sometimes like adjectives, to qualify a noun, and sometimes like pronouns, to stand instead of nouns.

**288. Adjective Pronouns** are divided into four classes: *Possessive, Distributive, Demonstrative* and *Indefinite*.

**289.** Adjectives used as nouns, or with a noun understood, commonly take the article *the* before them (201); as, *the young*; *the old*; *the good*, etc. Adjective pronouns do not.

**290.** Of the adjective pronouns, the *Possessives* (291) clearly have a double character. As an adjective, they qualify a noun, and as a pronoun, stand instead of a noun. The *Distributives*, *Demonstratives*, and *Indefinites*, as adjectives, qualify a noun expressed or understood, or they stand instead of a noun, and thus may be regarded sometimes as adjectives, and sometimes as pronouns. Hence they are classed by some grammarians as adjectives, and called *pronominal adjectives*; and by others as pronouns, and called *adjective pronouns*. The latter classification and name are here preferred, because they have been admitted into the grammars of almost all languages; and because a change of established nomenclature is an evil of so serious a kind, that it should not be incurred unless for the most urgent reasons. Still, it is a matter of little moment, *in itself*, which of these classifications is adopted. The principal point

for the learner is, to know what words are adjective pronouns [or pronominal adjectives], and their character and use; and every teacher may adopt that classification and name which he prefers. For the convenience of such as prefer to consider them *pronominal adjectives*, they are classed with adjectives (207).

*Possessive Adjective Pronouns.*

**291.** The *Possessive* Pronouns are such as denote possession. They are *my, thy, his, her, its, —our, your, their.*

*One's*, in modern usage, has the office and construction of a possessive pronoun; as, one can not believe *one's* senses. This form, though common, is not to be admired.

**292.** The possessive pronouns are derived from the personal, and combine the office of the adjective and pronoun, for they always limit one noun denoting the object possessed, and stand instead of another denoting the possessor. They agree with the possessive case of the personal pronoun in meaning, but differ from it in construction. The possessive pronoun, like the adjective, is always followed by its noun; as, "This is *my* book;" the possessive case of the personal is never followed by a noun, but refers to one known or previously expressed; as, "This book is *mine*." The possessive case of nouns is used both ways; as, "This is *John's* book;" or, "This book is *John's*."

**293.** Formerly *mine* and *thine* were used before a vowel, or the letter *h*, instead of *my* and *thy*; as, "Blot out all *mine* iniquities;" "Commune with *thine* heart." This form is still in use.

**294.** *His, her, and its*, when followed by a substantive, are possessive pronouns: not followed by a substantive, *his* is the possessive case of *he*; *her*, the objective case of *she*; and *its*, the possessive case of *it*. In the English Bible, *his* is neuter as well as masculine, and is used where *its* would now be used. See *Prov.* xiii. 31; *Ia.* ix. 22.

**295.** *Own* is not used as a possessive by itself, but is added to the possessive pronouns, or to the possessive case of nouns, to render the possession expressed by them emphatic; as, "My *own* book;" "The boy's *own* book." *Own* is properly an adjective, but is by some

grammarians erroneously parsed as part of the possessive. The possessive pronoun, with *own* following it, may have its substantive understood; as, "This book is *my own*."

### *Distributive Adjective Pronouns.*

**296.** The *Distributive* Pronouns represent objects as taken separately. They are *each, every, either, neither*.

**297.** *Each* denotes two or more objects taken separately.

**298.** *Every* denotes each of more than two objects taken individually, and comprehends them all.

**299.** *Either* means one of two, but not both. It is sometimes used for each; as, "On *either* side of the river."

**300.** *Neither* means *not either*.

**301.** The distributives are always of the third person singular, even when they relate to the persons speaking, or to those spoken to; as, "Each of *us*—each of *you*—each of *them*—has *his* faults."

### *Demonstrative Adjective Pronouns.*

**302.** The *Demonstrative* Pronouns point out objects definitely. They are *this, that*, with their plurals, *these, those* (692–694).

*The* when emphatic has the force of a demonstrative; as, "That is *the* man."

**303.** *Yon* and *which*, before a noun, seem more properly to belong to this class of words than to any other; as, "*Yon* trembling coward;" "*Yon* tall cliff;" "*Which* things are an allegory;" "*These* things," etc.

**304.** *Former* and *latter*, *first* and *last* with *the* prefixed—though often used like *that* and *this*—referring to words contrasted, are properly adjectives (201).

*Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.*

**305.** The *Indefinite* Pronouns designate objects indefinitely. They are *none, any, all, such, whole, some, both, one* (used indefinitely), *other, another*. The three last are declined like nouns.

**306.** To these may be added, *no, much, many, few, several*, and the like; also, *who, which*, and *what*, used responsively (284).

**307.** *One*, denoting a definite number, is a numeral adjective (204); as, "*One* man is sufficient." But *one*, referring indefinitely to an individual, is an indefinite pronoun. Thus used, with its noun following, it is indeclinable like the adjective, as, "*One* man's interest is not to be preferred to another's." Without its noun following, it is either singular or plural, and is declinable, like the substantive; as, "*One* is as good as another." "He took the old bird, and left the young *ones*." The same remark is applicable to the indefinites, *other* and *another*.

The expressions *the one—the other*, denoting contrast (692), have the singular form only; but they sometimes refer to antecedent words denoting more than one, regarded, however, either distributively or as a class; thus: "For that which befalleth the sons of men, befalleth beasts—as *the one* dieth, so dieth *the other*."—Eccl. iii. 19. See also Philippians, i. 16. For these words the French have a plural form, *les uns—les autres*, literally, *the ones—the others*.

**308.** *None* [*no one*] is used in both numbers; and is never followed by a substantive; as, "*None* is so rude;" "*Among none* is there more sobriety."

**309.** *Another* is a compound of the article *an* and *other*; sometimes written separately, *an other*.

**310.** *Some* is used with numerals, to signify *about*; as, "*Some* fifty years ago." This should not be imitated.

**311.** The expressions, *each other*, and *one another*, form what may be called *reciprocal* pronouns, and express a mutual relation between different persons. They have this peculiarity of construction, that the first word of each pair is in the nominative, in apposition with the plural subject, which it distributes; and the second, in the objective, governed by the transitive verb or preposition; as, "*They*

loved *each other*," i. e. ; They loved *each* the *other* ; " They wrote to *one another*," i. e., *one* to *another* (873). *Each other* applies to two ; *one another*, to more than two.

312. Some of these indefinites, and words of similar signification, are sometimes used *adverbially* with the comparative degree ; as, " Are you *any* better ? " " I am *some* better," " He is *none* the better—*all* the better," i. e. ; " Are you better in any degree ? " etc.

### Parsing.

313. Adjective Pronouns are parsed by stating the class to which they belong, and the word which they qualify, thus :—

" *Every* day brings *its own* duties."

*Every* is a distributive adjective pronoun, qualifying " day."

*Its* is a possessive adjective pronoun, emphatic, qualifying " *duties*."

[ *Own* is a dependent adjective ; joined with *its*, to render the possession expressed emphatic (295) ].

### EXERCISES ON ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Point-out the adjective pronouns in the following phrases and sentences, and parse them :—

Every man is, to some extent, the architect of his own fortune.—Do good to all men—injury to none.—All things come alike to all.—Your own friend, and your father's friend, forsake not.—This one, or that one, will answer my purpose ; both are good.—Some men love their money more than their honor.—Every one of us has his weak points (301).

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON PRONOUNS.

In the following phrases and sentences, point out the pronouns, and parse them—each as already directed :—

Train up a child in the way he should go, and when he is old, he will not depart from it.—Remember now thy

Creator in the days of thy youth.—He is an object of pity, who can not respect himself.—Feeble are all those pleasures in which the heart has no share.—You may read the lesson yourself.—John and he lost themselves in the woods.—You and he may divide it between you.—You and she and I will divide it among ourselves.

EXERCISES ON ALL THE PRECEDING PARTS OF SPEECH.

In the following sentences, point out the nouns, articles, adjectives and pronouns, in the order in which they occur, and parse them :—

My son, forget not my law ; but let thy heart keep my commandments : For length of days, and long life, and peace, shall they add to thee.—Let not mercy and truth forsake thee : bind them about thy neck, write them upon the table of thy heart.—Honor the Lord with thy substance, and with the first-fruits of all thine increase : So shall thy barns be filled with plenty, and thy presses shall burst out with new wine.—Happy is the man that findeth Wisdom.—Length of days is in her right hand, and in her left hand, riches and honor.—Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.—The sluggard will not plow by reason of the cold ; therefore shall he beg in harvest, and have nothing.—The hand of the diligent maketh rich.

---

THE VERB.

**314.** A *Verb* is a word used to express the *act*, *being*, or *state* of its subject (315) ; as “John *runs* ;” “He *is loved* ;” “The boy *sleeps* ;” “Grass *is green*.” Hence—

A word that expresses the *act*, *being*, or *state* of a person or thing, is a Verb. Thus, we say, *runs* is a verb, because it expresses the act of *John*, etc.—See Appendix VII.

**315.** The *subject* of a verb is that person or thing, whose *act*, *being*, or *state*, the verb expresses. Thus, in the preceding example, “runs,” expresses the act of “John”—“is loved,” the state of “he,” as the object acted upon (369)—“sleeps,” the state of “boy”—and “is” affirms the existence of the quality “green” in grass. In like manner, in the sentences, “*Let him come* ;” “I saw a man *cutting* wood ;” “*let*” expresses the act of *thou* understood, denoting the person addressed—“*come*,” the act of “*him*,” and “*cutting*” the act of “*man*.”

### *Classification of Verbs.*

**316.** 1. In relation to their *meaning* and *office* in a sentence, Verbs are of three kinds, *Transitive*, *Intransitive*, and *Attributive*.\*

This division corresponds with the three forms of sentences as presented in Introduction, page 2.

2. In relation to their *form*, they are divided into three classes, *Regular*, *Irregular*, and *Defective*.

3. In the formation of *compound tenses*, they are distinguished as *Principal* and *Auxiliary*.

**317.** A *Transitive* verb expresses an act done by one person or thing to another ; as, “James *strikes* the table ;” “The table *is struck* by James” (367). [See, also, 319, Remark.]

**318.** An *Intransitive* verb expresses the *being* or *state* of its subject, or an *act* not done to another ; as, “I *am* ;” “He *sleeps* ;” “You *run*.”

---

\* The division of verbs into transitive and intransitive has been so generally adopted and approved by grammarians, that the *attributive* verb may be regarded as one form of the *intransitive* verb.

**319.** An *attributive* verb asserts and connects an *attribute* with its subject; as, "Snow *is* white;" "Man *is* mortal."

The term *attribute* is here used to signify a quality or other limitation *asserted*.

Verbs otherwise intransitive become attributive when the sense is incomplete without an attribute; as, "It looks *round*;" "It appears *new*."

REMARK.—An analysis of the passive voice, separating the participle from the verb *to be*, will exhibit the latter as an attributive verb, and the former as an attribute of its subject; as,

Snow *is white*.—John *is a scholar*.—He *is hurt*.

Established usage, however, makes it desirable to retain the distinction of passive voice of transitive verbs.

**320a.** In this division, *Transitive* (passing over) verbs include all those which express an act that *passes over* from the actor to an object; or the meaning of which has such a reference to an object, as to render the expression of it necessary to complete the sense; as, "He *LOVES us*;" "I *HEAR you*;" "James *RESEMBLES his brother*;" "He *HAS a book*."

**320b.** These three classes of verbs may be thus distinguished:—

1. *Transitive* verbs in the active voice, require an *object* after them to complete the sense; as, "James *strikes the table*." *Intransitive* verbs do not require an object or any other word after them; but the sense is complete without it; as, "He *sits*;" "You *ride*;" "The wind *blows*;" "The wheel *turns*." *Attributive* verbs require after them to complete the sense, some word or phrase, not an object, to limit or explain the *subject*; as, "Man *is mortal*."

2. As the object of a transitive active verb is in the objective case, any verb which makes sense with *me, thee, him, her, it, them*, after it, is transitive.

When a verb in the active voice has an object, it is *transitive*: when it has not an object, it is *intransitive* or *attributive*.

3. In the use of *transitive* verbs, three things are always implied—the *actor*, the *act*, and the *object* acted upon: in the use of the *intransitive* verbs there are only two—the *subject*, and the *being, state, or act*, ascribed to it—in the use of the *attributive* verbs, there are three—the *subject*, the *assertor* (verb) and *attribute*.



**321.** *Intransitive* verbs are sometimes rendered transitive—

1. By the addition of another word; as, *intransitive*, “I laugh;” *transitive*, “I laugh at” (375).

2. When followed by a noun of the same, or similar signification, as an object; as, *intransitive*, “I run;” *transitive*, “I run a race.”

**322.** The same verbs are sometimes used in a transitive, and sometimes in an intransitive sense. Thus, in the sentence, “Charity *thinketh* no evil,” the verb is transitive. In the sentence, “*Think* on me,” it is intransitive.

**323.** So also verbs, really transitive, are used intransitively, when they have no object, and the sense intended, being merely to denote an exercise, is complete without it. Thus, when we say, “That boy *reads* and *writes* well”—“*reads*” and “*writes*” are really transitive verbs; because, a person who reads and writes, must read and write *something*. Yet, as the sense is complete without the object, nothing more being intended than simply, “That boy is a good reader and writer,” the verbs, as here used, are intransitive.

### **324.** PRELIMINARY ORAL EXERCISE.

When we say, “John runs,” what part of speech is John?—Why? What is the use of *runs* in the sentence? It tells what John does. Is what a person or thing does, the *act* of that person or thing? What part of speech are words that express the act of a person or thing? Verbs. Then what part of speech is *runs*?—Why? Of what is it that verbs express the act, being, or state? Of their subject. Whose act does *runs* express? Then what is *John* to the verb *runs*? When you say, “John runs,” does it mean that he does anything to another? What sort of verbs express an act not done to another? What kind of a verb, then, is *runs*? If you say, “John cuts wood,” which word tells what John does? Then what part of speech is *cuts*? Is it transitive or intransitive? Why?

### EXERCISES.

1. In the following sentences, tell which words are verbs, and why—which are transitive, and why—which are intransitive, and why?—which are attributive, and why?

The boy studies grammar.—The girls play.—Grass grows in the meadows. The farmer ploughs his field, and sows his grain.—Victoria is queen of England.—Romulus built Rome.—The sun shines.—Honey is sweet.—The winds blow.—The tree fell.—Bring your books, and prepare your lessons.—The apple tastes sour.—Have you recited?—Who read last?—God created the heavens and the earth.—Columbus discovered America.

2. Write a list of nouns, or names of persons or of things, in a column on the left side of the blackboard; write after each, a word or words which tell something that each of them *does* or *is*; tell what part of speech that word is, and why: if a verb, whether transitive, intransitive, or attributive, and why?

### *Formation of Tenses.*

**325.** In respect of form, verbs are divided into *Regular*, *Irregular*, and *Defective*.

**326.** A *Regular* verb is one that forms its *past tense* (415) in the indicative mood (376) active (366), and its *past participle* (459), by adding *ed* to the present; as, present, *act*; past, *acted*; past participle, *acted*.

NOTE.—Verbs ending in *e* mute, drop *e* before *ed*; as *love*, *loved*, *loved* (60). See 494.

**327.** An *Irregular* verb is one that does not form its *past tense* in the indicative active, and its *past participle*, by adding *ed* to the present; as, present, *write*; past, *wrote*; past participle, *written*.

**328.** A *Defective* verb is one in which some of the parts are wanting. To this class belong chiefly *Auxiliary* and *Impersonal* verbs.

### *Auxiliary Verbs.*

**329.** *Auxiliary* (or helping) verbs are those by the help of which other verbs are inflected. They are, *do*,

*have, be;—shall, will;—may, can, must;—and, except be, they are used only in the present and the past tense; thus:—*

*Present.* Do, have, shall, will, may, can, must.

*Past.* Did, had, should, would, might, could, —

**330.** *Be, do, and have,* are also principal verbs, and, as such, belong to irregular verbs (512). *Be* is used as an auxiliary in all its parts (354).

For the inflection of auxiliaries with the principal verb, see 494, 507, and 516.

### *The Use of Auxiliaries.*

**331.** Some verbs, now used as auxiliaries only, were probably at first independent verbs, and combined syntactically with the following verb, in the infinitive—the sign *to* being in process of time omitted, as it now is after such verbs as *see, hear, feel*, etc. (877); thus, “I can [to] do”—“They will [to] write”—“We could [to] go,” etc.; and some grammarians contend that they should be so considered still (881).

**332.** *Shall, will, may, can,* and their past tenses, *should, would, etc.*, as auxiliaries, retain the personal endings of the second person singular; thus, *shalt, wilt, mayst, canst—shouldst, wouldst, mightst, couldst*. But in their present they do not retain the personal ending of the third person singular; thus, we say, *he shall, will, may, can*—not *he shalls, wills, mayes, cans*. This will be seen by their use in the inflection of verbs.

**333.** *Do* is used as an auxiliary in the present tense, and *did* in the past, to render the expression emphatic; as, “I *do* love”—“I *did* love.” Also when the verb in these tenses is used interrogatively, or negatively; as, “*Does* he study?”—“He does *not* study.”—“*Did* he go?”—“He *did not* go.”—*Do* is used as an auxiliary in the second person singular of the imperative; as, “*Do* thou love.”

**334.** *Have* is used as an auxiliary in the *present-perfect* tense, and *had* in the *past-perfect*.

For further remarks upon the analysis of compound tenses, with *do* and *have* as auxiliaries, see APPENDIX IX.

*Shall and Will—Should and Would.\**

**335.** *Shall*, primarily and strictly, denotes present obligation ; as, "I shall go," i. e., I am under obligation to go ; and *will*, present inclination, purpose, or volition ; as, "I will go," i. e., It is my purpose to go, (I will to go) ; from which the futurity of the act, etc., is naturally inferred. But, as auxiliaries, the primary signification is nearly lost sight of, and they are used to denote futurity—still modified, however, in their use, by their primary signification. They are usually distinguished as follows :—

SHALL and WILL, expressing RESOLUTION, PURPOSE, etc.

**336.** *Will* denotes the *purpose, resolution, or inclination*, of a person, in reference to his *own acts* ; and *shall*, his *purpose*, etc., in reference to the acts of *others* over whom he has authority or power. As the purpose expressed may be that of the *speaker*, of the *person addressed*, or of the person *spoken of*, hence will arise the three following forms, viz. :—

FIRST FORM.—Expressing the resolution of the speaker. It is my purpose or intention that—I *will* write—you *shall* write—he *shall* write. Or, without a preceding clause : I *will* write—you *shall* write—he *shall* write.

SECOND FORM.—Expressing the resolution of the person addressed. It is your purpose, etc., that—I *shall* write—you *will* write—he *shall* write.

THIRD FORM.—Expressing the resolution of the person spoken of. It is his purpose, etc., that—I *shall* write—you *shall* write—he (himself) *will* write—he (another) *shall* write.

The second and third forms can not be used without a preceding clause.

**337.** Hence it is manifest that *will* expresses the *purpose, resolution, promise, etc.*, of the *subject* of the verb. Thus :—

I <i>will</i> go,	}	expresses	{	My resolution, etc.
Thou <i>will</i> go,				Thy resolution, etc.
He <i>will</i> go,				His resolution, etc.

**338.** Fixed purpose or determination, however, is expressed in a more positive and absolute manner in the first person by *shall* than by

---

\* Pupils may be required to analyze these as other compound tenses of the verb, giving the distinctive meaning of each part. Such an exercise will tend to produce critical accuracy in the use of these auxiliaries.

*will*, because in this way, the person, as it were, divests himself of will, and puts himself entirely at the disposal of another. Thus, a person may say, "I *shall* go, though much against my inclination."

For this reason, *shall* is more polite and respectful in a promise, and more offensive in a threat, than *will*.

### *Interrogatively.*

**339.** In asking questions, these auxiliaries, in this sense, are used with reference to the will of the second person, to whom a question is always supposed to be addressed, and hence are used as in the second of the above forms ; thus—

*Shall* I write ? *Will* you write ? *Shall* he write ?—Equivalent to—

Is it your purpose that I *shall* write ?—you *will* write ?—he *shall* write ?

### SHALL and WILL expressing FUTURITY.

**340.** In regard to simple futurity, the use of *shall* and *will* is directly the reverse of what it is in the expression of resolution : that is, *will* takes the place of *shall*, and *shall* takes the place of *will*. In other words, when a person in reference to himself foretells what is future, *shall* is used ; and in reference to others, *will* is used. Thus—

FIRST FORM.—I think that I *shall* go—that thou *will* go—that he *will* go. Or, without a preceding clause : I *shall* go—thou *will* go—he *will* go.

SECOND FORM.—You think that I *will* go—that you *shall* go—that he *will* go.

THIRD FORM.—He thinks that I *will* go—that you *will* go—that he (himself) *shall* go—that he (another) *will* go.

**341.** But when the thing foretold is regarded, either as pleasing, or repugnant, *shall* is used with reference to the first person, even when others are represented as foretelling ; as—

You seem to think	}	that	{	I <i>shall</i> recover.
He seems to fear				I <i>shall</i> not recover.

### *Interrogatively respecting the future.*

**342.** *Shall* is used interrogatively in the first and the second person, and *will* in the third ; as, " *Shall* I arrive in time ?"—" *Shall* you be at home to-morrow ?"—" *Will* your brother be there ?"

**343.** *Shall* is used, instead of *will*, after the conjunctions *if*, *provided*, *though*, *unless*, etc.—the adverbs *when*, *while*, *until*, *after*, *before*, etc.—and also after *whosoever*, or a relative pronoun in a restrictive

clause (267-2); as, "If they *shall* enter into my rest"—"When he *shall* appear"—"There is nothing covered which *shall* not be revealed"—"Whoever *shall* put away his wife."

344. *Should*, the past tense of *shall*, and *would*, the past tense of *will*, are auxiliaries of the past potential; and, in dependent clauses, are used in the same manner after a past tense, that *shall* and *will* are used after the present or future. Hence, in the preceding examples (336 to 338), if the verb in the preceding clause is put in *past time*, *should* will take the place of *shall*, and *would*, the place of *will*, in the dependent clause; thus—

FIRST FORM.—It *was* my purpose that I *would* write—you *should* write—he *should* write.

So also in the other forms: but when there is no dependence on a preceding clause, these words will be used as in the first form.

*May, Can, Must—Might, Could—To be.*

345. *May* denotes present liberty or permission; *can*, present ability; and *must*, present obligation or necessity. They are used as auxiliaries in the present potential, to express these ideas.

346. *May* sometimes denotes mere possibility; as, "He *may* write, perhaps"—"It *may* rain to-morrow."

347. *May*, before the subject of the verb, is used to express a wish or prayer; as, "*May* you be happy!"

348. *Can*, in poetry, is sometimes used by euphony for *canst*; as, "Thou trees and stones *can* teach."—*Davies*.

349. *Might* and *could* express, in past time, the same ideas generally that are expressed by *may* and *can* in the present. They are used as auxiliaries in the past potential.

350. *Might*, before the subject, is also used to express a wish; as, "*Might* it but turn out to be no worse than this!"

351. Sometimes, in the English Bible, *might* is used for *may*; as, "These things I say, that ye *might* be saved."—*John* v. 34.

352. Combined with *have*, these form a new series of compound auxiliaries; thus, *shall have* and *will have* are auxiliaries of the future-perfect indicative; *may have*, *can have*, and *must have*, of the present-perfect potential; and *might have*, etc., of the past-perfect potential.

353. But though *may* denotes present liberty, *may have* does not denote *past liberty*, but only the present *possibility*; thus, "He *may have* written," means, It is possible that he has written. So,

also, *must have* does not denote past necessity, but present certainty; thus, "He *must have* written," means, There is no doubt he has written; it can not be otherwise.

354. The verb "*to be*," in all its moods and tenses, is used as an auxiliary in forming the passive voice; as, "I *am* loved;" "He *was* loved, etc. (507). Also, in the progressive form of the active voice; as, "I *am* writing;" "He *was* writing," etc. (506).

355. All these auxiliaries are sometimes used without their verb, to express, by ellipsis, the same thing as the full form of the verb, together with its adjuncts, when that is used immediately before, either in the same or in a different tense; thus, "He writes poetry as well as I *do*;" "I can write as well as he *can*;" "If you can not write, I *will*;" "He will do that as well as I *can*;" "James can get his lesson as well as ever I *could*;" "He envies me as much as I *do* him."

356. The verb *do* (not auxiliary) is sometimes used as the substitute of another verb or phrase previously used; as, "We have not yet *found them all*, nor ever *shall do*."—*Milton*.—"Lucretius wrote on the nature of things in Latin, as Empedocles *had* already *done* in Greek."—*Acton*.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Correct the errors in the following sentences, and give a reason for the correction:—

I will be a loser by that bargain.—I will be drowned and nobody shall help me.—I will be punished if I do wrong.—You shall be punished if you do not reform.—It shall probably rain to-morrow.—If you shall come I shall come also.—Will I assist you?—I will be compelled to go home.—I am resolved that I shall do my duty.—I purposed that if you would come home, I should pay you a visit.—I hope that I will see him.—I hoped that I would see him.—You promised that you should write me soon.—He shall come of his own accord, if encouragement will be given.

2. In the following, tell which expressions are right, and which are wrong, and why:—

It is thought he shall come.—It will be impossible to get ready in time.—Ye will not come to me.—Ye shall

have your reward.—They should not do as they ought.—We are resolved that we will do our duty.—They are resolved that they shall do their duty.—I am determined that you will do your duty.—I am sure you will do your duty.

*Anomalous Usage.*

**357.** Several of these auxiliaries are sometimes used in a way which it is difficult, perhaps impossible, to explain in a satisfactory manner, and which may justly be regarded as *anomalous*. The following are a few of these :—

**358.** *Had* is sometimes used in poetry for *would* ; as, I *had* rather," "I *had* as lief," for, "I *would* rather," "I *would* as lief." Sometimes it is used for *would have* ; as, "My fortune *had* [would have] been his."—*Dryden*. Sometimes for *might* ; as, "Some men *had* [might] as well be schoolboys, as schoolmasters."

**359.** *Will* is sometimes used to express what is customary at the present time ; as, "He *will* sometimes sit whole hours in the shade ;" "He *will* read from morning till night."

**360.** *Would*, in like manner, is sometimes used to express what was customary in past times as, "The old man *would* shake his years away ;" "He'd sit him down."

**361.** *Would*, is sometimes used as a principal verb, equivalent to the present of *wish* or *desire* ; as, "When I make a feast, I *would* my guests should praise it—not the cooks."—"When I *would* [when I wish to] do good, evil is present with me. Thus used, the subject in the first person is sometimes omitted ; as, " *Would* God it were even," = "I pray God ;" " *Would* to God," = "I pray to God."

**362.** *Would*, with a negative, used in this way, is not merely negative of a wish or desire, but implies strong opposition or refusal ; as, "How often *would* I have gathered thy children—but ye *would* not ;" "Ye *would* none of my reproof."

**363.** *Should* is used in all persons to denote *present duty*, and *should have*, to denote *past duty* ; as, "You *should* write ;" "I *should have* written ;" "The rich *should* remember the poor."

It often denotes merely a supposed future event : as, "If he *should* promise, he will perform."



It is sometimes used in an indefinite sense after *that* ; as, "It is surprising that you *should* say so."

**364.** *Should* and *would* are sometimes used to express an assertion in a softened manner ; thus, instead of saying, "I think him insane"—"It seems to be improper," it is milder to say, "I *should* think him insane"—"It *would* seem to be improper."

## Inflection of Verbs.

**365.** The Accidents of verbs are *Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons* (473\*).

### *Of Voice.*

**366.** *Voice* is a particular form of the verb, which\* shows the relation of the *subject* or thing spoken of, to the *action* expressed by the verb (494, 507).

**367.** *Transitive* verbs have two voices, called the *Active* and the *Passive*.

**368.** The *Active Voice* (494) represents the subject of the verb as *acting* ; as, "JAMES *strikes* the table."

**369.** The *Passive Voice* (507) represents the subject of the verb as *acted upon* ; as, "The TABLE *is struck* by James."

In other words, the verb, in the active voice, expresses the *act* of its subject ;—in the passive, it expresses the *state* of its subject, as affected by the act. In the active voice, the subject of the verb *acts*—in the passive, it is *acted upon*.

**370.** It is manifest from these examples, that whether we use the active or the passive voice, the meaning is the same, except in certain

verbs in the present tense (509). There is the same *act*, the same *actor*, and the same *receiver of the act*. The difference is only in the *form* of expression. With the active voice, the actor in the *nominative case* is the subject of the verb (760); with the passive, the actor is in the *objective case* after a preposition (818).—In using the active voice, the receiver of the act is in the *objective case*, as the object of the verb (801); in using the passive, it is in the *nominative case*, as the subject of the verb.

**371.** It is manifest, also, that when we know the act done, the person or thing doing it, and that to which it is done, we can always, by means of the two voices, express the fact in two different ways; thus, "God created the world;" or, "The world was created by God." Also—

**372.** When the active voice is used, we may sometimes omit the object; thus, we can say, "John reads," without saying what he reads (323); and when the passive is used, we may omit the agent or actor; thus, we can say, "The letter is written," without saying by whom.

**373.** Hence, the following advantages arise from these two forms of expression:—

1. We can, by the form alone, direct attention, chiefly, either to the *actor*, or to that which is *acted upon*—to the former, by using the active voice—"God *created* the world"—to the latter, by using the passive—"The WORLD *was created* by God."

2. By means of the passive voice, we are able to state a fact, when we either do not know, or, for some reason, may not wish to state, by whom the act was done. Thus we can say, "The glass is broken," though we do not know who broke it; or if we know, do not wish to tell.

3. By this means, also, we have a variety, and of course, a choice of expression, and may, at pleasure, use that which to us appears the most perspicuous, convenient, or elegant.

**374.** *Intransitive* verbs can have no distinction of voice, because they have no object which can be used as the subject in the passive. Their form is generally active; as, "I *stand*;" "I *run*." A few are used also in the passive form, but with the same sense as in the active; as,

"He *is* come; "They *are* gone;" equivalent to, "He ~~has~~ come;" "They *have* gone."

**375. Intransitive** verbs are sometimes rendered **transitive**, and so capable of a passive form—

1. By the addition of another word: thus, "I *laugh*," is intransitive; "I *laugh at* (him)" is transitive; passive, "He *is laughed at* (by me)."

In parsing such examples, it is generally better, in the active voice, to parse the words separately—*laugh*, as an intransitive verb, and *at* as a preposition, followed by its object; but, in the passive voice, they must be parsed together as one word—a transitive verb, in the passive voice.

2. Intransitive verbs become transitive, when followed by a noun of similar signification as the object; as, intransitive, "I *run*," transitive, active, "I *run* a race;" passive, "A race *is run* by me."

3. Intransitive verbs become transitive, when used in a **Causative** sense; that is, when they denote the *causing* of that act or state which the verb properly expresses; as, "Walk your horse round the yard."—"The proprietors *run* a stage-coach daily." Passively, "Your horse *was walked* [made to walk] round the yard"—"A stage-coach *is run* [made to run] daily by the proprietors." Intransitive verbs, used in this way, are called **CAUSATIVES**.

4. Many verbs in the active voice, by an idiom peculiar to the English, are used in a sense nearly allied to the passive, but for which the passive will not always be a proper substitute. Thus, we say, "This field *ploughs* well"—"These lines *read* smoothly"—"This fruit *tastes* bitter"—"Linen *wears* better than cotton." The idea here expressed is quite different from that expressed by the passive form: "This field is well *ploughed*"—"These lines are smoothly *read*." Sometimes, however, the same idea is expressed by both forms; thus, "Wheat *sells* readily," or, "*is sold* readily at an advanced price." (Expressions of this kind are usually made in French by the reflected verb; thus, Ce champ *se laboure* bien,"—"Ces lignes *se lisent* aisément"). When used in this sense, they may properly be

ranked with intransitive verbs, as they are never followed by an objective case.

*Moods.*

**376.** *Mood* is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the signification of the verb.

**377.** In English Grammar, the moods are *six*; namely, the *Indicative*, *Potential*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, *Infinitive*, and *Participial* (397).

**378.** The *Indicative* mood declares the fact expressed by the verb, *simply* and *without limitation*; as, "He *is*,"—"He *loves*,"—"He *is loved*" (486, 494, 507.)

**379.** In other words, the indicative mood attributes to its subject the *act*, *being* or *state*, expressed by the verb, simply and without limitation.

**380.** The *Potential* mood declares, not the fact expressed by the verb, but only its *possibility*, or the *liberty*, *power*, *will*, or *obligation*, of the subject with respect to it; as, "The wind *may blow*"—"We *may walk*"—"I *can swim*"—"He *would not stay*"—"Children *should obey* their parents."

In other words, the potential mood expresses, not what the subject *does*, or *is*, etc., but what it *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should do*, or *be*, etc.

**381.** The auxiliaries *may*, *can*, etc., in the potential mood, in all probability, were at first independent verbs in the indicative, followed by the verb in the infinitive, without the sign *to* before it, as it is now used after such verbs as *see*, *hear*, *feel*, *let*, etc. (877). This is apparent when we consider that, "I *can go*"="I *am able to go*," etc. Grammarians now generally combine them as one word, constituting a particular form of the verb, to which (from its leading use) they have given the name of *potential mood*. The indicative and potential both *declare*, but they declare different things; the former declares what the subject *does*, or *is*; the latter what it *may* or *can*, etc., *do* or

*be*. The declaration made by the indicative is simple ; that made by the potential is always complex, containing the idea of *liberty, power*, etc., in connection with the act." "He *writes*," is the indicative of the verb *to write*. "He *can write*," is the indicative of the verb *can*, with the infinitive *to write* ; or, combined, the potential of the verb *to write*."

**382.** Both the indicative and the potential mood are used *interrogatively* ; as, "Does he love ?"—"Can he write ?" They are also used without dependence on another verb, and express a complete idea in themselves. "James writes a letter," and "James can write a letter," are equally complete and independent sentences.

**383.** The *Subjunctive* mood represents the fact expressed by the verb, not as actual, but as conditional, desirable, or contingent ; as, if he *study*, he will improve."—"O that thou *wert* as my brother ?"

**384.** This mood, as its name implies, is always *subjoined* to and dependent on another verb expressed or understood. "If he *study*, he will improve."—"O (I wish) that thou *wert*," etc.

**385.** The idea of contingency, expressed by the subjunctive mood, is rather a relation of *syntax* than a distinct mood of the verb (391). (See, also, 392).

**386.** The subjunctive mood differs in form from the indicative in the *present tense* only ; in the verb *to be*, in the present and past.

**387.** Both the indicative and the potential, with a conjunctive particle prefixed, are used subjunctively ; that is, they are used to express what is conditional, or contingent, and with dependence on another verb ; as, "If he *sleeps*, he will do well"—"He would go if he *could*" (go).

**388.** In parsing, that only should be called the subjunctive mood which has the subjunctive form. When the indicative or potential is used subjunctively, it should be so stated.

**389.** The conditionality or contingency, etc., expressed by this mood, is usually intimated by such conjunctions as *if, though, lest, unless, so*, etc., prefixed, which, however, make no part of the verb.

**390.** The same thing is sometimes expressed without the conjunction, by merely putting the verb or auxiliary before the subject or nominative ; as, "*Had I*," for "*If I had*" "*Were he*," for "*If he were*"—"Had he gone," for "*If he had gone*"—"Would he but reform," for "*If he would but reform*," etc.

**391.** 1. The subjunctive present is only an abbreviated

form of the future indication; or the past potential, and the supposition may always be made; thus, "If he should" etc.; that is, "If he should (or should) do," etc. "Although he should" etc. Instead of the regular form of the past indication, hence we sometimes find a distinctly distinct form of the verb in the past tense; as, "If I were, but "If I should." But though we might say, "If I should be," but "If I be," yet we can not say, "If I should were," and there are some cases in which the present supposition form seems to be independent; as, "See that thou do it not." "If he do not try, he will succeed." Still

§11. The anticipative mood, in the indicative form, is now fully represented in German. The tendency appears to be to use it more, and to use the indication of potential in the present, whereas it can be done according to rule, the anticipative form is used only when it has a future reference; as, "If he come (or, at a future time) he will be content." The same form is represented by English, "If he come" (may), "If he shall come" etc., "If he should come" and this is used in those expressions in which generally potential in the anticipative form; in cases of supposition, the present anticipative was used, whereas it had a future reference to it; as, "Though I had to try, yet with my power in the world." In all such expressions, which are in present tense, the present indication would be used; thus, "Enough said is best;" etc.

§12. The imperative mood commands, exhorts, advises, or permits; as, "Do this." "Remember thy creature." "Hear, O my people." "Do thy way" (1457).

§13. The infinitive mood expresses the meaning of the verb in a general manner, without any indication of person or number; as, to love.

§14. The infinitive is often used as a verbal noun (1458), as, in the nominative case, as the subject of the verb; as "To play is pleasant." Or, in the objective, as the object of a transitive verb in the active voice, as of a person

sition; as, "Boys *love to play*" "He is *about to go*"—"What went ye out *for to see?*" (867).

395. 1. The infinitive mood has always a subject, expressed or understood; yet the *act, being, or state*, expressed by it, is sometimes so general that it is unimportant to ascertain its subject, or impossible to designate any *particular* person or thing as such. Thus, in the above examples, *to play* is referable to *boys*; *to go* is the act of *he*, etc.

2. When the infinitive as a subject has its own subject, it is in the objective case, introduced by *for*; as, "For *us to lie*, is base." But when the infinitive with its subject is the object of a transitive verb, that subject in the objective case needs no connecting word; as, "We believe *him to be sincere*." Here *him* is the subject of *to be*, and the whole clause "him to be sincere"="that he is sincere" is the object of "*believe*" (872).

396. The infinitive *active*, by an anomaly not uncommon in other languages, is sometimes used in a *passive* sense; as, "You are *to blame*" (to be blamed)—"A house *to let*"—"A road *to make*"—"Goods made *to sell*"—"Knives *to grind*, etc.

397. The *Participial* mood is used to denote action or state; 1. As continuing or incomplete; 2. As complete or finished without regard to time.

It is always used in connection with another verb, as an attribute of its subject, or a limiter of its object, as, "I am *writing*"—"I saw him *running*"—"The letter is *written*" (See 452, *et seq.*).

### *Tenses.*

398. *Tenses* are certain forms of the verb which serve to point out the distinctions of time.

399. Time is naturally divided into the *past*, the *present*, and the *future*. The *past* includes all that goes before the present; the *future* includes all that comes after the present; and the *present*, strictly speaking, is the point in which the past and future meet, and which has itself, no space or continuance. In grammar, however, the present is not regarded in this strict sense, but as extending to a greater or less period of which the passing instant forms a part; as, this *moment*,

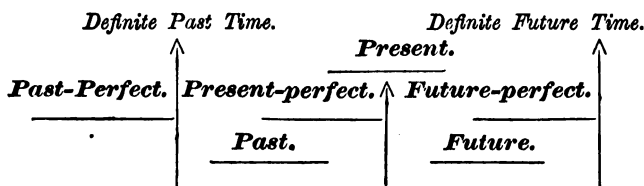
*hour, day, week, etc.* In each of these an act, etc., may be expressed either simply and indefinitely as present, or definitely as completed; and these are expressed by different forms of the verb called *tenses*. Hence—

**400.** The tenses in English are six—the *Present*, the *Present-perfect*, the *Past*, the *Past-perfect*, the *Future* and the *Future-perfect*.\*

**401.** Of these, the present and the past, in the indicative mood, and the present in the subjunctive, are simple tenses, consisting of the verb only; as, “*I love*”—“*I loved*.” All the rest are compound, consisting of the auxiliary and the verb; as, “*I have loved*.”

REMARK.—The indicative mood alone has all the tenses, and in it alone are the distinctions of time strictly indicated.

The tenses may be represented to the eye by the following diagram:



#### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

**402.** The *Present* tense expresses what is going on at the present time; as “*I love*”—“*I am loved*.”

---

\* The *past* tense in English, does not correspond to the *imperfect* in Latin or Greek, but rather to the Greek *Aorist*. There is, therefore, no propriety in retaining the name *imperfect*. The Latin *imperfect* corresponds precisely to the *past-progressive* in English (506). So also, the *present-perfect* does not correspond precisely to the Latin *perfect*, as that is used in an indefinite sense, like the Greek *Aorist*, and also in a definite sense, like the English *present-perfect*. The *past-perfect* corresponds to the *pluperfect* in Latin. The *future* and the *future-perfect* in English correspond to the tenses of the same name in Latin. See B. Latin Gr., 167; B. and M. Latin Gr., 266.



**403.** This tense is used also to express what is *habitual*, or *always true*; as, "He goes to church"—"Virtue is its own reward"—"Vice produces misery."

**404.** It is used, in animated narration, to express past events with force and interest, as if they were present; as, Caesar *leaves* Gaul, *crosses* the Rubicon, and *enters* Italy" (1046, 5).

**405.** It is used sometimes, instead of the *present-perfect* tense, in speaking of authors long since dead, when reference is made to their works which still exist, as, "Moses *tells* us who were the descendants of Abraham"—"Virgil *imitates* Homer;" instead of "*has told*," "*has imitated*."

**406.** It is used in dependent clauses after such words as *when*, *before*, *if*, *as soon as*, *after*, *till*, and also after *relative pronouns*, to express the relative time of a future action, that is of an action future at the time of speaking, but which will be present at the time referred to; as, "When he *comes*, he will be welcome"—"We shall get our letters as soon as the post *arrives*"—"He will kill every one [whom] he *meets*," etc.

"No longer mourn for me when I *am* dead."—*Shakes.*

**407.** The *Present-perfect* tense represents an action or event as completed at the present time, or in a period of which the present forms a part; as, "I *have sold* my horse"—"I *have walked* six miles to-day"—"John *has been* busy this week"—"Many good books *have been published* this century." See 912.

**408.** The sign of the present-perfect is *have*—inflected, *have*, *has*, *has*, or *hath*.

**409.** In the use of this tense, it matters not how long ago the act referred to may have been performed, if it was in a period reaching to and embracing the present; as, "Many discoveries in the arts *have been made* since the days of Bacon;" that is, in the period reaching from that time to the present. On the other hand, if the time of an act mentioned is past, and does not include the present, this tense can not be used, however near the time may be. Thus, we can not properly say, "I *have seen* your friend a moment ago;" but, "I *saw* your friend," etc.

**410.** This tense is used to express an act or state continued

through a period of time reaching to the present; as, "He *has studied* grammar six months"—"He *has been* absent [now] six years."

**411.** It is used to express acts long since completed, when the reference is not to the act of finishing, but to the thing finished and still existing; as, "Cicero *has written* orations"—"Moses *has told* us many important facts in his writings"—"Of old thou *hast laid* the foundation of the earth, and the heavens are the work of thy hand." But if the thing completed does not now exist, or if the reference is to the act of finishing and not to the present continuance of the thing finished, this tense can not be used; thus, we can not say, "Cicero *has written* poems," because no such productions now remain. Nor, "In the beginning God *has created* the heavens," because reference is only to the act of God at a certain past time indicated by the words "In the beginning."

**412.** It is used in the same manner as the present (406), instead of the future-perfect, to represent an action, etc., as perfect at a future time; as, "The cock shall not crow, till thou *hast denied* me thrice."

**413.** Sometimes this tense is used in effect to *deny* the present existence of that which the verb expresses the completion; as, "I *have been* young"—meaning, this is now finished—"I am young no more."

**414.** This tense corresponds to the Latin *perfect definite*.

**415.** The *Past* tense expresses what took place in *past time*; as, "In the beginning God *created* the heavens."—"God *said*, Let there be light."—"The ship *sailed* when the mail *arrived*." See 913.

**416.** 1. The time expressed by this tense is regarded as *entirely past*, and, however near to the present, it does not embrace it; as, "I *saw* your friend a moment ago; "I *wrote* yesterday."

2. In such expressions as "I *wrote this morning*"—"this week"—"this year," etc., the reference is to a point of time now entirely past, in these yet unfinished periods.

**417.** The past tense never indicates, of itself, without a limiting word, any definite time.

**418.** This tense is used to express what was *customary* in past time; as, "She *attended* church regularly all her life."

**419.** The *Past-perfect* tense represents an action

or event as completed at or before a certain past time; as, "I *had walked* six miles that day"—"John *had been* busy that week"—"The ship *had sailed* when the mail arrived"—that is, the ship sailed *before* the mail arrived. See 914, 915.

420. The sign of the past-perfect is *had*; second person, *hadst*. This tense corresponds to the Latin *pluperfeci*.

421. The *Future* tense expresses what will take place in *future time*; as, "I *will see* you again, and your hearts *shall rejoice*."

422. The signs of the future are *shall, will*.

423. The *Future-perfect* tense intimates that an action or event will be completed at or before a certain time yet future; as, "I *shall have got* my lesson by ten o'clock"—"He *will have finished* his letter before you are ready."

424. The signs of the future-perfect are *shall have, will have*.

#### TENSES OF THE POTENTIAL MOOD.

425. The *Potential* has *four tenses*—called the *Present*, the *Present-perfect*, the *Past*, and the *Past-perfect*.

426. The *Present* potential expresses *present liberty, power, or obligation*.

427. The signs of the Present are *may, can, must*.

428. The *Present-perfect*, in this mood, does not correspond in meaning to the same tense in the indicative, but more properly expresses *present possibility, liberty, necessity*, etc., with respect to an act or state *supposed* to be past; thus, "He *may have written*," means, *It is possible* that he *wrote*, or *has written*; "He *must have written*," means, "It *must be* that he *wrote*, or *has written*."

429. The signs of the Present-perfect potential are, *may have, can have, must have*.

**430.** The *Past* potential is very indefinite with respect to time, being used to express *liberty, ability, purpose, or duty*, sometimes with regard to what is past, sometimes with regard to what is present, and sometimes with regard to what is future; thus—

*Past*—"He *could* not *do* it *then*, for he was otherwise engaged."

*Present*—"I *would* *do* it with pleasure *now*, if I *could*."

*Future*—"If he *would* *delay* his journey a few days, I *might* [*could, would, or should*] *accompany* him."

**431.** The signs of the *Past* potential are, *might, could, would, should*.

**432.** The *Past-perfect* potential, also, never corresponds in time to the past-perfect indicative; that is, it never represents an act, etc., as completed at a certain past time, but expresses the *liberty, ability, purpose, or duty*, with respect to the act or state expressed by the verb, as now past; thus, "He *could have written*," means, He *was able to write*.

**433.** The signs of the *Past-perfect* potential are, *might have, could have, would have, should have*.

**434.** The *Future* and *Future-perfect* are wanting in the *Potential*.

#### TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**435.** The *Subjunctive* mood, in its proper form, has only the *Present* tense.

The verb "*to be*" has the present and the past. The indicative mood used subjunctively (387), furnishes what may be called a second form of the present subjunctive, and the only form of the other subjunctive tenses.

**436.** The *Present* subjunctive, in its proper form, according to present approved usage, has always a *future* reference; that is, it denotes a present uncertainty or contingency respecting a supposed *future* action or

event; thus, "If he *write*," is equivalent to, "If he should write," or, "If he shall write."\*

**437.** Uncertainty or contingency respecting a supposed *present* action or state, is expressed by the *present indicative* used subjunctively: as "If he writes as well as he reads, he will succeed."

**438.** The *Present-perfect* subjunctive is only the same tense of the indicative, used subjunctively. Such expressions as "If she *have brought* up children, etc. (1 *Tim.* v. 10), are now obsolete.

**439.** The *Past* subjunctive is used in two senses—

1. It is used to express a *past* action or state as conditional or contingent; as, "If he *wrote* that letter he deserves credit, and should be rewarded; "If he *was* at home, I did not know it."

2. It expresses a supposition with respect to something *present*, and implies a denial of the thing supposed; as, "If I had the money now, I would pay it," implying, I have it not. Used in this way, the verb "*to be*" (and of course the passive voice of transitive verbs) has a separate form in the singular, but not in the plural, viz., I *were*, thou *wert*, he *were*; for I *was*, thou *wast*, he *was*: thus, "If my kingdom *were* of this world, then would my servants fight," implying, It is not of this world; "O that thou *wert* as my brother," implying, "thou art not."

**440.** In this way, the *Past* subjunctive seems to be always used when the conjunctive term is omitted, and the verb or auxiliary is

---

\* From this usage, this may properly be regarded as an elliptical form of the future, or of the past potential, in a future sense, the signs *shall* or *should* being omitted. The forms of the present subjunctive were formerly used in the indicative, both in declarative and conditional clauses, where the present usage would require the present indicative; thus, "Though the Lord *be* [is] high," etc.—*Ps.* cxxxviii. 6.—"If thou *be* [art] the Son of God."—*Matth.* iv. 3, 6.—"That which thou sowest is not quickened except it *die* [dies]."—1 *Cor.* xv. 36.—"Whether he *be* [is] a sinner or not, I know not."—*John* ix. 25, etc.

placed before its subject (390); as, "Hadst thou been here, my brother had not [would not have (358)] died."

441. When a supposition, etc., respecting something *past*, is expressed in this way, the *Past-perfect* must be used; as, "If I *had had* the money yesterday, I would have paid it," implying, I had it not; "O that thou *hadst been* as my brother," implying "thou wast not."

442. Though the past tense, used in this way, refers to a *present* act or state, yet, as it has the past form, it should, in parsing, be called the past tense.

#### TENSE OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

443. The Imperative mood has only the present tense, and that has respect to the time of the *command*, *exhortation*, etc.

The doing of the thing commanded, must, of course, be subsequent to the command requiring it.

#### TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

444. The Infinitive mood has two tenses, the *Present* and the *Perfect*.\*

These do not so properly denote the *time* of the action, etc., as its *state* (446 and 449); as, "To write"—"To have written."

445. In the other moods the time expressed by the tenses, is estimated from the time of speaking, which is always regarded as present; as, "I wrote" (that is, in a time *now* past), "I write" (that is, in time *now* present), "I shall write" (that is, in time *now* future). But the infinitive represents the action or state expressed as *present*, not, however, always at the time of speaking, but at the time indicated by the preceding verb, or some other word in the sentence; as, "He wishes to write"—*now—to-morrow—next week*, etc.; "He wished

---

\* The word *present* is omitted before *perfect*, in designating this tense in the *infinitive* and *participles*, because the reference in these is only to the *state* of the act, etc., and not particularly to the present time (455).

to write"—*then* (viz., at the time of wishing, *now* past)—*next day*—*this day*—*to-morrow*, etc.; "He will wish to write"—*then* (viz., at the time of wishing, *now* future)—*next day*, etc. Hence the following definitions:—

**446.**—1st. The *Present* infinitive expresses an act or state as incomplete, or indefinite, or as taking place at a time indicated by some other word, or at any time referred to, expressed or implied; as, "I wish *to write*"—"I wished *to go*"—"Apt *to teach*."

**447.** The sign of the present infinitive is, *to* (549).

**448.** After the verb *to be*, the present infinitive is sometimes used to express a future action or event; as, "He is *to go*," "If he were *to go*," etc. (876-3).

**449.**—2d. The *Perfect* infinitive expresses an act or state as perfect or finished, at any time referred to, expressed or implied; as, "He is said *to have written*"—*already*—*yesterday*—*a year ago*, etc.

**450.** The sign of the perfect infinitive is, *to have*.

**451.** In the use of the infinitive it is necessary to observe, that the *Present* must never be used in circumstances which imply a *finished* act; nor the *Perfect* in circumstances which imply an act *not finished*. Thus, it is improper to say, "He is said *to write* yesterday," because the language leads to regard the act as finished, since it took place in past time. It should be, "*To have written* yesterday" (921). Nor can we say, "I hoped—I desired—I intended, etc.—*to have written* yesterday," because an act regarded as perfect or finished, the doing of which, of course, is past, can not be the object of *hope*, *desire*, *intention*, etc. We should say, "I hoped *to write* yesterday" (920).

#### PARTICIPIAL MOOD OR PARTICIPLES.

**452.** The *Participial* mood or *participle*, expresses the action or state of the verb, not assertively, but attributively. It has also the character of the adjective, and as such qualifies its subject: "The *man* came *seeing*"—"Having *finished* our task, *we* may play." See 494, 507.

**453.** Participles are so called, because they belong partly to the *verb*, and partly to the *adjective*. From the former, they have *signification, voice, and tense*; and they perform the *office* of the latter.

**454.** Verbs have three participles—the *present*, the *past*, and the *perfect*; as, *loving, loved, having loved*, in the active voice; and *being loved, loved, having been loved*, in the passive. See 494, 507.

**455.** The participles, taken by themselves, like the infinitive, do not so properly denote the *time* of an action, as its *state*; while the time of the act, whether progressive or finished, is indicated by the verb with which it is connected, or by some other word; thus, “I saw him *writing* yesterday;” “I see him *writing* now;” “I will see him *writing* to-morrow.” In all these examples, *writing* expresses an act *present*, and still in progress at the time referred to; but with respect to the time of speaking, the act of writing, expressed in the first example, is past; in the second, it is *present*; and in the third, it is *future*, as indicated by the accompanying verbs, *saw, see, will see*.

**456.** The *Present participle active* ends always in *ing*. In all verbs it has an active signification, and denotes an action or state as *continuing and progressive*; as, “James is *building* a house.” In some verbs, it has also a passive progressive signification; as, “The house is *building*.” Appendix IX.

**457.** This passive usage, some suppose, has its origin in the use of the verbal noun after *in*, to express the same idea; thus, “Forty and six years was this temple *in building*,” “And the house when it was *in building* was built of stone made ready—so that there was neither hammer nor axe heard in the house, while it was *in building*.” In the absence of emphasis, the *in* being indistinctly uttered, came to be spoken, and consequently to be written, *a*; as, “While the ark was *a preparing*” (1 *Pet.* iii. 20), and finally to be omitted altogether. Similar changes of prepositions we have in the expressions, *a going, a running, a hunting, a fishing*, etc. Others, again, suppose that this ought to be regarded as an original idiom of the language,



similar to the passive use of the infinitive active noticed before (396). But whether either of these is the true account of this matter or not, the fact is certain. It is therefore the duty of the grammarian to note the fact, though he may be unable to account for it. The following are examples: "This new tragedy was *acting*."—*E. Everett*. "An attempt was *making*."—*D. Webster*. "The fortress was *building*," etc.—*Irving*.

**458.** The *Present participle passive* has always a passive signification, but it has the same difference of meaning with respect to the time or state of the action as the present indicative passive (509).

**459.** The *Past Participle* denotes an action or state as *completed*.

It has the same form in both voices. In the *active voice*, it belongs equally to transitive and intransitive verbs—has always an active sense—forms, with the auxiliaries, the Present-perfect and Past-perfect tenses—and is *never found but thus combined*; as, *has loved*," *had loved*," etc. In the *passive voice* it has always a passive sense, and, with the verb *to be* as an auxiliary forms the passive voice; as, "He is *loved*;" or without it, qualifies a noun or pronoun; as, "A man *loved* by all, *hated* by none." The difference between the active and the passive participle will be seen in the following examples, viz.: ACTIVE: "He has *concealed* a dagger under his cloak; PASSIVE: He has *been concealed* under his cloak.

**460.** The *Perfect participle* is always compound (477), and represents an action or state as completed at the time referred to.

It has always an active sense in the active voice, and a passive sense in the passive; as, ACTIVE: *Having finished* our task, we may play. PASSIVE: Our task *having been finished*, we may play."

**461.** The *Present participle active*, and the *past participle passive*, when separated from the idea of time, become adjectives, and are usually called *participial adjectives*; as, "An *amusing* story"—"A *bound* book" (206-iv).

**462.** The Participle in *ing* is often used as a *verbal noun* (107-5), having the nominative and the objective, but not the possessive. In this character the participle of a transitive verb may still retain the government of the verb; as, "In *keeping* his *commandments* there is a great reward;" or, it may be divested of it by inserting an article before it, and the preposition *of* after it; as, "In *the keeping of* his *commandments*." When *of* follows the participle, *the* or *a* (*an*) should precede it (899.) But *of* can not be used before another preposition. See, (903).

**463.** So also the *perfect* participle; as, "There is satisfaction in *having done well*"—"His *having done* his duty, was, afterward, a source of satisfaction (894, 896).

#### *Number and Person.*

**464.** Every tense of the verb has *two Numbers*, the *Singular* and the *Plural*, corresponding to the singular and plural of nouns and pronouns. The singular asserts of *one*; the plural of more than one.

**465.** In each number, the verb has *three Persons*, called the *first*, *second*, and *third*. The first asserts of the person *speaking*; the second of the person *spoken to*; and the third of the person or thing *spoken of*.

Number and person, as applied to verbs, indicate only the *form* to be used with each number and person of the subject.

**466.** The *subject* of the verb, in the first person singular, is always *I*, in the plural, *we*; in the second person singular, *thou*, in the plural, *ye* or *you*; in the third person, the subject *is the name of any person, or thing spoken of*, or a pronoun of the third person in its stead; also, it may be an infinitive mood, or a clause of a sentence, or anything of which a person can think or speak (762).

**467.** In ordinary discourse, the *imperative* mood has only the *second* person, because a *command, exhortation*, etc., can be addressed only to the person or persons *spoken to*.

**468.** In such expressions as "*Let us love*"—" *Let him love*"—" *Let them love*"—phrases by which the first and the third person of the imperative in some languages are rendered—*let* is the proper imperative, in the second person, with *thou* or *ye* as its subject understood, and *love* the infinitive without the sign (877). Thus, "*Let [thou] us [to] love*, etc.

**469.** This mode of expression is sometimes used, even when no definite individual is addressed ; as, "*Let there be light*."

**470.** Among the poets, however, we sometimes find a *first* and a *third* person in the imperative ; as, "*Confide we* in ourselves alone." "*With virtue be we armed*."—*Hunt's Tasso*. "*And rest we here*, Matilda said."—*Scott*.

"*Fall he* that must beneath his rival's arm,  
And *live the rest* secure from future harm."—*Pope*.

**471.** Such expressions as "*Hallowed be thy name*"—"Thy kingdom come"—"*Be it enacted*"—"So be it," etc., may be regarded either as examples of the *third* person in the imperative, or as elliptical for "*May*," or, "*Let thy name be hallowed*"—"Let it be enacted"—"*Let it be so*," etc.

**472.** The *infinitive* does not change its form, whatever the number, person, or case of its subject, and is said, therefore, to have neither *number* nor *person*.

## Conjugation of the Verb.

**473.** The *conjugation* of the verb is the regular combination and arrangement of its several *voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons*.\*

---

\* *Inflection*, properly speaking, is the making of those changes of form which the verb undergoes in its several parts ; *Conjugation* is the combining or arranging of these forms in the several *voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons*, to which they belong. Both are usually included under the term *conjugation*.

*Table of the Verb.*

VERB.	Use.	TRANSITIVE.	{	ACTIVE.	Indicative.	Present.	{	Sing.			
		INTRANSITIVE.				Past.			Past-perfect.	Plur.	
		ATTRIBUTIVE.		PASSIVE.	Future.	Future-perfect.					
	Form.	{			Present.	Present-perfect.	{	1 Pers.			
					Potential.	Past.			Past-perfect.		
		Subjunctive.		Present.	Present.	{			2 Pers.		
				Past.	Past.						
		Imperative.		Present.	Present.					{	3 Pers.
		Infinitive.		Present.	Perfect.						
		Participial.		Present.	Perfect.						
				Past.	Perfect.						

474. NOTE.—The simple verb has only four forms, and every compound tense may be analyzed, and each of its parts be referred to one of these, and its force and meaning determined. The relation of the auxiliary to the principal verb properly belongs to syntax. The simple forms are as follows:

REGULAR.— 1. Love. 2. Loving. 3. Loved. 4. Loved.

IRREGULAR.—1. Write. 2. Writing. 3. Wrote. 4. Written.

1. The first form, love, is used: 1. To assert; as, I *love*. 2. With *do*, emphatic; as, I *do love*. 3. In infinitive, connected with *to*; I desire *to love*. 4. To command; *love* thou.

2. The second form is used: 1. Either to limit its subject; as, “He *coming* in fell down, etc.; or, 2. In predication after the verb *to be*; He *is coming* (progressive form of the verb).

3. The third form is the *past* tense.

4. The fourth form is used: 1. Actively after *have*, to denote that the actor is in possession of (has, owns, by having performed) the act expressed by the verb. 2. Passively; (1) In predication, after the verb *to be*, to express the receiving of the act by the subject; as, “He *is loved* (passive voice); (2) To limit a noun (its own subject, used as the subject or object of another verb; as, “*Admired* by all *he* became *vain*.”

Established usage, however, renders it desirable to present the ordinary tables, without change of nomenclature.

475. In the active voice, most verbs have two forms—the *Common* and the *Progressive*, and in some tenses, the *Interrogative* and *Emphatic*.—See Appendix IX, I.

1. The *Common* form expresses the simple existence of the fact; as, “He *speaks*”—“She *writes*”—“They *talk*.”

2. The *Progressive* form represents an action as begun, and in progress, but not completed. It is formed by annexing the present participle to the verb “*to be*,” through all its moods and tenses; as, “*I am writing*,” etc., (506).

3. In the *present* and the *past indicative*, etc., the *Emphatic* form is used to express a fact with emphasis or force. It is formed by prefixing to the verb the auxiliary *do*, in the present tense, and *did* in the past; as “*I do write*”—“*I did write*.” The other tenses, and also the progressive form and passive voice, are rendered emphatic, by placing emphasis on the *auxiliary*; as, “*I have written*”—“*I am writing*”—“*The letter is written*.”

4. The *Interrogative* form usually transposes the order of the auxiliary; as, “*Have I written?*” and in the present and past indicative uses *do* and *did*; as, “*Do I write, did I write?*”

476. To these may be added, the *solemn* form of the third person singular, present indicative, ending in *th*, or *eth*, instead of the *common*, in *s* or *es*. Thus—solemn form, *loveth, hath loved*; common, *loves, has loved*.

477. The tenses of the verb, inflected without an auxiliary, are called SIMPLE tenses; those inflected with an auxiliary placed before the past participle, are called COMPOUND tenses.

478. The only regular terminations added to verbs are—

1. *The tense endings: ed* of the past tense and past participle (326 and note); and *ing* in the present participle.

2. *The personal endings: st*, or *est*, of the second person singular; as, *lovest*, *actest* (483): and *s*, *es*, or *eth*, of the third; as, *reads*, *teaches*, or *teacheth*. The other changes are made by auxiliaries.

479. In the present and the past tense, when *st* will easily coalesce with the final consonant, it is added in the same syllable; as, *saidst*, *lovedst*. But when it will not easily coalesce, or the verb ends in a vowel sound, *est* is commonly added, and forms another syllable; as, *wishest*, *teachest*, *lovest*, *goest*, *drawest*, *sayest*, *cearest*, *blesses*, etc."

480. In the present indicative, the endings of the third person singular, *s*, and *es*, are subject to the rules for the plural number of nouns (187-142); as, *sits*, *reads*, *wishes*, *teaches*, *loves*, *goes*, *draws*, *carries*, *says*, etc.

481. In the solemn style, instead of *s*, or *es*, the third person singular has *eth*, which always adds a syllable, except in *doth*, *hath*, *saith*, for *doeth*, *haveth*, *sayeth*.

482. The verb *need* is often used in the third person singular of the present tense, without the personal ending; as, "The truth *need* not be disguised"—"It *need* not be added."

483. In annexing the tenses and personal endings to the verb, the Rules III., IV., and VI., for spelling words (57, 60, 66), must be carefully observed.

484. In the present indicative active, the three persons in the plural, and the first in the singular, are alike. In the past tense, the three persons in the plural, and the first and third in the singular, are all alike, except in the verb "*to be*," in which the form in the singular is different from that of the plural; thus, singular, *was*, *wast*, *was*—plural, *were*.

485. The principal parts of the verb are the

*Present indicative*, the *Present participle*, the *Past indicative*, and the *Past participle*.

In parsing, the mentioning of these parts is called *conjugating the verb*. Thus :

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
<i>Regular</i>	Love,	loving,	loved,	loved.
<i>Irregular</i>	Write,	writing,	wrote,	written.

***Conjugation of the Irregular Verb "To Be."***

**486.** The irregular and intransitive (or attributive) verb "to be," is used as a principal verb, and also as an auxiliary in the passive voice, and in the progressive form of the active voice. It is thus inflected through all its moods and tenses :—

**PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

*Present, am. Pres. Part., being. Past, was. Past Part., been.*

***Indicative Mood.***

**PRESENT TENSE.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I am.*	1. We are.
2. Thou art (244).	2. You are.
3. He is.	3. They are.

**PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.**

*Sign, have.*

1. I have been.	1. We have been.
2. Thou hast been.	2. You have been.
3. He has been.	3. They have been.

**PAST TENSE.**

1. I was.	1. We were.
2. Thou wast.	2. You were.
3. He was.	3. They were.

---

\* *Be*, and *beest* were formerly used in the present indicative ; as, "We *be* true men."—*Bible*—for, We are true men. "If thou *beest* he."—*Milton*. "There *be* as many miseries beyond riches as on this side of them"—*Walton*. This usage is now obsolete.

PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Sign, *had*.

*Singular.*

1. I had been.
2. Thou hadst been.
3. He had been.

*Plural.*

1. We had been.
2. You had been.
3. They had been.

FUTURE TENSE.

Signs, *shall, will*.—Inflect with each.

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I shall be.    | 1. We shall be.   |
| 2. Thou shalt be. | 2. You shall be.  |
| 3. He shall be.   | 3. They shall be. |

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *shall have, will have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I shall have been.    | 1. We shall have been.   |
| 2. Thou shalt have been. | 2. You shall have been.  |
| 3. He shall have been.   | 3. They shall have been. |

*Potential Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.

Signs, *may, can, must*.—Inflect with each.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. I may be.      | 1. We may be.   |
| 2. Thou mayst be. | 2. You may be.  |
| 3. He may be.     | 3. They may be. |

PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *may have, can have,\* or must have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I may have been.      | 1. We may have been.   |
| 2. Thou mayst have been. | 2. You may have been.  |
| 3. He may have been.     | 3. They may have been. |

PAST TENSE.

Signs, *might, could, would, should*.—Inflect with each.

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I might be.      | 1. We might be.   |
| 2. Thou mightst be. | 2. You might be.  |
| 3. He might be.     | 3. They might be. |

PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *might have, could have, would have, should have*.  
Inflect with each.

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I might have been.      | 1. We might have been.   |
| 2. Thou mightst have been. | 2. You might have been.  |
| 3. He might have been.     | 3. They might have been. |

\* *Can have*, as an auxiliary, is not used in affirmative sentences.



*Subjunctive Mood (487).*

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. If \* I be.
2. If thou be.
3. If he be.

*Plural.*

1. If we be.
2. If you be.
3. If they be.

## PAST TENSE.

1. If I were.
2. If thou wert, *or* were.
3. If he were.

1. If we were.
2. If you were.
3. If they were.

*Imperative Mood.*

2. Be, *or* be thou.

2. Be, *or* be ye *or* you.

*Infinitive Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

To be.

## PERFECT TENSE.

To have been.

*Participles.*

PRESENT, Being.

PAST, Been.

PERFECT, Having been.

**487.** All the tenses of the indicative, and also of the potential mood, are used subjunctively, by placing the conjunction before them, thus: *Present*—"If I am," "If thou art," "If he is," etc. (386). *Present-perfect*—"If I have been," etc. *Past*—"If I was," etc.

**488.** The verb *to be*, followed by an infinitive, forms a particular future tense, which often expresses *duty*, *necessity*, or *purpose*; as, "Government *is* to be supported"—"We *are* to pay our debts"—"If we *were* to depend on others"—"If we *should* depend," etc. (876-3).

**489.** This verb has no progressive form. The em-

---

\* The conjunctions, *if*, *though*, *lest*, *unless*, etc., do not form part of the subjunctive mood, but are placed before it to express a condition or contingency (388). The pupil may go over the indicative, as a subjunctive, with one or other of these conjunctions prefixed.

phatic form is used only in the imperative ; as, "*Do thou be*"—"Do you be."

*Anomalous Usage.*

**490.** *Were* is sometimes used for *would be*; and *had been*, for *would have been*, as, "This *were* excellent advice."—Cowley. "It were a folly."—Sidney. "My fortune *had been* his, for *would have been*" (358).—Dryden.

*Parsing the Verb.*

**491.** A verb is parsed by stating its *class* (transitive, intransitive, or attributive), its *form* (regular or irregular), *conjugating* it if irregular\* (485), and stating its *tense, mood, voice*, the *subject* of which it affirms, and its *person* and *number*; thus,

"He *is* wise."—*Is* is a verb, attributive, irregular—*am, being, was, been*—found in the present, indicative, and affirms the attribute *wise*, of its subject *he*, in the third person, singular.

**492.** Besides stating the several properties of the verb, as above, the teacher may occasionally require the pupil, as a sort of reviewing exercise, to assign a reason for each statement; thus:—

"*Is*—a verb, because it affirms of "*He*."

*Attributive*—it affirms the attribute *wise* of the subject *He*.

*Irregular*—its past tense and past participle do not end in *ed*—*am, being, was, been*.

*Present*—it refers to present time.

*Indicative*—it declares simply, and without limitation.

*Third person*—its subject is spoken of.

*Singular*—it asserts of but one, "*He*."

As this process would consume much time, it, of course, can not often be used, and it is not necessary after the pupil is familiar with it, and prompt in assigning the reasons as above.

---

\* In parsing, it will save time to omit conjugating the verb when it is regular, and it is unnecessary, because its being announced to be regular sufficiently ascertains its principal parts. All irregular verbs should be conjugated as in 513. Every teacher, however, will adopt the course which he prefers.

### 493. Sentences.—The Subject.

1. A sentence is an affirmation, and must contain a *verb* in the indicative, potential, or imperative mood, by which the affirmation is made; and a *subject* of which the verb affirms.

This subject is generally a noun or pronoun, in the *nominative* case; thus, the sentence, "God is good," contains an affirmation. The verb *is* affirms of the noun *God*, which is of course its subject, and in the nominative case.

2. Sentences which have the verb in the imperative mood, contain a *command, exhortation*, etc. The *subject* is that to which the command is given (467).

The subject of a verb, *except in the infinitive and participial moods*, is always in the *nominative* case.

When that which is affirmed of a subject in the nominative case, is something expressed by a noun or pronoun after the verb *to be*, that noun or pronoun is always in the nominative case, and called the *predicate-nominative*, or *nominative after the verb*; as, "Socrates was a *philosopher*." Here *philosopher* is in the predicate-nominative, and expresses what the verb "*was*" affirms of its subject "*Socrates*." See 796.

#### EXERCISES.

1. State the *tense, mood, person, and number*, of the verb "*to be*," in the following examples; thus, "*Am*," present, indicative, active, first person, singular.

2. Parse all the words. Thus, "*Am*," a verb, attributive, irregular—*am, being, was, been*—in the present, indicative, active, first person, singular :—(491), and the pronouns as directed (253).

*Am*; *is*; *art*; *I was*; *we were*; *they are*; *you have been*; *she had been*; *he was*; *we will be*; *they shall be*; *we had been*; *hast been*; *hadst been*; *wast*.

*We may be*; *they may have been*; *he might be*; *you might have been*; *you must be*; *they should have been*; *if I be*; *thou wert*; *though he were*; *if I had been*; *though I were*; *if we could have been*; *they might be*.

Be; to be; do thou be; be ye; to have been; being; been; having been; be thou.

*Conjugation of the Regular Verb "To Love."*

494. The regular transitive verb "*To love*" is inflected through all its moods and tenses as follows:—

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Present*, love. *Pres. part.*, loving. *Past*, loved. *Past part.*, loved.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.\*

*Singular.*

1. I love.
2. Thou lovest.
3. He loves (*or* loveth).

*Plural.*

1. We love.
2. You love.
3. They love.

PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

*Sign, have.*

1. I have loved.
2. Thou hast loved.
3. He has loved.

1. We have loved.
2. You have loved.
3. They have loved.

PAST TENSE.

1. I loved.
2. Thou lovedst.
3. He loved.

1. We loved.
2. You loved.
3. They loved.

\* EMPHATIC FORMS.

PRESENT TENSE.

1. I do love.
2. Thou dost love.
3. He does love (*or* doth love).

1. We do love.
2. You do love.
3. They do love.

PAST TENSE.

1. I did love.
2. Thou didst love.
3. He did love.

1. We did love.
2. You did love.
3. They did love.

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Sign, *had*.*Singular.*

1. I had loved.
2. Thou hadst loved.
3. He had loved.

*Plural.*

1. We had loved.
2. You had loved.
3. They had loved.

## FUTURE TENSE.

Signs, *shall, will*.—Inflect with each.

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I shall love.    | 1. We shall love.   |
| 2. Thou shalt love. | 2. You shall love.  |
| 3. He shall love.   | 3. They shall love. |

## FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *shall have, will have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I shall have loved.    | 1. We shall have loved.   |
| 2. Thou shalt have loved. | 2. You shall have loved.  |
| 3. He shall have loved.   | 3. They shall have loved. |

*Potential Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

Signs, *may, can, must*.—Inflect with each.

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I may love.      | 1. We may love.   |
| 2. Thou mayst love. | 2. You may love.  |
| 3. He may love.     | 3. They may love. |

## PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *may have, can have,\* must have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I may have loved.      | 1. We may have loved.   |
| 2. Thou mayst have loved. | 2. You may have loved.  |
| 3. He may have loved.     | 3. They may have loved. |

## PAST TENSE.

Signs, *might, could, would, should*.—Inflect with each.

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I might love.      | 1. We might love.   |
| 2. Thou mightst love. | 2. You might love.  |
| 3. He might love.     | 3. They might love. |

---

\* *Can have*, as an auxiliary, is not used in affirmative sentences.

PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *might have, could have, would have, should have.*

Inflect with each.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I might have loved.      | 1. We might have loved.   |
| 2. Thou mightst have loved. | 2. You might have loved.  |
| 3. He might have loved.     | 3. They might have loved. |

*Subjunctive Mood (487).*

PRESENT TENSE (435).

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. If I love.    | 1. If we love.   |
| 2. If thou love. | 2. If you love.  |
| 3. If he love.   | 3. If they love. |

*Imperative Mood.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Common form.</i> 2. Love, <i>or</i> love thou. | 2. Love, <i>or</i> love ye <i>or</i> you. |
| <i>Emphatic form.</i> 2. Do thou love.            | 2. Do ye <i>or</i> you love.              |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT, To love.

PERFECT, To have loved.

*Participles.*

PRESENT, Loving.

PAST, Loved.

PERFECT, Having loved.

**495. Preliminary Oral Exercise.**

Review the exercise (324), and then proceed thus :—

When you say, "John loves learning," which word expresses what John *does*? What part of speech are words which express the *act* of a person or thing (314)? Then what part of speech is *loves*? Why?

Whose act does *loves* express? Then what is *John* to the verb *loves* (315)? Then *John* is the subject of *loves*.

What is it said that John *loves*? Learning. What does John do to learning? Of what class are verbs which express what one person or thing does to another (317)? Is *loves*, then, transitive or intransitive? Transitive.

Conjugate *love* (485). What is its past tense?—its past participle? In what do they end? Of what form are verbs which have the past tense and the past participle ending in *ed* (326)? Then is *love* regular or irregular? Regular—conjugated, *love, loved, loved.*

(Do all verbs form the past tense and the past participle by adding *ed*? Let us try. Is it right to say, "*I go*?" Would you say, "*I goed* to church yesterday?" What would you say? What are those verbs called which do not add *ed* to form the past tense and the past participle (327)? Then is "*go*" regular or irregular? Why?)

When you say, "John loves learning," does *loves* express a present, a past, or a future act? When a verb expresses a present act, in what tense is it (402)? In what tense, then, is *loves*? Present. Why?

(What would you say, to express the same act as past?—as future? Then what tense is *loved*?—*will love*?)

When you say, "John loves learning," do you declare a fact *simply*, or with any limitation? What mood declares an act simply (378)? Then what mood is *loves*? Indicative.

In this sentence, does the subject *John* act, or is it acted upon? What voice represents the subject as acting (368)? Then what voice is *loves*?

Is John represented here as *speaking*, *spoken to*, or *spoken of*? What person represents the subject as *spoken of* (465)? Then what person is *loves*? Third person.

Does *loves* assert the act of one person, or of more than one? What number asserts of one (464)? Then what number is *loves*? Singular.

**496.** The facts ascertained by this process will stand in order, thus: "*Loves*"—a *verb, transitive, regular, conjugated love, loving, loved, loved*—found in the *present, indicative, active, third person, singular*, and expresses the act of "*John*." See 491.

**497.** This may be extended, by giving the reasons of each statement, as follows:—

"*LOVES*"—a *verb*, because it expresses an *act* of its subject (314).

*Transitive*, because it expresses an act that *passes over* from the actor, *John*, to an object, *learning* (320a.)

*Regular*, because its past tense and past participle end in *ed*. *Conjugated*, *love, loving, loved, loved* (485).

*Present*,—it expresses what John does *now* (402).

*Indicative*,—it expresses the act *simply* (378).

*Active*,—it represents its subject as *acting* (368).

*Third person*,—its subject is *spoken of* (465).

*Singular*,—it asserts of only *one* (464).

EXERCISES—NO. I.

Inflect the following irregular verbs in the same manner as the verb "to love:"—taking care to use the past participle in the compound tenses (477).

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Go	went	gone
Write	wrote	written
Do	did	done
Give	gave	given
Have	had	had

EXERCISES—NO. II.

1. In the following exercises, tell the tense, mood, voice, person and number, and always in this order, thus "*Loves*"—Present, indicative, active, third person, singular.

2. In the Imperative, omit the *tense*, and say thus, "*Love thou*"—Imperative, active, second person, singular.

3. In the Infinitive and Participles, omit the person and number, and say thus: "*To love*"—Present, infinitive, active; "*Loving*"—Present participle, active.

N. B.—The pronoun prefixed is no part of the verb, but helps to show its person and number. The auxiliaries (or *signs*, except in a special analysis) are not taken separately, but always with the verb; so that the *two words*, and sometimes *three*, as in the future-perfect indicative are parsed together as one word, thus, "*Has loved*"—the present-perfect, indicative, active, third person, singular.

He loves.—We have loved.—He loved.—They had loved.—You shall love.—They may have loved.—We might love.—Love thou.—To love.—You had gone.—They will go.—To have gone.—We will write.—They may write.—They should go.—He has fa —You had given.—We might have gone.—James has written.—Robert loves to write.—To write is useful.—Writing is useful.—Having written.—We gave.—They have given.—You will give.

The Objective Case.

498. A transitive verb, in the active voice, tells what



its subject does to some other person or thing. That person or thing is the *object* of the verb, and is in the *objective* case. Thus, "He loves us;" *loves* is a transitive verb in the active voice, and tells what its subject *he*, does to *us*. *Us*, then, is its *object*, and is in the *objective* case. See also 320.

1. In the following exercises, tell which words are verbs, and why; whether transitive or intransitive, and why; what is the subject, and why; and if transitive, what is their object, and why.

2. Conjugate the verbs, and tell their tense, mood, voice, person, and number; thus, "*Loves*"—Verb, transitive, regular—love, loving, loved, loved—the present, indicative, active, third person, singular.

He loves us.—I will love him.—Good boys study their lessons.—Children love play.—God created the world.—Remember thy Creator.—Do good to all men.—Forgive your enemies.—He that giveth to the poor (201) lendeth to the Lord.—You should study grammar.—We should read the best books.—Bad books injure the character.—War makes rogues, and peace hangs them.—Children, obey your parents.—A good cause makes a strong arm.—Show mercy, and thou shalt find it.

#### EXERCISES—NO. III.

##### PARSING.

In the preceding exercises (498), parse each word in order; the noun, as directed, (182); the article, as directed (194); the adjective, as directed (225); the pronoun, as directed (253); and the verb, as directed (491 or 496). Or, more fully, as an occasional exercise (492 or 497), thus:

"*LOVES*"—a *verb*, because it expresses an act, viz., of *he*.  
*transitive*, because it has an object, *us* (498).  
*regular*,—its past tense and past participle end in *ed*;  
 conjugated, *love, loving, loved, loved*.  
*present*, because the act takes place in *present time*.  
*indicative*,—it declares the fact simply.  
*third person*,—its subject, *he*, is *spoken of*.  
*singular*,—it asserts of but *one*.

*Negative Form of the Verb.*

**499.** The verb is made to deny by placing the word *not* after the simple form; as, "Thou lovest *not*;" and between the auxiliary and the verb in the compound form; as, "I do *not* love." When two auxiliaries are used, it is placed between them; as, "I would *not* have loved."

**500.** In the infinitive and participles, the negative is put first; as, "Not to love"—"Not loving"—"Not loved."

**501.** The simple form is seldom used with the negative. In the present and past tenses, the compound or emphatic form is more common. The following synopsis will show the manner of using the negative:—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	1. I do not love.	2. Thou dost not love, etc.
PRES.-PERF.	1. I have not loved.	2. Thou hast not loved, etc.
PAST.	1. I did not love.	2. Thou didst not love, etc.
PAST-PERF.	1. I had not loved.	2. Thou hadst not loved, etc.
FUTURE.	1. I will not love.	2. Thou wilt not love, etc.
FUT.-PERF.	1. I shall not have loved.	2. Thou shalt not have loved, etc.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT.	1. I can not love.	2. Thou canst not love, etc.
PRES.-PERF.	1. I may not have loved.	2. Thou mayst not have loved, etc.
PAST.	1. I might not love.	2. Thou mightst not love, etc.
PAST-PERF.	1. I might not have loved.	2. Thou mightst not have loved, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (487).

PRESENT.	1. <i>If</i> I do not love.	2. <i>If</i> thou do not love, etc.
----------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

2. Love not, or do not thou love.	2. Love not, or do not ye love.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	Not to love.	PERFECT.	Not to have loved.
----------	--------------	----------	--------------------

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.	Not loving.	PAST.	Not loved.
	PERFECT.		Not having loved.

*Interrogative Form of the Verb.*

**502.** The verb is made to *ask a question* by placing the nominative or subject *after* the simple form; as, "Lovest thou?" and between the auxiliary and the verb in the compound forms; as, "Do I love?" When there are two auxiliaries, the nominative is placed between them; as, "Shall I have loved?"

**503.** The subjunctive, imperative, infinitive, and participles, can not have the interrogative form.

**504.** The simple form of the verb is seldom used interrogatively. The following synopsis will show how the verb is put into the interrogative form:—

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	1. Do I love?	2. Dost thou love? etc.
PRES.-PERF.	1. Have I loved?	2. Hast thou loved? etc.
PAST.	1. Did I love?	2. Didst thou love? etc.
PAST-PERF.	1. Had I loved?	2. Hadst thou loved? etc.
FUTURE.	1. Shall I love?	2. Wilt thou love? etc.
FUT.-PERF.	1. Shall I have loved?	2. Wilt thou have loved? etc.

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT.	1. May I love?	2. Canst thou love? etc.
PRES.-PERF.	1. May I have loved?	2. Canst thou have loved? etc.
PAST.	1. Might I love?	2. Couldst thou love? etc.
PAST-PERF.	1. Might I have loved?	2. Couldst thou have loved? etc.

**505.** Interrogative sentences are made *negative* by placing the negative either before or after the nominative; as, "Do I not love?" or, "Do not I love?"

## EXERCISES.

1. Inflect the verb *to love* in the negative form.
2. Inflect the indicative, and potential, in the interrogative form.
3. Change the exercises (p. 121) into the negative form, and write them out
4. Change the examples in the indicative and the potential into the interrogative form, and write them out.

*Progressive Form of the Active Voice.*

**506.** The *Progressive* form of the verb is inflected by prefixing the verb *to be*, through all its moods and tenses, to the present participle; thus:—

PRESENT.	1. I am writing.	2. Thou art writing, etc.
PRES.-PERF.	1. I have been writing.	2. Thou hast been writing, etc.
PAST.	1. I was writing.	2. Thou wast writing, etc.
PAST.-PERF.	1. I had been writing.	2. Thou hadst been writing, etc.
FUTURE	1. I shall be writing.	2. Thou shalt be writing, etc.
FUT.-PERF.	1. I shall <i>or</i> will have been writing.	2. Thou shalt <i>or</i> wilt have been writing, etc.

NOTE.—Verbs which in the common form imply *continuance*, do not usually admit the progressive form; thus, “I am loving” (if proper) would mean nothing more than “I love.” Appendix IX. 1, 2.

EXERCISES.

1. Change the following verbs from the simple into the progressive form:—

He writes.—They read.—Thou teachest.—We have learned.—He had written.—They go.—You will build.—I ran.—John has done it.—We taught.—He stands.—He stood.—They will stand.—They may read.—We can sew.—You should study.—We might have read.

2. Change the following, from the progressive into the simple form:—

We are writing.—They were singing.—They have been riding.—We might be walking.—I may have been sleeping.—They are coming.—Thou art teaching.—They have been eating.—He has been moving.—We have been defending.

3. Parse these verbs, in the progressive form; thus, “*We are writing*”—“*are writing*” is a verb, transitive, irregular—*write. writing, wrote, written*—in the present, indicative, active, first person, plural, progressive form.

4. Change the exercises, No. 2, into the negative form; thus, “We are not writing;”—into the interrogative form; as, “Are we writing?”—into the negative-interrogative form; as, “Are we not writing?” or, “Are not we writing?”

## PASSIVE VOICE.

**507.** The *Passive* voice is inflected by adding the past participle to the verb "*to be*," as an auxillary, through all its moods and tenses thus ; (486) :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Present*, Am loved.    *Present part.*, Being loved.    *Past*, Was loved.  
*Past participle*, Loved.

*Indicative Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I am loved.	1. We are loved.
2. Thou art loved.	2. You are loved.
3. He is loved.	3. They are loved.

## PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

*Sign, have.*

1. I have been loved.	1. We have been loved.
2. Thou hast been loved.	2. You have been loved.
3. He has been loved.	3. They have been loved.

## PAST TENSE.

1. I was loved.	1. We were loved.
2. Thou wast loved.	2. You were loved.
3. He was loved.	3. They were loved.

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

*Sign, had.*

1. I had been loved.	1. We had been loved.
2. Thou hadst been loved.	2. You had been loved.
3. He had been loved.	3. They had been loved.

## FUTURE TENSE.

*Signs, shall, will.*—Inflect with each.

1. I shall be loved.	1. We shall be loved.
2. Thou shalt be loved.	2. You shall be loved.
3. He shall be loved.	3. They shall be loved.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *shall have, will have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I shall have been loved.    | 1. We shall have been loved.   |
| 2. Thou shalt have been loved. | 2. You shall have been loved.  |
| 3. He shall have been loved.   | 3. They shall have been loved. |

*Potential Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.

Signs, *may, can, must*.—Inflect with each.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I may be loved.      | 1. We may be loved.   |
| 2. Thou mayst be loved. | 2. You may be loved.  |
| 3. He may be loved.     | 3. They may be loved. |

PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *may have, can have, or must have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. I may have been loved.      | 1. We may have been loved.   |
| 2. Thou mayst have been loved. | 2. You may have been loved.  |
| 3. He may have been loved.     | 3. They may have been loved. |

PAST TENSE.

Signs, *might, could, would, should*.—Inflect with each.

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I might be loved.      | 1. We might be loved.   |
| 2. Thou mightst be loved. | 2. You might be loved.  |
| 3. He might be loved.     | 3. They might be loved. |

PAST PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *might have, could have, would have, should have*.—

Inflect with each.

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I might have been loved.      | 1. We might have been loved.   |
| 2. Thou mightst have been loved. | 2. You might have been loved.  |
| 3. He might have been loved.     | 3. They might have been loved. |

---

\* *Can have*, as an auxiliary, is not used in affirmative sentences.

*Subjunctive Mood (487).*

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular*

1. If \* I be loved.
2. If thou be loved.
3. If he be loved.

*Plural.*

1. If we be loved.
2. If you be loved.
3. If they be loved.

## PAST TENSE.

1. If I were loved.
2. If thou wert *or* were loved.
3. If he were loved.

1. If we were loved.
2. If you were loved.
3. If they were loved.

*Imperative Mood.**Singular.*

2. Be thou loved.

*Plural.*

2. Be ye *or* you loved.

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT, To be loved.

PERFECT, To have been loved

*Participles.*

PRESENT, Being loved. PAST, Loved. PERFECT, Having been loved

*Observations on the Passive Voice.*

**508.** 1. The passive voice, in the finite moods, properly affirms of the subject the receiving of the act performed by the actor; and in all tenses, except the present, expresses passively the same thing that is expressed by the same tense in the active voice: thus, "*Cæsar conquered Gaul*," and "*Gaul was conquered by Cæsar*," express the same thing. Hence, the subject of the verb in the passive voice, is the object of the act, i. e., it is acted upon by the actor (369).

2. Every tense of the passive voice may be resolved into

---

\* The conjunctions, *if, though, lest, unless*, etc., do not form part of the subjunctive mood, but are placed before it to express a condition or contingency (389). The pupil may go over the indicative, as a subjunctive, with one or other of these conjunctions prefixed.

the verb *to be*, and the *past participle*,—the former to be regarded as an *attributive* verb, and the latter as a participle limiting the subject of the attributive verb, which is also *its* subject. Compare the following:—

*Sad* at heart, *he* returned home.

*He* *was sad* at heart.

*Admired* by all, *he* became vain.

*He* *was admired* by all, etc.

**509.** The present passive has a somewhat different office in different verbs. In some, it represents the act as now in progress—in others, as now completed. In the *former*, it expresses passively the present continuance of the action, just as the present active does. Thus, “James loves Robert,” and “Robert is loved by James,” express precisely the same thing. In the *latter*, the present passive expresses, not the continuance, but the result of the act now finished, as a predicate of the subject; as, “The house *is built*.” The act of building is here represented, not as continuing, but as completed; and the *result* of the act expressed by “*built*” is predicated of “house.”

**510.** In all such verbs, the idea expressed by the present passive differs from that expressed by the present active; the latter expressing a continuing, the former, a completed act. A continuing act, in this class of verbs, can be expressed passively only when the participle in *ing* has a passive as well as an active sense (456).

**511.** There is no passive form corresponding to the progressive form, in the active voice, except where the participle in *ing* is used passively; as, “The house *is building*.” The form introduced within the last fifty years, and now defended by some grammarians, viz., “The house *is being built*,” ought to be regarded only as a clumsy solecism. On this subject, see 457 and Appendix IX.

### *Exercises on the Passive Voice.*

#### EXERCISES—NO. I.

Inflect the following verbs in the same manner as *am loved* (507).

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Am commended.	was commended,	commended.
Am taught,	was taught,	taught.
Am told,	was told,	told.
Am placed,	was placed,	placed.



## EXERCISES—NO. II.

1. In the following exercises, tell the *tense, mood, voice, number, and person*, and always in this order, viz.: "Is loved"—present, indicative, passive, third person, singular.

2. In the imperative, omit the tense, and say thus: "Be ye loved," imperative, passive, second person, plural.

3. In the infinitive and participles, omit the person and number, and say thus: "To be loved," present, infinitive, passive. "Being loved," present participle, passive.

They are loved; we were loved; she was loved; he has been loved; I have been loved; thou hadst been loved; we shall be loved; they will be loved; I shall have been loved.

He can be loved; she must be loved; they might be loved; ye would be loved; I could be loved; thou mayst have been loved; it ~~may~~ have been loved. If I be loved. Be thou loved; you be loved. To be loved. Loved; having been loved; being loved.

4. Put the above exercises, first in the negative form, and then, in the indicative and potential moods, in the interrogative form, as directed (499 and 502).

## EXERCISES—NO. III.

Change the exercises (497, II.; 498) into the passive form. Write them out, and then parse them; thus, "We are loved by him," etc. Put each example in the *negative* form, and those in the indicative or potential, in the *interrogative* form, as directed (499 and 502).

*List of Irregular Verbs.*

**512.** An *Irregular* verb is one that does not form its *past tense* in the indicative active, and its *past participle*, by adding *ed* to the present.

**513.** \*\*. The following list comprises nearly all the irregular verbs in the language. Those conjugated regularly, as well as irregularly, are marked with an *r*. When two forms are given, the first is most used.

They may be conveniently divided into three classes :

1. Those which have only *one form* for the three parts given ;

viz. :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Bet	bet <i>r</i>	bet <i>r</i>
Burst	burst	burst
Cast	cast	cast
Cost	cost	cost
Cut	cut	cut
Hit	hit	hit
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Knit	knit <i>r</i>	knit <i>r</i>
Let	let	let
Put	put	put
Quit	quit <i>r</i>	quit <i>r</i>
Rid	rid	rid
Set, <i>be-</i>	set, <i>be-</i>	set, <i>be-</i>
Shed	shed	shed
Shred	shred	shred
Shut	shut	shut
Slit	slit	slit, slit
Spit	spit, ( <i>spat, obsolete</i> )	spit
Split	split	split
Spread, <i>be-</i>	spread, <i>be-</i>	spread, <i>be-</i>
Sweat	<i>r</i> sweat	<i>r</i> sweat
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Wet	<i>r</i> wet	<i>r</i> wet
Whet	<i>r</i> whet	<i>r</i> whet

2. Those which have *two forms* for the parts given ; viz. :

Abide	abode	abode
Beat	beat	beaten, beat
Bend	bent <i>r</i>	bent <i>r</i>
Bereave	<i>r</i> bereft	<i>r</i> bereft
Beseech	besought	besought
Betide	<i>r</i> betid	<i>r</i> betid
Bless	<i>r</i> blest	<i>r</i> blest
Bind, <i>un-</i>	bound, <i>un-</i>	bound, <i>un-</i>
Bleed	bled	bled
Breed	bred	bred
Bring	brought	brought

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participles.</i>
Build, <i>re-</i>	built, <i>re- r</i>	built, <i>re- r</i>
Burn	<i>r</i> burnt	<i>r</i> burnt
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught <i>r</i>	caught <i>r</i>
Cling	clung	clung
Come, <i>be-</i>	came, <i>be-</i>	come, <i>be-</i>
Creep	crept	crept
Deal	dealt <i>r</i>	dealt <i>r</i>
Dig	dug <i>r</i>	dug <i>r</i>
Dream	<i>r</i> dreamt	<i>r</i> dreamt
Dress	<i>r</i> drest	<i>r</i> drest
Dwell	dwelt <i>r</i>	dwelt <i>r</i>
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Gild	<i>r</i> gilt	<i>r</i> gilt
Gird, <i>be- en-</i>	<i>r</i> girt, <i>be- en-</i>	<i>r</i> girt, <i>be- en-</i>
Grind	ground	ground
Hang	hung	hung
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Hold, <i>be- with-</i>	held, <i>be- with-</i>	held, holden, <i>be- with-</i>
Keep	kept	kept
Kneel	<i>r</i> knelt	knelt <i>r</i>
Lay, <i>be-</i>	laid, <i>be-</i>	laid, <i>be-</i>
Lead, <i>mis-</i>	led, <i>mis-</i>	led, <i>mis-</i>
Lean	<i>r</i> leant	<i>r</i> leant
Leap	<i>r</i> leapt	<i>r</i> leapt
Learn	<i>r</i> learnt	<i>r</i> learnt
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Lie	lied	lied
Light	<i>r</i> lit	<i>r</i> lit
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met
<i>ast</i>	<i>r ast</i>	<i>r ast</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Pay, <i>re-</i>	paid, <i>re-</i>	paid, <i>re-</i>
Pen, <i>to inclose</i>	<i>r</i> pent	<i>r</i> pent
Rap	<i>r</i> rapt	<i>r</i> rapt
Read	rêad	rêad
Rend	rent	rent
Ride	rode	rode, ridden
Run	ran	run
Say	said	said
Seek	sought	sought
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Shine	shone <i>r</i>	shone <i>r</i>
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Sit	sat	sat (sitten, <i>obsolete.</i> )
Sleep	slept	slept
Sling	slung	slung
Slink	slunk	slunk
Smell	<i>r</i> smelt	<i>r</i> smelt
Speed	sped	sped
Spell	<i>r</i> spelt	<i>r</i> spelt
Spend, <i>mis-</i>	spent, <i>mis-</i>	spent, <i>mis-</i>
Spill	<i>r</i> spilt	<i>r</i> spilt
Spoil	spoilt <i>r</i>	<i>r</i> spoilt
Stand, <i>with- etc.</i>	stood, <i>with-</i>	stood, <i>with-</i>
Stave	<i>r</i> stove	<i>r</i> stove
Stay	<i>r</i> staid	<i>r</i> staid
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Strike	struck	struck, stricken
String	strung	strung
Sweep	swept	swept
Swing	swung	swung
Teach, <i>mis-</i>	taught, <i>mis-</i>	taught, <i>mis-</i>
Tell	told	told
Think, <i>be-</i>	thought, <i>be-</i>	thought, <i>be-</i>
Weep	wept	wept
Win	won	won
Wind	wound <i>r</i>	wound <i>r</i>
Work	wrought <i>r</i>	wrought <i>r</i>
Wring	<i>r</i> wrang	wrang <i>r</i>

8. Those which have *three forms* for the parts given ; viz. :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Am	was	been
Arise	arose	arisen
Awake	awoke <i>r</i>	awaked
Bake	baked	<i>r</i> baked
Bear, <i>to bring forth</i>	bare, bore	born
Bear, <i>for-</i>	bore, bare, <i>for-</i>	borne, <i>for-</i>
Begin	began	begun
Bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
Bite	bit	bitten, bit
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke, brake	broken, broke
Chide	chid	chidden, chid
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave, <i>to adhere</i>	<i>r</i> clave	cleaved
Cleave, <i>to split</i>	clove, cleft	cloven, cleft
Clothe	clothed, clad	<i>r</i> clad
Crow	<i>r</i> crew	crowed
Dare, <i>to venture</i>	<i>r</i> durst	dared
Dive	<i>r</i> dove	dived
Do, <i>mis- un-</i>	did, <i>mis- un-</i>	done, <i>mis- un-</i>
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk
Drive	drove	driven
Eat	ate, eat	eaten
Fall, <i>be</i>	fell, <i>be-</i>	fallen, <i>be-</i>
Fly	flew	flown
Forbear	forbore	forborne
Forget	forgot	forgotten, forgot
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Freight	freighted	fraught <i>r</i>
Get, <i>be-</i>	got, gat, <i>be-</i>	gotten, got, <i>be-</i>
Give, <i>for- mis-</i>	<i>r</i> gave, <i>for- mis-</i>	given, <i>for- mis-</i>
Go	went	gone
Grave, <i>en-</i>	graved, <i>en-</i>	<i>r</i> graven, <i>en-</i>
Grow	grew	grown
Heave	<i>r</i> hove	<i>r</i> hoven
Hew	hewed	<i>r</i> hewn
Hide	hid	hidden, hid
Know	knew	known
Lade	laded	laden

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Lie, <i>to lie down</i>	lay	lain
Load	loaded	<i>r</i> laden
Mow	mowed	<i>r</i> mown
Ring	rang, rung	rung
Rise, <i>a-</i>	rose, <i>a-</i>	risen, <i>a-</i>
Rive	rived	<i>r</i> riven
Saw	sawed	<i>r</i> sawn
See	saw	seen
Seethe	<i>r</i> sod	<i>r</i> sodden
Shake	shook	shaken
Shape, <i>mis-</i>	shaped, <i>mis-</i>	<i>r</i> shapen, <i>mis-</i>
Shave	shaved	<i>r</i> shaven
Shear	<i>r</i> shore	shorn
Show	showed	<i>r</i> shown
Shrink	shrunk, shrank	shrunk, shrunken
Sing	sung, sang	sung
Sink	sunk, sank	sunk
Slay	slew	slain
Slide	slid <i>r</i>	slidden, slid <i>r</i>
Sling	slung, slang	slung
Smite	smote	smitten, smit
Sow	sowed	sown <i>r</i>
Speak, <i>be-</i>	spoke, spake, <i>be-</i>	spoken, <i>be-</i>
Spin	spun, span	spun
Spring	sprung, sprang	sprung
Steal	stole	stolen
Stride, <i>be-</i>	strode, strid, <i>be-</i>	stridden, strid, <i>be-</i>
Strive	<i>r</i> strove	striven
Strow, <i>be-</i>	strowed, <i>be-</i>	<i>r</i> strown, <i>be-</i>
Swear	swore, sware	sworn
Swell	swelled	<i>r</i> swollen
Swim	swum, swam	swum
Take, <i>be- under-</i>	took, <i>be- under-</i>	taken, <i>be- under-</i>
Tear	tore (tare, <i>obsolete</i> )	torn
Thrive	<i>r</i> throve	<i>r</i> thriven
Throw	threw <i>r</i>	<i>r</i> thrown
Tread	trod (trode, <i>obs.</i> )	trodden, trod
Wax	waxed	waxen
Wear	wore	worn
Weave	wove	woven
Write	wrote (writ, <i>obs.</i> )	written (writ, <i>obs.</i> )

*Defective Verbs.*

**514.** A *Defective Verb* is one in which some of the parts are wanting. The following list comprises the most important. They are irregular, and chiefly auxiliary :—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
Can	could	Shall	should
May	might	Will	would
Must	—	Wis	wist
Ought	ought	Wit	} wot
Quoth	quoth	Wot	

*Imperative—Beware.*

**515.** *Ought*, originally the past tense of *owe*, is now used to signify present duty ; and *must*, to denote present obligation or necessity. When they refer to past time, a change is made in the infinitive with which they are joined ; thus, *Present*—"These things ye ought to do," *Past*—"These things ye ought to have done." (443 and 449)

**516.** *Will*, as an auxiliary, has *wilt*, and *shall* has *shalt*, in the second person singular. They are both without inflection in the third person singular. *Will*, as a principal verb, is regular.

**517.** *Wis*, *wist*, which signifies, *to know*, *to imagine*, is now obsolete. *Wit*, of the same meaning and origin, is now used only in the infinitive, in the phrase, "*to wit*," that is, "namely."

**518.** *Beware* (properly *be* and *ware*, or *wary*) is now used only in the imperative, and sometimes after an auxiliary ; as, "*Beware of him*"—"We should *beware*."

**519.** *Quoth*, *to say*, *to speak*, is used only in ludicrous language ; its nominative always comes after the verb, and it has no variation for person, number, or tense ; as, "*Quoth he*"—" *Quoth they*," etc.

To defective verbs also properly belong—

*Impersonal Verbs.*

**520.** *Impersonal Verbs* are those which assert the existence of some action or state, but refer it to no particular subject.

They are always in the third person singular, and in English are preceded by the pronoun *it*; as, "*It rains*,"—"*It hails*,"—"*It behooves*," etc.

521. To this class of words belong the expressions, *methinks*, *methought*; *meseems*, *meseemed*; sometimes used for, "*It seems to me*"—" *It appears to me*," etc.

522. The pronoun *it*, preceding the impersonal verb as its subject, is the substitute of some unknown and general, or well-known cause, the action of which is expressed by the verb, but which can not, or need not, itself be named (246-4).

#### EXERCISES.

1. Conjugate the following irregular verbs (485 and 513), stating why they are called irregular. Make complete sentences with them, and in these tell which are transitive, which are intransitive, and which are attributive, and why (320b1). Extend the list at pleasure from the table.

Take, drive, creep, begin, abide, buy, bring, arise, catch, bereave, am, burst, draw, drink, fly, flee, fall, get, give, etc.

#### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. In the following exercises, parse the several words; viz., the nouns as directed (182)—articles as (194)—adjectives as (225)—pronouns as (253)—and verbs as (491 and 496).

[The words in *Italics* are *prepositions*, and the nouns or pronouns following them are in the *objective case*.]

The wind shakes the trees.—The apples fell *to* the ground.—God created all things.—The heavens are the work *of* his hands.—The sun shines.—The fields are covered *with* grain.—The crops are excellent.—The rivers run *into* the sea.—A good man shows pity *to* the poor (201).—Remember thy Creator *in* the days *of* thy youth.—Truth is mighty.

2. Form a list of ten nouns; say something respecting each; and parse the sentences so formed, as above.



## ADVERBS.

**523.** An *Adverb* is a word joined to a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, to modify it, or to denote some circumstance respecting it; as, "Ann speaks *distinctly*; she is *remarkably* diligent, and reads *very correctly*."

**524.** An adverb is generally equivalent to a modifying phrase, or adjunct (541) of the word to which it is joined. Thus, in the preceding example, "*distinctly*" means, *in a distinct manner*; "*remarkably*," *in a remarkable degree*. So, "*now*" means, *at this time*; "*then*," *at that time*, etc. Hence, adverbs and adverbial adjuncts are often used indiscriminately in modifying verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

**525.** On the same principle that an adverb modifies another adverb, it sometimes also modifies an *adjunct*, a *phrase*, or a *sentence*; as, "I met your brother *FAR from home*"—"He will be here *SOON after mid-day*"—"We shall go *IMMEDIATELY after the mail arrives*."

**526.** A few adverbs are sometimes used as *adjuncts* of *nouns* and *pronouns*; as, "I *only* [that is, *I*, and no one else] am escaped alone to tell thee."—"The women *also* were present," that is, the women *as well as the others*—*in addition to the others*.

The adverbs used in this way are such as the following: *Chiefly*, *particularly*, *especially*, *entirely*, *altogether*, *solely*, *only*, *merely*, *partly* *also*, *likewise*, *too*, etc.

**527.** An adjunct, without the word to which it belongs, is called an *adverbial phrase*; as, *in short*, *in vain*, *in general*, *at most*, *at least*, *at a l.*

**528.** Adverbs have been divided into various classes, according to their signification. The chief of these are the following:—

*Table of Adverbs.*

ADVERBS EXPRESS

1. *Manner* ; as, *justly, bravely.*
2. *Place* ; as, *here, there, where—hither.*
3. *Time* ; as, *now, then, when, soon, often.*
4. *Direction* ; as, *upward, downward.*
5. *Affirmation* ; as, *yes, verily, certainly.*
6. *Negation* ; as, *nay, no, not, nowise.*
7. *Interrogation* ; as, *how? why? when?*
8. *Comparison* ; as, *more, most, less, as.*
9. *Quantity* ; as, *much, some, little, enough.*
10. *Order* ; as, *first, secondly, thirdly, next.*

**529.** *There*, commonly used as an adverb of place, is often used as an *introductory expletive* to the verbs *to be*, *to come*, *to appear*, and some others, when the subject, in declaratory sentences, follows the verb ; as, "*There* is no doubt of the fact"—"*There* are four boys here." Sometimes, when the subject goes before, it is placed between the subject and the verb ; as, "A mistake *there* is." In all such cases, *there* is a mere expletive. It adds nothing to the sense, but still it enables us to vary the form of expression, and to soften the abruptness which would otherwise exist. This will appear by omitting it in any of the preceding examples.

*Then* does not always refer to time, but it is used to indicate a certain circumstance, or a case supposed ; as, "If you will go, *then*, [that is, in that case] say so."

*Now* is sometimes used without reference to time, merely to indicate the transition from one sentence to another ; as, "Not this man, but Barabbas. *Now* Barabbas was a robber."

**530.** The words, *to-day, to-night, to-morrow, yesterday*, used as adjuncts, may be called adverbs of time, or they may be regarded as nouns in the objective case, without the governing word (828), or as nouns in any case the construction may require.

**531.** In comparisons, *as* and *so*, in the antecedent clause, are usually reckoned adverbs, because they modify an adjective or another adverb. The corresponding *as* and *so*, sometimes called conjunctions, are properly adverbs also, because resolvable into an adjunct (524) ; thus, "It is *as* high as heaven," that is, It is high in the degree in which heaven is high.—"*So far as* I know," that is, far to the extent to which I know.

**532.** *So* is often used as the representative of a preceding word, phrase, or sentence, in order to prevent its repetition; as, "To make men happy, and keep them *so*"—"France is *highly cultivated*—England more *so*"—"James is in good health, John is not *so*"—"I believed that you would succeed, and I told you *so*."

**533.** *Therefore, wherefore, also*, sometimes called conjunctions, are more properly adverbs, because used for the adjuncts, *for this reason, for which reason, in addition* (524).

### *Conjunctive Adverbs.*

**534.** A *Conjunctive Adverb* is one that stands for two adjuncts, one of which contains a relative pronoun, and the other, its antecedent; thus, "I will see you *when* you come." Here, *when* is equivalent to, *at the time at which*; the first part, "*at the time*," modifies "*will see*," and the second, "*at which*," modifies "*come*." Again, "I know not *how* it is done." Here *how* is equivalent to *the manner in which*. The first part, "*the manner*," is the object of "*know*," and the second, "*in which*," is the adjunct of "*is done*." In a similar way, *where* may be resolved into *the place in which*; *whither*, into *the place to which*, etc.

These adverbs perform a double office: they modify two different words, and connect the clauses to which they belong. They are, *when, where, while, whither, whence*. They are also used interrogatively, both directly and indirectly. Thus used, they are not conjunctive; as, "*When* [that is, *at what time*] will you come?"—"Thou knowest not *whence* [*from what place*] it cometh, and *whither* [*to what place*] it goeth."

### *Formation and Derivation of Adverbs.*

**535.** Adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

1. A few adverbs are *primitive*, or derived from no other words in the language; as, *yes, no, not, here, there, now, then*, etc.

Many adverbs of quality or manner, are derived from adjectives by adding *ly*; as, *diligent, diligently; happy, happily* (57): or by changing *le* into *ly*; as, *able, ably; simple, simply*. But adverbs are sel

dom formed from adjectives in *ly*, the adjunct being used in preference. Thus, we would not say, "He acted *manily*," but "*in a manly manner*," or "*like a man*."

3. Many *compound* adverbs are formed by combining words together, so as of two or more words forming an adjunct, to make one compound term ; as, *indeed*, *hereby*, *thereby*, *wherewith*, *therefore*, *wheresoever*, *nevertheless*, etc.

4. Some nouns and other words are converted into adverbs by prefixing *a*, signifying, *at*, *in*, *on*, etc. ; as, *abed*, *ashore*, *aloft*, *ahead*, *astern*, *aground*, *apart*, *adrift*, *afresh*, *alike*, *asleep*, etc. (190).

5. Many words are used sometimes as adverbs, and sometimes as other parts of speech ; thus :—

***Much*** is used—1. As an adverb, as, "He is *much* better."

2. As an adjective ; as, "In *much* wisdom is *much* grief."

3. As a noun ; as, "Where *much* is given, *much* is required."

***Yesterday*** is used—1. As an adverb ; as, "He came *yesterday*" (530).

2. As a noun ; as, "*Yesterday* is past."

***But*** is used—1. As an adverb ; as, "Give *but* one kind word."

2. As a preposition (538) ; as, "None *but* the brave."

3. As a conjunction (561) ; as, "He is poor, *but* honest."

***What*** is used—1. As an interrogative ; as, "*What* is that?"

2. As a relative ; as, "We speak *what* we know."

3. As an adverb ; as, "*What* [partly] with one thing, and *what* [partly] with another, we had enough to do."

6. Circumstances of time, place, manner, etc., are often expressed by two or more words constituting an *adverbial phrase* (527 and 530) ; as, *at length*, *not at all*, *by no means*, *in vain*, *in order*, *long ago*, *by-and-by*, *all over*, *to and fro*, *for ever*, etc. Such phrases may be taken *together* as one word, and parsed as an adverb, or *separately*, as other words, where it can be done, supplying the ellipsis when necessary. See Appendix L 5.

## Comparison of Adverbs.

**536.** Adverbs of quality, derived from adjectives, and a few others, admit of *comparison* like adjectives; as, *nobly, more nobly, most nobly; soon, sooner, soonest.*

The following are compared irregularly:—

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Badly, or ill,	worse,	worst.	Much,	more,	most.
Far,	farther,	farthest.	Well,	better,	best.
Little,	less.	least.			

### *Parsing the Adverb.*

**537.** An adverb is parsed by stating what part of speech—the class to which it belongs—the word which it modifies—its derivation and comparison, if derived and compared. Thus:—

“He speaks *fluently*.”—*Fluently*, an adverb of manner, and modifies “*speaks*,” derived from *fluent*, and compared *more fluently, most fluently*.

### PRELIMINARY ORAL EXERCISE.

When we say, “John runs rapidly,” what part of speech is *John*? what is *runs* (314)? What is the use of the word *rapidly* in that sentence? What part of speech are those words which express the manner of doing a thing (528-1)? What part of speech, then, is *rapidly*? Why? Can you think of any other words that might be used to express the manner in which “John runs”?—“*Swiftly, slowly, well, ill.*” What part of speech are these words? Suppose you say, “John ran *yesterday*”—“John runs *now*”—“John will run *soon*”—what is the use of the words *yesterday, now, soon*? What are words called which express a circumstance of time (528-3)? Then what part of speech are *yesterday, now, soon*? Why?

What other words besides the verb do adverbs modify (523)? When we say, “John is a very good boy,” what word modifies *good*?

What part of speech is *good*? Why? Then what part of speech is *very*? Why?

If I say, "John reads exceedingly well," what word modifies *reads*?  
 Ans. *Well*. Then what part of speech is *well*? Why? What word tells us *how well* he reads? What word does *exceedingly* modify? Then what part of speech is it? Why?

#### EXERCISES.

1. Tell to what class the following adverbs belong—whether primitive or derivative—if not primitive, how are they formed—compare if compared:—

Justly, wisely, happily, beautifully, fashionably, sufficiently, thirdly, nearly, almost, perfectly.

Here, there, anywhere, hither, thither, yes, no, thence, somewhere—now, then, to-day, hereafter.

2. Form sentences, each of which will contain one of the preceding adverbs. Parse as directed (537).

#### PREPOSITIONS.

**538.** A *Preposition* is a word which shows the relation between the noun or pronoun following it, and some other word in the sentence; as, "The Love of Money."—"Come to me."

**539.** Of the words related, that before the preposition is called the *antecedent* term of the relation, and that which follows it is called the *subsequent* term or *regimen*.

The *antecedent* term is always *limited* by the *prepositional phrase*, which is, in character, adjective or adverbial, according as the antecedent is a substantive or some other word. (596, 2).

**540.** Instead of a noun or pronoun, a preposition may be followed by an infinitive mood, or clause of a sentence, used as a substantive; as, "We are about to depart."

"Honored for *having done his duty*."—"The crime of *being a young man*."

541. The preposition and its regimen united are called the *adjunct of the antecedent term*; and the antecedent term, as related to its adjunct, may be called the *principal*. It is usually a *noun*, or *pronoun*, an *adjective*, a *verb*, or an *adverb*; as, "The *waters* of Jordan."—"He with the book in his hand."—"It is good for me." "Pray for us." "He acts *consistently* with his principles."

542. The same word not unfrequently has several adjuncts; as, "He WENT *from Boston to New York, by railroad, in eight hours*." Also the noun or pronoun in the adjunct may be limited by one or more adjuncts—the whole forming a *compound adjunct*; as, "It is *CONSISTENT with the character of a man of honor*." Here "*of honor*" is the adjunct of *man*, "*of a man of honor*" is a compound adjunct of *character*; and the whole, "*with the character of a man of honor*," is a compound adjunct of *consistent*.

543. The *preposition* is so called because it is usually placed *before* its regimen, as in the above examples. Sometimes, however, the sentence may be so inverted that the preposition *follows* its regimen immediately, or at some distance; as, "Where echo walks the steep hills *among*."—"Whom did he speak *to*?"

544. In the natural order of a sentence, the adjunct follows its principal, as, "He withdrew *after supper*." It is often convenient, however, to arrange the adjunct first, as, "*After supper* he withdrew with his friend who had called for him." Here the same sense can not be given by placing the adjunct, "*after supper*" anywhere *else* in the sentence.

545. Prepositions may be divided into classes which shall indicate their use, and in some sense, the historical order of their development.

1. Relations of *place*. (1) *Where* a thing is (rest in); as *in, on, at, by*. (2) *Direction* to or from a place (motion); as, *to, into, from*, etc. (3) Both *place* and *direction*; as, *over, under*, etc.

2. Relations of *time*. (1) Relations of *place* extended, as *in, after*, etc. (2) *Time* merely; as, *since, till, during*, etc.

3. To indicate the *agent* or *instrument*. (1) Simple relations of place extended [The mill is *by* the river]; as, "The mill is turned *by* the river. (2) Compound prepositional phrases; as, *by means of, by virtue of*, etc.

4. To denote *cause* or *purpose*, as *from, for*, etc.

5. To denote *miscellaneous relations*, not easily classified, frequently by means of abbreviated forms of expression.

These may be shown approximately in the following

*Table of Prepositions.*

PREPOSITIONS EXPRESS RELATIONS OF	1. PLACE.	<i>Rest in,</i> <i>Motion to or from,</i> <i>Rest or motion,</i>	as, He is <i>in</i> the house. He went <i>into</i> the house. <i>Over.</i>
	2. TIME.	<i>Time and Place,</i> <i>Time only,</i>	<i>At</i> the place, <i>at</i> the time. <i>Till</i> noon
	3. AGENT OR INSTRUMENT.		<i>By</i> his power.
	4. CAUSE.		<i>For</i> my sake.
	5. MISCELLANEOUS IDEAS.	<i>Separation,</i>	<i>Without.</i>
		<i>Inclination,</i>	<i>For.</i>
		<i>Aversion,</i>	<i>Against.</i>
		<i>Substitution,</i>	<i>Instead of.</i>
		<i>Possession,</i>	<i>Of.</i>
		<i>Reference,</i>	<i>Touching.</i>
		<i>Opposition,</i>	<i>Against.</i>

The following embraces most of the prepositions in common use :

*List of Prepositions.*

TO BE COMMITTED ACCURATELY TO MEMORY.

About	Behind	From	Through
Above	Beneath	In	Throughout
Across	Beside }	Into	Till
After	Besides }	Notwithstanding	To
Against	Between	Of	Touching
Along	Betwixt	Off	Toward }
Amid }	Beyond	On	Towards }
Amidst }	But	Over	Under
Among }	By	Out of	Underneath
Amongst }	Concerning	Past	Until
Around	Down	Pending	Unto
At	During	Regarding	Up
Athwart	Ere	Respecting	Upon
Bating	Except	Round	With
Before	Excepting	Save	Within
Below	For	Since	Without



**546.** *Concerning, excepting, regarding, respecting, and touching*, were originally present participles active of transitive verbs, and as such required an objective case after them (801). They may frequently be so construed still. *During* may be regarded as originally the present participle active of an intransitive verb, having the noun or pronoun in the nominative case absolute (769); thus, "*During life*," means *life during*, or *while life endures*. *Notwithstanding*, a compound of *not* and the present participle *withstanding*, may be explained the same way. Still, when used as a preposition, the word following must be regarded as in the objective case (818).

**547.** *Except* and *save* were originally imperatives. *Out of* may be regarded either as two words—an adverb and preposition—or as one word—forming a sort of compound preposition. Of this character are the following: *From between, from beyond, from within, from without, over against*, and the like. *Off* is, for the most part, an adverb, and means *at a distance*; as, "*Far off*." With a noun or pronoun following, it is a preposition, and means *not on, from*, etc.; as, "*Off the table*."

**548.** The word *a* in the sense of *at, in, on, to, of*, etc., has the force of a preposition in such expressions as *a reading, a running, a going, a hunting*, etc. (190), and may be parsed as such. The same word is used as a prefix in such words as *aboard, ashore, asleep, abed, afloat*, etc. (190).

**549.** *To*, the sign of the infinitive mood, is, by some, regarded as a sort of verbal prefix belonging to the form of the verb in that part. It is properly a preposition, but is rarely analysed and parsed as such.

**550.** When a preposition has not an object, it becomes an *adverb*; as, "*He rides about*." But in such phrases as *cast up, hold out, fall on*, etc., *up, out, on*, should be considered as parts of the verbs to which they are joined, rather than as prepositions or adverbs.

**551.** Several words in the preceding list are used sometimes as prepositions and sometimes as other parts of speech; as, thus:—*till, until, after, before*, etc., are frequently adverbs. *But* and *save*, followed by the objective case, are used as prepositions; followed by a nominative, they are conjunctions. *For* and *since* are also used as conjunctions.

*I, the - singular  
you're - " " "*

ETYMOLOGY—PREPOSITIONS.

*How - I regular transitive* 147  
**552.** All words used as prepositions are followed by a substantive in the *objective case*.

*Parsing.*

**553.** A preposition is parsed by stating what part of speech, and between what words it shows the relation; thus, "The waters *of* Jordan." *Of* is a preposition, and shows the relation between *Jordan* and *waters*.

Here *Jordan* is the regimen of the preposition *of*; *of Jordan* is the adjunct of *waters*; and *waters* is the principal to which the adjunct belongs.

**554.** PRELIMINARY ORAL EXERCISE.

When I say, "The book is on the table," what word shows the relation of *book* to *the table*? What part of speech are words that show the relation between nouns or pronouns, and other words in the sentence? Then what part of speech is *on*? Could the book be in any other relation to the table than *on* it? It might be *off* the table, *above* the table, *under* the table, *beside* the table, etc. Then what part of speech are *off*, *above*, *under*, *beside*? Why? When we say, "They live in the country," what word shows the relation between *country* and *live*? Then what part of speech is *in*?

EXERCISES.

1. In the following sentences point out the preposition and the words between which it shows the relation. Name the *adjunct* and *principal*. In what sentences has the principal more than one adjunct?—in what a compound adjunct? Frame other sentences containing prepositions.

*Pacific*  
He went from Boston.—He went to Washington.—He went from Boston to Washington.—We reside in the country.—All rivers flow into the sea.—He gave his book to me.—He gave [to] me his book.—Flowers bloom in summer.—In summer flowers bloom.

2. In the preceding exercises, parse each word in order as directed, under each of the several parts of speech.

## INTERJECTIONS.

**555.** An *Interjection* is a word used in exclamations, to express an emotion of the mind ; as, "Oh ! what a fall was there."

**556.** The *Interjection* is so called, because it is, as it were, *thrown in among* the words of a sentence, without any grammatical connection with them. Sometimes it stands at the beginning of a sentence, sometimes in the middle, and sometimes it stands alone, as if the emotion were too strong to admit of other words being spoken.

*List of Interjections.*

**557.** The following is a list of the interjections most commonly used. They express various kinds of emotions, but in so vague and indefinite a way as not to admit of accurate classification.

Ah ! alas ! O ! oh ! ha ! fudge ! tush pshaw ! poh ! pugh ! fie ! avaunt ! ho ! holla ! aha ! hurrah ! huzza ! bravo ! hist ! hush ! heigho ! heyday ! hail ! lo ! welcome ! halloo ! adieu ! etc.

**558.** Also some words belonging to other parts of speech, when uttered in an unconnected and forcible manner, to express emotion, are called interjections ; as, *nonsense ! strange ! wonderful ! shocking ! what ! behold ! off ! away ! hark ! come ! well done ! welcome !*

**559.** *O* is used to express wishing or exclamation, and should be prefixed only to a noun or pronoun, in a direct address ; as, "*O* Virtue ! how amiable thou art !" *Oh* is used detached from the word, with a point of exclamation after it, or after the next word. It implies an emotion of pain, sorrow, or surprise ; as, "*Oh ! what a sight is here.*"

*Parsing.*

**560.** An interjection is parsed by stating the part of speech, why, and the emotion expressed ; as, "Oh ! what a sight is here."

*Oh*—an interjection, because used as an exclamation, and expresses an emotion of pain.

---

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**561.** A *Conjunction* is a word which connects words, phrases, or sentences ; as, “He *and* I must go, *but* you may stay.”—“Of him, *and* through him, *and* to him, are all things.”

**562.** Here, *and* connects the words *He* and *I*, and *but* connects the sentences, “*He and I must go*,” and “*you may stay*.”

**563.** Conjunctions sometimes begin sentences, even after a full period, to show a connection between sentences in the general tenor of discourse. See, as examples, the first chapter of Genesis.

**564.** *And*, *or*, and *nor*, are the conjunctions most frequently employed to connect words and phrases.

From the difference in their use and meaning, conjunctions are divided into classes :

**565.** Conjunctions are of two classes : *Copulative* and *Disjunctive*.

**566.** A *Copulative* Conjunction not only joins sentences together, but also *unites their meaning*. Of these there are two kinds :

1. *Connective*, which simply *connect* the meaning of two united sentences [words or phrases] ; as, “The sun shines, *and* the sky is clear.”

2. *Continuative*, which *combine* the meaning of the united sentences ; as, “The sun shines *because* the sky is clear.”

NOTE.—The latter generally add a subordinate clause, which limits the preceding, or some part thereof.

**567.** A *Disjunctive* Conjunction is one which, while it joins two sentences together, *disconnects their meaning*. There are two kinds :

1. *Distributive*, which simply *disconnect*, or distribute the meaning of the united sentences [words or phrases]; as, "You may go *or* you may stay."

2. *Adversative*, which *contrast* the meaning of the united sentences; as, "It is day, *but* it is not night."

*Table of Conjunctions.*

CONJUNCTIONS ARE	I. COPULATIVE.	1. <i>Connective</i> .	{ And Also Likewise Moreover Further Both For
		2. <i>Continuative</i> .	{ Before where except Ere whether however After whence as if When if so that Whilst because unless Until that though Whenever than Although as since Lest provided Save whereas
	II. DISJUNCTIVE.	1. <i>Distributive</i> .	{ Or nor Either neither
		2. <i>Adversative</i> .	{ But * Nevertheless However Still. Notwithstanding Yet Whereas

---

\* *But* as a correlative of *not only* is *copulative*; as, "*Not only* the men, *but* the boys came."

**568.** *And* is the principal connective, and connects what follows as an *addition* to that which precedes. Most of the others connect what follows as a *condition*, *supposition*, *cause*, *motive*, etc.

**569.** *Both* is an antecedent conjunction, related to *and*. When used, it precedes the first of the words or sentences connected by *and*, in order to make the connection more emphatic.

**570.** *Either* and *neither* are antecedent conjunctions, related to *or* and *nor* respectively. When used, they precede the first of the words or sentences connected by *or* or *nor*, to render them more emphatic. Sometimes they are transposed to the end of the sentence so as to give emphasis to the latter member; as, "Was that your business, or mine *either*?" That was not my business, *nor* yours *neither*—*neither* my business *nor* yours.

**571.** *Therefore* and *wherefore*, sometimes called conjunctions, are more properly adverbs (533).

### *Parsing the Conjunction.*

**572.** A conjunction is parsed by stating the part of speech, its class, sub-class, and the words, phrases, or sentences which it connects; as, "He *and* I must go; *but* you may stay."

*And*—a copulative conjunction, connective, and unites the words *He* and *I*.

*But*—a disjunctive conjunction, adversative, and connects the sentences, "He and I must go," and "you may stay."

### **573.** *Preliminary Oral Exercise.*

When we say, "John and James study," what word connects John and James? What class of words connect words or sentences?

What part of speech is *and*? In the sentence, "John reads ~~and~~ writes," what does *and* connect? What does *and* connect in the following phrases, "A red and white rose"—"A red rose and a white rose"—"Well and truly said?" What conjunction connects the following sentences, "They are happy, because they are good?" Here the following facts may be noticed (945, etc.):—

1. When *two nouns* or *pronouns* are connected, they are in the *same case*, and in the same construction.

2. When *two verbs* are connected, they have the *same subject*; as, "James reads and writes."

3. When *two adjectives* are connected, they qualify the *same noun* or *pronoun*.

4. When *two adverbs* are connected, they modify the *same word*.

5. When conjunctions connect *sentences*, they do not connect *individual words* in the sentence. Thus, "They are happy, *because* they are good," the conjunction does not connect *they* with *they*, nor *are* with *are*, nor *happy* with *good*; but, "They are happy" with "they are good." So also when they connect *phrases*: "He spoke to James, and to me"—"Of him, and through him, and to him, are all things."

#### EXERCISES ON CONJUNCTIONS.

1. In the following sentences, point out the conjunctions, and state what words, or phrases, or sentences, they connect. Sometimes the order is so inverted, that the conjunctive clause stands first.

2. Parse the words in their order.

Time and tide wait for no man.—The evening and the morning were the first day.—The memory of the just is blessed, but the name of the wicked shall rot.—If thou faint in the day of adversity, thy strength is small.—George or John will go.—They will succeed, because they are industrious.—Because they are industrious they will succeed.—Of him, and through him, and to him, are all things.—Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.

PARSING.

**574.** *Parsing* is the resolving of a sentence into its elements or *parts of speech*.

**575.** Words may be parsed in two ways: *Etymologically* (576), and *Syntactically* (983).

1. *Etymological* parsing consists in stating the part of speech to which each word in a sentence belongs, its uses and accidents, its inflection, and changes, and derivation, if derived.

2. *Syntactical* parsing adds to the above a statement of the relation in which the words stand to each other, and the rules according to which they are combined in phrases and sentences.

NOTE.—In the natural order, *Etymological parsing* should precede *Analysis*, because we can not analyze a sentence before we have learned the character of the words it contains; and *Analysis* should precede *Syntactical parsing*, because, till we know the parts and elements of a sentence, we can not understand their relations, nor intelligently combine them into one consistent whole. As *Etymological* parsing has to do only with the *accidents* of words, it matters not whether the words parsed are unconnected, or in sentences. But in both *Analysis* and *Syntactical parsing*, not only must the words constitute a sentence, but that also must be both *intelligible* and *understood*; for no one can either analyze or parse syntactically that which he does not understand.

*Etymological Parsing.*

**576.** Words are parsed *etymologically* in the manner directed under each part of speech, viz.: Nouns (182)—articles (194)—adjectives (225)—pronouns of different kinds, viz.: personal (253), relative (278), interrogative (286), adjective (313)—verbs (431 and 496)—adverbs (537)—prepositions (553)—interjections (560)—conjunctions (572).

**577.** That a pupil should be expert and accurate in this exercise



is of much importance, in order to pursue with pleasure and success the study of Syntax, and to gain a correct understanding of the forms and usages of speech in the English language.

**578.** A *sentence* to be parsed must be intelligible, and it is necessary for the pupil, in the first place, to *understand it*. When he understands a sentence, and also the definition of the different parts of speech given in the grammar, he will not find much difficulty in ascertaining to which of them each word belongs. This method will exercise the discriminating powers of the pupil better, engage his attention much more, and, on trial, be found much more easy and certain than that of consulting his dictionary on every occasion—a plan always laborious, often unsatisfactory, and which, instead of leading him to depend on his own resources, will induce habits of slavish dependence on the authority of others.

**579.** The following *general principles* should be remembered, and steadily kept in view, in parsing every sentence, viz.:—

1. Every *adjective* qualifies or limits a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood (195 and 196).

2. The *subject* of a verb, that is, the person or thing *spoken of*, is always in the *nominative* (except when the verb is in the infinitive or participial mood) (315 and 760).

3. Every *verb* in the indicative, potential, subjunctive, or imperative, has a *subject*, expressed or understood (661, 4).

4. Every *verb* in the *active voice* used transitively, and every preposition, is followed by a noun or pronoun in the *objective* case, or by an infinitive mood or a clause of a sentence equivalent to it; and every objective case, except as in 828, is the *object* of a *transitive* verb in the active voice, or of a preposition (661, 6).

5. The *infinitive mood*, for the most part, depends on a *verb* or *adjective* (865).

#### **580. MODEL OF ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING.**

“The minutest plant or animal, if [it is] attentively ex-

amined, affords a thousand wonders, and obliges us to admire and adore the Omnipotent Hand by which it was created."

581. Previous to parsing this sentence, the pupil may be led to understand it better, and perceive its parts more distinctly, by attending to such questions as the following: What is spoken of in this sentence? How are *plant* and *animal* qualified? What is said of them thus qualified? How is *wonders* limited? What else is said of *plant* and *animal*? Whom do they oblige? What do they oblige *us* to do? How is *hand* qualified? What *hand*? etc.

582. The length of time necessary to parse even a few words, giving all the reasons, as in the full schemes (576), renders it impracticable to do it often, though occasionally it may be profitable. The following brief method will answer every purpose:—

*The*.....Definite article, belonging to *plant* and *animal*, and showing them to be limited.

*minutest* . . . Adjective, superlative degree, qualifying *plant*, etc.

*plant* . . . . .A noun, neuter, in the nominative singular, subject of *affords*.

*or* . . . . .A disjunctive conjunction, distributive, connecting *plant* and *animal* as alternates.

*animal* . . . . .A noun, neuter, in the nominative singular, subject of *affords*.

*if* . . . . .A copulative conjunction, continuative, connecting the sentences.

*it* . . . . .Third personal pronoun, neuter, in the nominative singular, standing for *plant* or *animal*, and subject of *is examined*.

*is examined* . .A verb, transitive, regular, in the present indicative, passive, expressing what is done to its subject *it*.

*attentively* . . .An adverb, modifying *examined*; compared by *more* and *most*.

*affords* . . . . .A verb, transitive, regular, in the present indicative, active, third person singular, and affirms of *plant* or *animal*.

*a* . . . . .Indefinite article, showing *thousand wonders* to be indefinite.

*thousand* . . .A numeral adjective, used to qualify *wonders*.

*wonders* . . . .A noun, neuter, in the objective plural, object of *affords*.

- and*.....A copulative conjunction, connective, connects the predicates *affords* and *obliges*.
- obliges*.....A verb, transitive, regular, in the present indicative, active, third person singular, and affirms of *plant* or *animal*.
- us*.....First personal pronoun, in the objective plural, object of *obliges*, and subject of *to admire*, etc.
- to admire*....A verb, transitive, regular, in the present infinitive, active, attribute of *us*, or object of *obliges*.
- and*.....A copulative conjunction, connective, connects *to admire* and *to adore*.
- to adore*....A verb, transitive, regular, etc., (same as *to admire*).
- that*.....Demonstrative adjective pronoun, pointing out *hand*.
- Omnipotent*. An adjective, not compared, qualifying *hand*.
- hand*.....A noun, neuter, in the objective singular, object of *to admire* and *to adore*.
- by*.....A preposition, which shows the relation between *which* and *was created*.
- which*.....A relative pronoun, related to *hand* as its antecedent, objective, object of the preposition *by*.
- it*.....Third personal pronoun (same as before) subject of *was created*.
- was created*. A verb, transitive, regular, in the past indicative, passive, third person singular, and affirms of *it*.

### *Exercises in Parsing.*

**583.** The following exercises are intended to familiarize the pupil with the most usual forms of relation, so that he may, without embarrassment, enter upon the more difficult discussions of Syntax. Appropriate exercises should be extended, under each rule.

**1.** Two or more *adjectives* in *succession*, either with or without a *conjunction*, *qualify* the same word ; as,

1. A *wise* and *faithful* servant will always study his master's interest. 2. He has bought a fine new coat.

**2.** When an *adjective* precedes *two nouns*, it generally *qualifies* them both ; as,

1. They waited for a *fit time* and *place*. 2. He was a man of great wisdom and moderation.

**3.** *When an adjective comes after an attributive verb, it generally qualifies the subject of that verb ; as,*

1. *John is wise.* 2. *They were temperate.* 3. *The sky is very clear.* 4. *These rivers are deep and rapid.*

**4.** *Whatever words the verb "to be" serves to unite, referring to the same thing, must be of the same case ; as,*

1. *Alexander is a student.* 2. *Mary is a beautiful painter.* 3. *Knowledge is power.*

NOTE.—It is necessary to the application of this rule, that the words connected refer to the same thing. This connection is often made by other words than the verb "to be" (605 or 797).

**5.** *Nouns and pronouns, placed together for the sake of emphasis or explanation, and denoting the same object, are said to be in apposition, and always agree in case ; as,*

1. *Alexander, the coppersmith, was not a friend to the Apostle Paul.* 2. *Hope, the balm of life, is our greatest friend.*

NOTE.—In parsing such sentences as those above, a relative and a verb may be inserted between the words in apposition. *Myself, thyself, himself*, etc., often stand at a considerable distance from the words with which they agree, as,

3. *Thomas dispatched the letter himself.*

**6.** *Myself, thyself, himself, etc., often form the objectives after active-transitive verbs, of which the words they represent are the subjects. They are in such cases generally called Reflexive pronouns (249) ; as,*

1. *I hurt myself.* 2. *He wronged himself to oblige us.* 3. *They will support themselves by their industry.*

**7.** *Adjectives taken as nouns and used in reference to persons, are generally of the plural number (201) ; as,*

1. *The valiant never taste of death but once.* 2. *The virtuous are generally the most happy.*

**8.** *Nouns and pronouns taken in the same connection, must be of the same case ; as,*

1. *The master taught him and me to write.* 2. *He and she were schoolfellows.*

9. *A relative in the objective case generally precedes the verb on which it depends ; as,*

1. He is a friend *whom* I greatly respect. 2. The books which I bought yesterday, I have not yet received.

10. *When both a relative and its antecedent have each a verb belonging to it, the relative is commonly the subject of the first verb, and the antecedent the subject of the second ; as,*

1. He *who* acts wisely DESERVES praise. 2. He who is a stranger to industry may possess, but he can not enjoy.

11. *The relative what in itself represents but one case—the nominative or objective ; but it implies a reference to a general antecedent omitted, to which belongs the other case required by the construction. When this antecedent is expressed, which is used instead of what (266.)*

1. This is precisely *what* was necessary. 2. What can not be prevented must be endured.

12. *Whoever and whosoever are equivalent to a simple relative, and a general or indefinite antecedent, and in parsing may be so resolved ; thus, whoever=any one who. The same is the case with whatever and whatsoever ; whatever=everything which ; as,*

1. *Whoever* told such a story *must have been* misinformed. 2. *Whoever* is not content in poverty would not be perfectly happy in the midst of plenty.

NOTE.—*Whatever* is most frequently used as *what* sometimes is (277) simply to qualify a noun ; as,

3. Aspire at perfection, in *whatever* state of life you may be placed. 4. I forget what words he uttered.

13. *Though a participle never directly declares, yet it always implies something done or doing ; and is used in reference to some noun or pronoun which is its subject ; as,*

1. *Admired and applauded, he* became vain. 2. Having finished our lessons, we went to play.

14. *The past participle of a few intransitive verbs is sometimes joined to the verb “to be” which gives such verbs a passive appearance (374) ; as,*

1. I *am come*, in compliance with your desire. 2. The old house is fallen down. 3. John is gone to London.

**15.** *Intransitive verbs are often followed by prepositions, making what are sometimes called compound transitive verbs. The verb and preposition may, in such cases, be parsed either together or separately in the active voice. In the passive voice they must be parsed together ; as,*

1. He *laughed at* such folly. 2. They smiled upon us. 3. He was much laughed at for such conduct.

**16.** *A noun or pronoun is often used with a participle, without being connected in grammatical construction with any other words of the sentence. It is then called the nominative absolute, or independent ; as,*

1. The *father being dead*, the estate came into the hands of the eldest son. 2. Whose gray top shall tremble, he descending.

**17.** *To, the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after the verbs bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, and let ; and sometimes after perceive, behold, observe, have, know, etc., in the active voice, but is retained after the same verbs in the passive (877) ; as,*

1. Let me look at your portrait. He *bade me go* with him. 3. I heard him assert the opinion. 4. I saw him ride past at great speed.

**18.** *Verbs connected by conjunctions are usually in the same mood and tense, but in the compound tenses the sign is often used with the first only, and understood with the rest ; as,*

1. He *can neither read nor write*. 2. He shall no longer tease and vex me as he has done.

**19.** *Nouns and pronouns are often the object of a preposition understood ; and nouns denoting time, value, weight, or measure, are used to restrict verbs or adjectives, without a governing word (828) ; as,*

1. He gave (to) me a full account of the whole affair. 2. Will you lend *me* your knife. 3. He traveled on foot, last summer, as far as London. 4. He was in Paris last month.

**20.** *The conjunctions **than** and **as**, implying comparison, have the same case after them as before them ; and the latter case has the same construction as the former ; as,*

1. *He* has more books than my brother (has). 2. They respect *him* more than (they respect) *us*.

**21.** *The class of words, or part of speech to which a word belongs, depends often on its application ; as,*

1. *Calm* was the day, and the scene delightful. 2. We may expect a *calm* after a storm. 3. To prevent passion is easier than to *calm* it. 4. Better is a little with content, than a great deal with anxiety. 5. The gay and dissolute think little of the miseries which are stealing softly after them. 6. A little attention will rectify some errors.

**22.** *Do, have, and be, are principal verbs when used by themselves, but auxiliaries when connected with other verbs ; as,*

1. He *does* all in his power to gain esteem. 2. We must do nothing that will *sully* our reputation. 3. She has a strong claim to our respect. 4. He is at home.

**23.** *An infinitive, a participle used as a noun, or a clause of a sentence, which may be called a substantive phrase, is often the subject of a verb, or the object after an active-transitive verb or preposition (762 and 802) ; as,*

1. *Subject*.—1. To study hard is the best way to improve. 2. To endure misfortune with resignation is the characteristic of a great mind.

2. *Object*.—1. He that knows how to do good, and does it not, is without excuse. 2. He declared that nothing could give him greater pleasure. 3. Of making many books there is no end.

**24.** *When a substantive phrase (583, 23) is governed by a verb or preposition, this regimen does not affect the case of individual nouns or pronouns in that phrase, but leaves them subject to the influence of other words within the phrase itself.*

If the *infinitive* or *participle* of the verb "*to be*," or of a passive verb of naming, etc., is used in this way without a definite

*subject*, the substantive which follows it as a predicate is regarded as neither the subject of a verb, nor is under the regimen of any word; thus, "His *being* an expert *dancer* does not entitle him to our regard." The phrase "*being an expert dancer*," is the subject of the verb—"does entitle," but the word "*dancer*," in that phrase, is neither the subject of any verb, nor governed by any word in the sentence. Of this kind are all such expressions as the following: "It is an honor to be the *author* of such a work."—"To be *surety* for a stranger is dangerous."—"The atrocious crime of *being* a young *man*, I shall attempt neither to palliate nor deny."—*Pitt*. In all such examples, whether the phrase be the subject of a verb, or the object of an active-transitive verb or preposition, the noun or pronoun following the verb "to be," or a passive verb, is properly in the predicate-nominative (651 and 799). The words may be parsed separately, or the whole phrase may be parsed as one word.

1. He had the honor of being a director for life. 2. By being a diligent student, he acquired eminence in his profession.

25. *It often refers to persons, or to an infinitive coming after; as,*

1. It is *John* that is to blame. 2. It was I that wrote the letter. 3. It is the duty of all to improve. 4. It is easy to form good resolutions, but difficult to put them in practice.

26. *Words, especially in poetry, are often much transposed; as,*

1. Great is Diana of the Ephesians. 2. On yourself depend for aid. 3. Happy the man who puts his trust in his Maker.

4. No hive hast thou of hoarded sweets.

5. A transient calm the happy scenes bestow.

[As additional exercises in parsing, the little work entitled "PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES in Analysis and Parsing" may now be used, or sentences from any plain, simple, and accurate composition, such as are contained in the reading lessons, may be selected.]



# PART III.

## S Y N T A X .

---

**584.** *Syntax* is that part of grammar which treats of the proper arrangement and connection of words in a sentence.

**585.** A *Sentence* is such an assemblage of words as expresses a thought, and makes complete sense; as, "The boy studies."—"You may recite the lesson to-morrow."—"Bring the book when you find it." (589, 591, 660.)

A *Proposition* is a single statement or affirmation; as, "*Bees make honey.*" APPENDIX VII.

A sentence used in another sentence to limit it or any part of it, is called a *clause*; as, "Boys *who study* will excel."—"John said, *he saw Charles.*" (599, 3; 635, 638.)

**586.** The *Sentence* consists of two parts, the *Subject* and the *Predicate* (591).

1. The *Subject* is that of which the affirmation is made; as, *Snow* is white.—*Birds* sing.

2. The *Predicate* is that which is affirmed of the subject, that is, all the second part of the proposition (601, 619).

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Birds	fly.
Grass	is green.
Wise men	act prudently.
The boy who studies	will improve.
Good men	employ their talents rightly.

The *Verb* which makes the affirmation is, by itself, called the *affirmer*.

**587.** The real office of the sentence consists in affirming the *union of two ideas*. Thus, *grass* and *green* are two ideas; when the latter is affirmed of the former, we have the sentence. "*Grass is green.*" The word which unites them is called the *copula*.

The copula, which contains the affirmation, is most frequently included in the *predicate*; as. "*Birds fly.*"

## Classification of Sentences.

**588.** *Sentences* are divided into different classes :

1. As to the *form* of the affirmation, or mode of expressing it.
2. As to the *nature* of the affirmation, depending chiefly upon the meaning of the verb.
3. As to the *number* of *propositions* expressed.

### I. *Forms of Sentences.*

**589.** There are *four* classes :

1. *Declaratory*, or such as declare a thing ; as, "*God is love.*"
2. *Interrogatory*, or such as ask a question ; as, "*Lovest thou me ?*"
3. *Imperative*, or such as express a command ; as, "*Lazarus, come forth !*"
4. *Exclamatory*, or such as contain an exclamation ; as, "*Behold how he loved him !*"

### II. *Nature of the Affirmation.*

**590.** Examining the three following sentences, we discover a marked difference in the nature of the affirmation :

*Horses eat grass.* (Transitive.)

*Birds fly.* (Intransitive.)

*Sugar is sweet.* (Attributive.)

These sentences are types of the *three* classes.

1. A *Transitive Sentence* asserts an act that must have a receiver (i. e., grammatically, an object).
2. An *Intransitive Sentence* asserts an act of the person or thing named by the subject, which has no receiver (no object).
3. An *Attributive Sentence* asserts an attribute\*

---

\* The attribute may be an adjective, noun, substantive sentence, infinitive, or participle. This will, of course, include the passive participle, with the verb *to be*, commonly called the passive verb, or passive voice of the transitive verb.

of the subject, and is connected by the verb *to be*, or some other attributive verb (604).

NOTE.—In *Transitive* and *Attributive* sentences there is what some grammarians call a *third part*; in the one it consists of the *object* word and its dependents; in the other, of the *attribute* and its limiters. These—object and attribute—we prefer to regard as *subordinate* elements, which may themselves be limited; and as they *complete* the proposition, we may term them *complementary* elements (596, 1).

### III. Number of Propositions.

**591. Sentences**, according to the *number* of propositions they contain, are of two classes, *single* and *compound*.

1. A *single* sentence expresses only *one* proposition.
2. A *compound* sentence consists of *two* or *more* single sentences or propositions connected together (656).

It will be seen that in this classification, a sentence may assert of *two* or more subjects; as, "*John and James study*," or may contain a limiting clause; as, "*The boy who studies will improve*," "*I will go when the cars go*," and still be a *single* sentence.

The parts of a *compound* sentence (independent in grammatical construction) are called *members* (656, 2).

**592. Single sentences** may be distributed into *three* classes (599).

1. Those containing one subject, one verb, and (if transitive or attributive) one object or attribute; called *simple* sentences; as, "*The girl reads*" (the book).
2. Those having two or more of any of these parts, said to be *compound* in the part thus affected; as, "*John and James brought it*."—"She *speaks and writes* well."—"The horse ate *hay and oats*."—"He is *brave and gentle*."
3. Containing a limiting clause, called *complex* sentences; as, "*I will buy the book if it is a good one*" (635).

SENTENCE.	SINGLE.	{	Simple (or pure). Compound in . . . . . Complex.	{	Subject. Affirmer. Object. Attribute.
	COMPOUND.*	{	Members coördinate. Members logically dependent.		

*Compound sentences* are to be separated, in analysis, into their *members*, and each member treated as a single sentence. Any member considered by itself may have any of the distinctions noticed in single sentences.

**593.** 1. A *phrase* is two or more words rightly put together, but *not* containing an affirmation or making complete sense; as, "*In truth*"—" *In a word*"—" *To say the least*."

2. A *substantive* phrase is one which, in the construction of a sentence, is equivalent to a noun or substantive, being 1. The *subject* of a verb; as, "*To do good* is to be happy." 2. The *object* of a transitive verb (320, 1); as, "*To do good* forget not." 3. The *object* of a preposition (540); as, "*By pursuing this course* he succeeded." 4. The *attribute* after an attributive verb (604); as, "*He appears to be doing well*."

3. When a phrase consists of a preposition with its regimen (541) as related to its principal or antecedent term, it is called an *adjunct*; as, "*The waters of Jordan*"—" *They came to Jordan*."

## Elements of the Sentence.

**594.** Any word, phrase, or clause, performing a specific

\* The sub-division of compound sentences given in the scheme, comprises, 1st (with members coördinate), those that are both grammatically and logically independent of each other; 2d, (logically dependent), those in which one or more members represent a purpose or end, or some logical sequence of the leading member, but do not perform the office of an adjunct clause; as, "*I shall go home to-morrow, for I have some work to do*."

office is called an *element*. Some elements are essential to the very existence of the sentence. These are called *principal* elements. All others are *subordinate* and *attendant* elements.

**595.** *The principal elements* are,

1. *Subjective*,—the noun, pronoun, or clause, of which the affirmation is made.

2. *Affirmative*,—the verb making the affirmation.

**596.** *The subordinate elements* are,

1. *Complementary*,—the *object* or *attribute*, in transitive and attributive sentences; and

2. *Adjunctive*,—words, phrases, or clauses used to *limit*, like adjectives and adverbs.

**597.** *Attendant elements* are conjunctions, expletives (529), and words of euphony.

The following classification exhibits all the sentential elements:

ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE.	{	PRINCIPAL.	{	<i>Subjective.</i>		
			{	<i>Affirmative.</i>		
	{	SUBORDINATE.	{	<i>Complementary.</i>	{	Objective.
			{	<i>Adjunctive.</i>	{	Attributive.
					{	Adnominal.
					{	Adverbial.
		ATTENDANT ELEMENTS.				

NOTE.—In the *analysis* of a sentence, the *larger* offices must be stated before the specific uses and connections of the separate words.

## I. Analysis of Sentences.

**598. PRELIMINARY REMARKS.**—The subject of Analysis here introduced will be found to be an important preparation for the CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES (660, etc.). After the pupil has become familiar with this portion, the Analysis of two or three sentences

daily will be an amusement rather than a task. He should begin of course with sentences of the simplest character, gradually advancing to those that are more complex. For this purpose, sentences may be selected from any "Reading book" of easy lessons, or from "Parsing Exercises" (583), or from the little work entitled "PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN ANALYSIS AND PARSING," adapted to this Grammar. At first, the teacher may direct the attention of the pupil orally to the order of Analysis by such questions as the following: What is a sentence?—Is this sentence ["*God is good*"] single or compound?—Why single?—What are the parts of a sentence (586)?—What is the subject of a sentence (586. 1.)?—Of whom does this sentence affirm?—Then, what word is the subject of this sentence?—What is the predicate of a sentence (586. 2.)?—What is here affirmed of the subject "*God*"?—Then what is the predicate in this sentence?—Of how many parts does the predicate consist (601)?—What are they?—In this predicate, what word is the attribute?—What the copula? What is the verb called when used as a copula only (604)? What are the verbs commonly used as copulatives (605)? Having, in some such a way as this, conducted the analysis of simple sentences till the pupil has become familiar with it, the same, or a similar process may be pursued with sentences in which the subject or the predicate is modified; and so with sentences having a compound subject (613), or a compound predicate (627); and then proceed to compound sentences (656), and to limiting clauses, etc., (635). After a few trials of this kind, the pupil will be able to analyze sentences without the aid of questions, and do it more rapidly and satisfactorily: thus. "*God is good.*" This is a single, attributive, declaratory sentence; it affirms of "*God*" that he "*is good*," therefore, "*God*" is the subject; and "*is good*," the predicate. In this predicate, "*good*" is the attribute, and "*is*" the copula; it is therefore here an attributive verb (604).

### *Single Sentences.*

**599.** *Single sentences* (expressing only one complete proposition) are of *three* kinds.

1. *Simple*, containing but one subject, one affirmer, and, if transitive or attributive, one object or attribute.

In its most elementary form, these words are unmodified by any other; as,

Horses run. John strikes Thomas. Sugar is sweet.

The *simple sentence* may be *enlarged*. 1. By an *adjunct*

word, or phrase, in any or all of its parts ; as, "*Wise men use rightly their time.*" 2. By the substitution of a *clause* for its subject, object, or attribute ; as, "*To be angry is to be mad.*" "*That men should lie is base.*"

2. The *single sentence* may have two or more *subjects, affirmers, objects, or attributes*, or any or all of these may be *compound* ; as, "*Time and tide wait for no man.*"—"Henry and John lift the table."—"John and his sister study and recite grammar and arithmetic."—"The sky is *bright and clear.*"

3. The *complex sentence* is a single sentence, containing a *subordinate* or dependent *clause*, which limits the principal clause, or some part of it ; as, "The boy *who studies* will excel."—"If he study, he will improve" (635).

#### *Observations on the Single Sentence.*

600. 1. The *subject* of a verb or sentence is commonly a *noun* or a *pronoun* ; as, "*God is good ; he does good.*" Also, it may be an *infinitive* with (*seq.*) or without a subject (394), a *participial noun* (462), a *substantive phrase* (593), or a *clause of a sentence* (635) ; as, "*To lie is base.*"—"For us to lie is base."—"Lying is base."—"To do wrong knowingly is base."—"That men should lie is base" (645).

2. When the *infinitive* with a subject in the *objective case* (872) is used as the subject of a proposition, it is introduced by the particle *for* ; as, "*For us to lie is base.*"

3. When a *clause of a sentence*, consisting of a finite verb (761) and its subject, is used as the *subject* of a proposition, it is introduced by the conjunction *that* ; as, "*That men should lie is base.*"

4. When the *infinitive*, or the clause of a sentence, as the subject, follows the verb, the pronoun *it* precedes it, referring to the subject (248. 2, 4.) ; as, "*It is base that men should lie.*"—"It is base to lie."—"It is base for us to lie."

601. The *predicate* (that which is affirmed of the

subject) properly consists of two parts—the *attribute* affirmed of the subject, and the *copula* by which the affirmation is made. (586).

Thus, in the sentence, “God is love,” “*God*” is the subject, and “*is love*” is the predicate, in which “*love*” is the attribute, and “*is*” the copula.

NOTE.—The *name* of a person or thing addressed forms no part of the sentence; as, “*Lazarus*, come forth.”

602. The *attribute* and *copula* are often expressed by *one word*, which in that case must always be a *verb*; as, “The fire *burns*”=“The fire *is burning*.”

603. The *predicate* may be a *noun* or *pronoun*, an *adjective*, sometimes a *preposition with its case*, or an *adverb*—also an *infinitive*, or *clause of a sentence*, connected with the subject by a copula—see examples (621 and 622); or it may be a *Verb*, which includes in itself both attribute and copula (602).

604. When a verb does not complete the predicate, but is used as a copula only, it is called an *attributive verb*; as, “Home *is* sweet.” (319).

605. The attributive verbs are such as *to be*, *to become*, *to seem*, *to appear*, and the passives of *deem*, *style*, *call*, *name*, *consider*, etc.

606. The verbs *to be*, *to appear*, are sometimes also used as *intransitives*; as, “There *are* lions in Africa”=“Lions *are* in Africa.”—“The stars *appear*.” When so used, and the subject is placed after the verb, the sentence is introduced by the word *there* (529), as in the first example.

#### EXERCISES.

1. In the following, point out which are *sentences*, and why—which are *phrases*, and why.

2. In the sentences, what is the *subject*, and why? What is the *predicate*, and why. Also, which predicates are made by *attributive verbs*.

Snow is white.—Ice is cold.—Birds fly.—Roses blossom.—The tree is tall.—The fields are green.—Grass grows.—To say nothing.—Man is mortal.—God is immortal.—



Home is sweet.—Sweet is home.—Who is Paul?—Has he come?—Will James go?—Are you tired?—At all events.—To be sure.

3. Make sentences of which one of the following words shall be the subject, i. e. affirm something respecting each of them, and tell whether the sentences are transitive, intransitive, or attributive:—

Trees, birds, horses, a sparrow, the stone, the thunder, the wind, the clouds, time, he.

4. Analyze each of the sentences thus made, as directed above, No. 2.

### *The Subject.*

607. I. The *subject* of a proposition is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

608. The *grammatical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, *unlimited* by other words; as, “*Knowledge is power.*”

609. The *logical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, together with all the words, phrases, or clauses, by which it is limited or defined; thus:—

In the sentence, “*Every man at his best state is vanity,*” the grammatical subject is “*man*,” the logical is, “*Every man at his best state.*”

A *relative clause* may limit the grammatical subject, and in such case it is called an *adjective adjunct*; as, “*The boy who studies will improve*”=(*studious* boy).

610. When the *grammatical* subject has no limiting words connected with it, then the *grammatical* and the *logical* subject are the *same*; as, “*God is good.*”

611. II. The *subject* of a proposition is either *simple* or *compound*.

612. A *simple* subject consists of *one* subject of thought (600); as, “*Time is money.*”

613. A *compound* subject consists of two or more

simple subjects, to which belongs the same predicate ; as, “*James and John* are brothers.”—“*You and I* are friends.”—“*Two and three* are five.”—“*Time and tide* wait for no man.” \*

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. In each of the following sentences point out the *grammatical* subject—the *logical*.

The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.—Wisdom’s ways are pleasantness.—The love of money is the root of all evil.—Human knowledge is progressive.—Righteousness exalteth a nation.

II.—1. In each of the following sentences point out the *subject*—the *predicate*.

2. State whether the subjects are *simple* or *compound* ; *limited* or *unlimited*. In each, point out the *grammatical* subject—the *logical* subject.

Peter and John went up into the temple.—Gold and silver are precious metals.—Locusts and wild honey were his food.—In unity consist the welfare and security of society.—Three and three are six.—John and Jane are a handsome couple.

3. Write predicates to the following compound subjects :—

James and John.—He and she.—You and I.—The rich and poor.—Virtue and vice.—Heat and cold.—France and Mexico.—The sun and the moon.

---

\* The subject is here considered as compound, whether the predicate can be affirmed of each simple subject or not. Thus, we can say, “Time waits for no man, and tide waits for no man ;” but we can not say, “Two are five, and three are five.” Still, the preceding examples—“*Time and tide*,” and “*two and three*”—are equally considered as compound subjects, because they consist each of more than one subject.

## MODIFICATIONS OF THE SUBJECT.

**614.** A *grammatical subject* being a *noun*, may be modified, limited, or described, in various ways; as,

1. By a *noun* in *apposition*—i. e., a noun added in the same case for the sake of explanation (668); as, "Milton the *poet* was blind."
2. By a *noun* in the *possessive* case; as, "*Aaron's* rod budded." (889).
3. By an *adjunct* (541); as, "The works of *Nature* are beautiful."
4. By an *adjective* word (that is, an article,\* adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle); as, "*The* hour has arrived."—"A good name is better than riches."—"Your time is precious."—"Lost time can not be recovered."
5. By a *relative and its clause*; as, "He *who* does no good does harm."
6. By an *infinitive mood*; as, "A desire *to learn* is praiseworthy."
7. By a *clause of a sentence* (635); as, "The fact *that he was a scholar* was manifest."
8. Each *grammatical subject* may have *several modifications*; as "Several stars of *less magnitude*, which we had not observed before, now appeared."

**615.** A *grammatical subject* being a *pronoun*, is usually modified by a *noun in apposition*; as, "I, *Paul*, would have come;" or by a relative clause, as in No. 5 above.

NOTE.—Pronouns of the *third* person, and also relative pronouns, refer to their *antecedents* together with their modifications; as, "Rebuke a *wise man*, and *he* will love thee."

**616.** When the *grammatical subject* is an *infinitive*

---

\* Though for the reason assigned (192), the article is not properly a limiting word, yet, as it shows that the word is limited or modified in some way, it is here ranked among the modifiers.

or a *participle* used as a noun, it may be modified like the verb in the predicate (630).

## EXERCISES.

In the following propositions point out the *grammatical* subject—the *logical*—and state how the grammatical subject is modified.

All men are not wise.—Tall oaks from little acorns grow.—Milton's "Paradise Lost" is a work of great merit.—Wisdom's ways are pleasantness.—The love of money is the root of all evil.—The disposition to do good should be cherished.—The walls of Babylon were fifteen miles long.—The effort to succeed will be crowned with success.

Write sentences which have the subject modified by a noun in apposition—or a noun in the possessive case—or by an adjunct—or by an adjective word—or by an infinitive mood—or by a clause of a sentence.

## MODIFICATIONS OF MODIFYING WORDS.

**617.** *Modifying* or *limiting* words may themselves be modified:—

1. A *noun* modifying another may itself be modified in all the ways in which a noun as a grammatical subject is modified (614).
2. An *adjective* qualifying a noun may itself be modified:—
  1. By an *adjunct*; as, "Be not weary *in well-doing*."
  2. By an *adverb*; as, "*Truly* virtuous men often endure reproach."
  3. By an *infinitive*; as, "Be swift *to hear*, and slow *to speak*."
3. An *adverb* may be modified:—
  1. By an *adjunct*; as, "Agreeably *to nature*."
  2. By another *adverb*; as, "Yours, *very* sincerely."

**618.** A *modified grammatical subject*, regarded as a complex idea, may itself be modified; as, The *old black horse* is dead.—The *first two* lines are good, the *last*

*two* are bad. Here *old, first, last*—modifying each a subject already modified, viz.: *black horse, two lines, two (lines)*.

#### EXERCISES.

1. In the following sentences, by what words are the modifying nouns modified?—the adjectives?—the adverbs?

Solomon, the son of David, built the temple at Jerusalem.—Josephus, the Jewish historian, relates the destruction of the temple.—That picture is a tolerably good copy of the original.—Pride, that never-failing vice of fools, is not easily defined.—The author of Junius's letters is still unknown.—Truly great men are far above worldly pride.

2. Write ten simple sentences, and point out in each the subject and the predicate. In modified subjects, distinguish the *grammatical* and *logical*; tell how each is modified (608, 609).

#### *The Predicate.*

**619.**—I. The *predicate*, like the subject (607), is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

**620.** The *grammatical* predicate consists of the *attribute* and *copula* (601), not modified by other words.

**621.** The *attribute*, which, together with the copula, forms the predicate, may be expressed by a *noun* or *pronoun*, an *adjective*, a *participle*, a *preposition with its regimen*, and sometimes an *adverb*; as, "James is a *scholar*."—"James is *he*."—"James is *diligent*."—"James is *learned*."—"James is *in health*."—"John is not *so*."

**622.** The *attribute* is also expressed by an *infinitive*, or a *dependent clause*; as, "To obey is to *enjoy*."—"The day is to be *celebrated*."—"The order is, *that we must go*."

**623.** The *logical* predicate is the *grammatical*, with all the words, phrases, or clauses, that modify it; thus,

"Nero was cruel to his subjects."—"Was cruel" is the *grammatical*, and "was cruel to his subjects," the *logical* predicate. Again: "The Greeks took Troy by stratagem."—"Took" is the *grammatical*, and "took Troy by stratagem" is the *logical* predicate.

**624.** When the *grammatical* predicate has no modifying terms connected with it, the *grammatical* and the *logical* predicates are the same ; as, "Life is *short*."—"The fire *burns*."

**625.**—II. The *predicate*, like the subject, is either *simple* or *compound* (611).

**626.** A *simple* predicate ascribes to its subject but *one* attribute ; as, "Life is *short*."—"Time *flies*."

**627.** A *compound* predicate consists of *two or more simple* predicates affirmed of the same subject ; as, "Cæsar *came, and saw, and conquered*."—"Truth is *great and will prevail*."

NOTE.—Both the *subject* and the *predicate* may be *compound*.

#### EXERCISES.

In the following sentences, name the subject and predicate—state whether the predicate is *simple* or *compound*—distinguish the *grammatical* and *logical* :—

Man is mortal.—Wisdom is the principal thing.—God is good and merciful.—Honesty is praised and neglected.—The heart is the best and the worst part of man.—The use of travel is to widen the sphere of observation, and to enable us to examine and judge of things for ourselves.—Avarice is a mean and cowardly vice.—Talent is strength and subtility of mind.—Genius is mental inspiration and delicacy of feeling.

#### MODIFICATIONS OF THE PREDICATE.

**628.** A *grammatical* predicate may be modified or limited in various ways.

**629.** When the *attribute* (601) in the *grammatical predicate* is a noun, it is modified—

1. By a *noun* or *pronoun*, limiting or describing the attribute ; as, "He is John *the Baptist*."—"He is *my* friend."—"He is *my father's* friend."

2. By an *adjective* or *participle*, limiting the attribute ; as, "Solomon was a *wise* king."—"It is a bird *singing*."

630. When the *affirmer* contains the attribute (603), it is modified—

1. By a *noun* or *pronoun* in the objective case, as the object of the transitive verb ; as, "John reads *Homer*."—"I have heard *him*."
2. By an *adverb* ; as, "John reads *well*."
3. By an *adjunct* (541) ; as, "They live in *London*."
4. By an *infinitive* ; as, "Boys love to *play*."
5. By a *dependent clause* ; as, "Plato taught *that the soul is immortal*."

631. An *infinitive* or *participle* may be modified in all respects as the verb in the predicate (630).

632. A *modifying clause*, if a dependent proposition, may be modified in both its subject and predicate, as other propositions.

633. All other *modifying words* may themselves be modified, as similar words are when modifying the subject (614).

634. *Several modifications* are sometimes connected with the same predicate.

#### EXERCISES.

1. In the following sentences, name the *subject* and *predicate*—distinguish the *grammatical* and *logical* predicate—show in what way the grammatical predicate is modified in the logical.

Sincerity and truth form the basis of every virtue.—The coach will leave the city in the morning at sunrise.—The coach will leave the city when the mail is ready.—The atrocious crime of being a young man I shall attempt neither to palliate nor deny. His pretense was, that the storm prevented his attendance.—Time flies rapidly.—I confess that I am in fault.—William has determined to go.—They said, "Thou hast saved our lives."

2. In the preceding exercises, show in which sentences, and by what words the *modifiers* of the predicate are themselves modified—also, in which the predicate has more than one modifier.

3. Write five sentences in which the principal verb is modified by a *conditional clause*.

### *Limiting Clauses.*

**635.** *Clauses* limiting single sentences (or the members of compound sentences) may be classified as to their *office* into *substantive*, *adnominal* (adjective), and *adverbial*; and these may be subdivided, to exhibit their forms, mode of connection, and general bearing upon the structure of the sentence.

**636.** The following is an elementary view:—

CLAUSES.	{	SUBSTANTIVE.	{ Propositional (1)
			{ Infinitive (2).
	{	ADNOMINAL.	{ Relative (3).
			{ Infinitive (4).
			{ Participial (5).
	{	ADVERBIAL.	{ Causal (6).
			{ Comparative (7).

**637.** 1. A *substantive* clause performs the office of a noun (subject or object).

2. An *adnominal* clause limits like an adjective.

3. An *adverbial* clause performs the office of an adverb.

**638.** The following are examples, the numbers to correspond with those above:—

(1). *That I said so*, is most true.—And he said, *I know not*.

(2). *To die for one's country* is glorious.—He loves *to do right*.

(3). The boy *who studies* will improve.—He *whom thou lovest*, is sick.

(4). The master directed him *to study*.

(5). *Admired and applauded*, he became vain.

(6). He goes to school *to learn*.—He is anxious *to succeed*.

(7). He is wiser *than his brother*.—Choose wisdom *rather than gold*.

**639.** NOTE.—For more extended discussion of the complex sentence, see "Analysis and Composition," soon to be issued.

**640.** In the analysis of sentences, the only form of words properly to be regarded as a *phrase*, is the preposition with its regimen; but an infinitive or participial clause, when its subject is unimportant and not expressed, may be regarded as a *phrase* (593, 2, 3).

**641.** The *nominative absolute* (769, 1) is only an abbreviated form of an adverbial clause (650).



**642.** The *dependent* or limiting clause may often stand *first*, as, "When the sun set, we left."

**643.** The clause on which another depends is called the *leading clause*, and its subject the *leading subject*, and its predicate the *leading predicate*. A clause which is itself subordinate *may be limited* by another clause; as, "I WILL GO, *if you desire it*, after you have considered the matter well."

**644.** In a complex single sentence, the dependent clauses are usually connected by *relatives*, *conjunctive adverbs*, or *conjunctions* (534); thus,

*Relative*.—"That *WHICH can not be cured*, must be endured."

*Conjunctive Adverb*.—"We shall go *WHEN* the cars go."

*Conjunction*.—"The miser lives poor, *THAT he may die rich*."

In the first sentence, the *relative* not only stands as the subject of "*can not be cured*," but also connects its clause with the leading clause; *when* connects the clauses in the second example; and *that* in the third.

**645.** When a clause connected by *that*, can be regarded either as the *subject* or *object* of the verb in the leading clause, it is in construction equivalent to a substantive, and the whole may be regarded as a *simple sentence*, though in form really complex.

**646.** The *words* in every such clause must be parsed in their relations to each other, as if the clause were independent.

**647.** The *connecting word* is sometimes omitted; as, "This is the book I lost; I suppose you found it," for, "This is the book *which* I lost; I suppose *that* you found it."

**648.** A *complex* sentence may sometimes be converted into a *simple* one, by *abridging* its dependent clause.

**649.** A *dependent clause* is frequently abridged by omitting the connecting word, and changing the verb of the predicate into a participle or infinitive.

**650.** The participle in the abridged clause will then stand either with its substantive in the *case absolute* (769), or as a *modifier* of the leading subject. Thus, *Absolute*.—"When the boys have finished their lessons we will play; abridged, "The boys having finished their lessons, we will play." *As a modifier*.—"When we have finished our lessons, we will play;" abridged, "Having finished our les-

sons, we will play." *Passively and absolutely*—"When our work is finished we will play;" abridged, "Our work being finished, we will play."

**651.** 1. When the *attribute* in the dependent clause consists of a *noun* or *pronoun* in the nominative case after the verb as a copula, it remains in the same case in the abridged form; thus, "That he is a *judge* is of no consequence;" abridged, "His being a *judge* is of no consequence."—"I was not aware that he was a *judge*;" abridged, "I was not aware of his being a *judge*" (799.)

2. The difference between these two modes of expression is this: In the full form, the idea contained in the dependent clause is *affirmed*; in the abridged form, it is *assumed*.

**652.** 1. When the dependent clause is the *object* of the verb in the leading clause, it may often be changed for the *infinitive with a subject*; as, "I know that he is a scholar;" abridged, "I know *him to be* a scholar."

2. When, in such cases, the *subject of the dependent clause* is the same as the subject of the principal, it is omitted in the abridged form; as, "I wished *that I might go*;" abridged, "I wished *to go*."

**653.** When the subject of the dependent clause, connected by *what, which, whom, where, when, how*, and the like, and relating to something yet future, is the *same as that of the independent one*, it is sometimes abridged by retaining the connecting word, and *omitting* the subject before the infinitive; as, "I know not what *I shall do*;" abridged, "I know not what *to do*." In this way are to be analyzed and explained such phrases as "*Where to go*," "*when to read*," "*how to do*," "*whom to send*," etc.

**654.** A dependent clause may often be abridged by *substituting* an equivalent qualifying word, or an adjunct; as, "The man *who is honest* will be respected;" abridged, "The *honest* man will be respected."—"When the sun set we returned;" abridged, "At sunset we returned."

**655.** Several dependent clauses may be variously connected with the same leading clause, and abridged in the same manner as above; as, "When they arrived at the station, they were informed that the cars had passed, an hour before;" abridged, "Having arrived [or, on arriving] at the station, they were informed of the cars having passed an hour before."

## EXERCISES.

1. Abridge such propositions in the preceding exercises as can be abridged.

2. Extend the following abridged propositions :—

Having doubled Cape Horn, we sailed in a direct course for California.—What to do I know not.—No one can tell us where to go, or how to do.—The war being at an end, the troops were disbanded.—At the close of navigation, many will be at a loss where to go.—The industrious and capable need fear no want.—A good name is the richest possession we have while living, and the best legacy we leave behind us when dead.—Of his having been successful, we have full assurance.—Of his being successful now, there is reason to doubt.

3. In the following sentences, what connecting words are omitted ?

Pay me that thou owest.—It is said he can not pay his debts.—There is no doubt he is a man of integrity.—I am sure we can never accomplish this without assistance.—That is all you know.—All you can find is yours.—Could we have foreseen this difficulty, we might have avoided it.—I soon perceived I had still the power of motion.

*Compound Sentences.*

**656.** A *Compound sentence* consists of two or more single sentences or propositions (591, 2) connected together ; as, “The man walked, *and* the boy ran.” \*

1. The propositions which make up a compound sentence are called *members*. In the preceding compound sentence, the members are, “The man walked” and “The boy ran.”

2. The members of a compound sentence are co-ordinate, or grammatically independent of each other ; each will make sense by itself.

---

\* Under compound sentences are sometimes included such as have only *one* principal clause, modified by a subordinate clause or clauses. It is believed, however, that the classification here given is more rational and consistent.

## EXERCISES.

In the following sentences, state which are *single*, and which are *compound*. In the compound sentences, point out the members.

If we have not always time to read, we have always time to reflect.—We have not always time to read, but we have always time to reflect.—The poor is hated even of his own neighbor, but the rich hath many friends.—The eyes of the Lord are in every place, beholding the evil and the good.—Righteousness exalteth a nation, but sin is a reproach to any people.—Pride goeth before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall.—Death and life are in the power of the tongue.—Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.—The slothful man saith, "There is a lion in the way."—When the righteous are in authority, the people rejoice.

In the preceding single sentences and members, point out the *subject* and *predicate*, with their respective modifications.

657. *Connection of Members.*

The *members* of a compound sentence are connected by such conjunctions as *and, or, nor, but, yet*, and the like; as, "The harvest is past, the summer is ended, and we are not saved."

In such sentences, the *connective is often omitted*; and generally, when the sentence consists of more than two members. It is omitted in all except the last, as in the above example (657).

## EXERCISES.

In the following compound sentences, name the members or clauses—name the connecting words—state which may also be regarded as single sentences (646).

The weather was fine, and the roads were excellent, but we were unfortunate in our companions.—Beauty attracts admiration, as honor [attracts] applause.—Talent is environed with many perils, and beauty [is environed] with

many weaknesses.—Time is ever advancing, but leaves behind it the traces of its flight.—When I was a child, I thought as a child; but when I became a man, I put away childish things.—I will come again and receive you to myself, that where I am, there ye may be also.—This we know, that our future depends on our present.

### 658. *Directions for Analysis.*

State whether the sentence is single or compound; transitive, intransitive, or attributive; declaratory, interrogatory, imperative, or exclamatory.

If single, its class; name the logical subject and the logical predicate.

[State the principal and subordinate elements (594).]

Name the grammatical subject.

Show by what words, phrases, or clauses, if any, the grammatical subject is modified in the logical.

Show by what modifying words, phrases, or clauses, if any, each modifying word is modified.

Name the grammatical predicate.

Show by what words, phrases, or clauses, if any, the grammatical predicate is modified in the logical.

Show by what modifying words, phrases, or clauses, if any, each modifying word in the predicate is modified.

State the elements in their order.

If the sentence is compound, mention the members.

Show how the members are connected.

Analyze each member as a single sentence, by showing its subject, predicate, etc., as above.

In analyzing sentences, it will be necessary always to *supply* words left out by ellipsis, and to supply the antecedent to the relative *what*, and to the compound relatives *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whatsoever*, *whatsoever*; making also the change which is necessary in the relatives themselves, when the antecedent is supplied (266).

## 659.

## MODELS OF ANALYSIS.

NOTE.—In single complex sentences, the whole sentence consists of *one* logical subject and *one* logical predicate.

A dependent clause is always an *adjunctive element*, and limits or modifies some part of the principal proposition.

In compound and complex sentences, the distinction of *transitive*, *intransitive*, etc., may be referred to the separate members or clauses.

In *declaratory* sentences, *that* distinction may, for brevity, be omitted.

## 1. "God is good."

This is a single sentence, simple; it contains a single affirmation (591).

Attributive, it affirms the attribute *good* of the subject *God*.

Declaratory, it directly affirms.

*God* is the logical subject, because it is that of which the quality *good* is affirmed.

*Is good* is the logical predicate, because it affirms a quality of its subject. *Is* is the verb or copula, and *good* is the attribute.

In this sentence the grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical, because they are not modified by other words (610 and 624).

Or, more briefly, thus:—

The logical subject is *God*.

The logical predicate is *is good*, in which *is* is the verb or copula, and *good* the attribute.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

## 2. "The sun and moon stood still."

This is a single sentence, intransitive, declaratory, with a compound subject.

The logical subject is *The sun and moon*.

The logical predicate is *stood still*.

The grammatical subject is *sun* and *moon*, compound, and connected by *and*, both modified by *the* (614, 4, Note, and 711).

The grammatical predicate is *stood*, modified by *still*, an adverb, expressing *manner*.

## 3. "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom."

This is a single sentence, simple, attributive, declaratory.

The logical subject is *The fear of the Lord*.

The logical predicate is *is the beginning of wisdom*.

The grammatical subject is *fear*. It is limited by the adjunct phrase, *of the Lord*, and shown to be limited by the article *the* (614, 4, Note).

The grammatical predicate is *is beginning*, in which *is* is the verb or copula, and *beginning* the attribute. It is limited by the adjunct, *of wisdom*, and shown to be limited by *the*.

4. "A good man does what (=that which) is right, from principle."

This is a single sentence, complex, containing one leading affirmation and one dependent clause, connected by *which*.

The logical subject of the whole sentence is *A good man*; the logical predicate is, *does what is right from principle*.

The leading affirmation is *A good man does that from principle*.

The dependent clause is *which is right*, and is restrictive of *that* in the leading proposition, the antecedent to *which*, the connecting word.

In the *first* or leading clause—

The logical subject is *A good man*.

The logical predicate is *does that from principle*.

The grammatical predicate is *man*, qualified by *good*, and shown to be indefinite by *a*.

The grammatical predicate is *does*, modified by its object *that*, and the adjunct *from principle*; *that* is modified by the relative clause.

In the *second*, or dependent clause—

The logical subject is *which*. It also connects its clause with the antecedent *that*, and restricts it.

The logical predicate is *is right*, in which *is* is the verb or copula, and *right* is the attribute.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical (610 and 624).

5. "There is nothing which all mankind venerate and admire so much as simple truth."

This is a single sentence, complex, consisting of one leading proposition, and two dependent clauses; attributive, declaratory.

The independent proposition is *There is nothing*.

The first dependent clause is *which all mankind venerate and admire so much*, connected to the preceding by *which*.

The second dependent clause, connected by *as* to the preceding, as its leading member, is [*they venerate and admire*], *simple truth*.

In the *first*, or independent proposition—

The logical subject is *nothing*=*not any thing*.

The logical predicate is *is*.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

*There* is an introductory expletive, used in such sentences when the subject follows the verb.

In the *second* proposition, dependent on the first—

The logical subject is *all mankind*.

The logical predicate is *venerate and admire which so much*.

The grammatical subject is *mankind*, modified by *all*.

The grammatical predicate is *venerate and admire*, compound, connected by *and*, and modified by their object, *which*, which also connects its clause with its antecedent, *thing*, for the purpose of restricting it; it is also modified by the adverbial phrase, *so much*.

In the *third* proposition, connected with the second by *as*—

The logical subject is *they*, understood (for *all mankind*).

The logical predicate is *venerate and admire simple truth*.

The grammatical subject is *they*, or the same as in the preceding clause.

The grammatical predicate is *venerate and admire* understood, modified by their object, *truth*, and that is qualified by the adjective, *simple*.

6. "Conversation makes a man wiser than himself, and that more by an hour's discourse than by a day's meditation."

This is a compound sentence, consisting of two single sentences, connected by *and*; each of them complex, and having its own dependent clause.

The first independent clause is *Conversation makes a man [to] wiser*. Its dependent clause is *himself [is]*, connected by *than*.

The second independent clause is *[he does] that more by an hour's discourse*. Its dependent clause is *[he does] by a day's meditation*, connected by *than*.

(The words supplied are included in brackets).

In the *first* independent clause—

The logical subject is *conversation*.

The logical predicate is *makes a man [to] wiser than himself*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *makes*, modified by its object *man*, which is also the subject of the verb *to wax* (872). It is shown to be



used indefinitely by *a*, and is qualified by the predicative adjective *wiser*, which is modified by the clause *than himself*.

In the clause dependent on the preceding, and connected by *than*—  
The logical subject is *himself* (in the nominative) (249).

The logical predicate is *is* (understood).

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

In the *second* independent proposition, connected to the first by *and*—

The logical subject is *he* understood (for *a man*).

The logical predicate is [*does*] *that more by an hour's discourse*, etc.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *does* (understood). It is modified by its object *that*, representing the phrase *was wiser than himself*; also by the adverb *more*, and the adjunct *by discourse*; and *discourse* is limited by *hour's*, which again is shown to be indefinite by the article *an*.

In the clause dependent on the preceding, and connected by *than*—

The logical subject is *he* (*a man*) understood.

The logical predicate is [*does*] *by a day's meditation*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *does* (understood as before), modified by the adjunct *by meditation*; *meditation* is limited by *day's*, and that is shown to be indefinite by the article *a*.

7. "The minutest plant or animal, if attentively examined, affords a thousand wonders, and obliges us to admire and adore the Omnipotent hand by which it was created."

This is a single sentence, complex, consisting of one independent proposition, and two dependent clauses.

The independent proposition is *The minutest plant or animal affords a thousand wonders, and obliges us to admire and adore the Omnipotent hand*.

The first dependent clause is [*it is*] *attentively examined*, connected as a condition by *if* to the leading verbs *affords* and *obliges*.

The second dependent clause is *by which it was created*, connected also by *which* to *hand* in order to describe it.

In the independent clause—

The logical subject is *The minutest plant or animal*.

The logical predicate is *if attentively examined, affords a thousand wonders, and obliges us to admire and adore the Omnipotent hand by which it was created*.

The grammatical subject is *plant* and *animal*, compound ; its parts are connected as alternates by *or* (570), and both modified by *minutest*.

The grammatical predicate is *affords* and *obliges*, compound ; its parts are connected by *and*. *Affords* is modified by its object *wonders*, which is limited by *a thousand*. *Obliges* is modified by its object *us*, the infinitive *to admire* and *to adore*, of which *us* is also the subject ; and these infinitives are modified by their object *hand*, which is qualified and described by *Omnipotent*, and the relative clause *by which it was created*. The verbs *affords* and *obliges* are modified also by the conditional clause *if [it is] attentively examined*. [Or, *obliges* is modified by the *objective clause* "us to admire and adore," etc., of which *us* is the *subject*, and *admire* and *adore* the *Omnipotent hand*, etc., is the logical predicate. This clause is itself complex, having the dependent relative clause, "by which it was created," limiting *hand*.]

In the *first* dependent clause—

The logical subject is *it*, referring to *plant* or *animal*.

The logical predicate is *is attentively examined*.

The grammatical subject is *it*.

The grammatical predicate is *is examined* ; which is modified by the adverb of manner, *attentively*.

In the *second* dependent clause—

The logical subject is *it*, referring to *plant* or *animal*.

The logical predicate is *was created by which*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *was created*. It is modified by the adjunct *by which*, referring to *hand*, its antecedent.

The preceding process of analysis, which takes up so much room on paper, may be accomplished *orally* with great rapidity. Let this be done in the following

#### EXERCISES.

In the same way, analyze the following sentences :—

Knowledge is power.—Truth is the basis of honor : it is the beginning of virtue : it liveth and conquereth for ever.—Time is a gift bestowed on us by the bounty of Heaven.—The heart and the tongue are the best and the worst parts of man.

Proficiency in language is a rare accomplishment.

Praise is more acceptable to the heart than profitable to the mind.

He who is first to condemn will often be the last to forgive.

True religion gives order and beauty to the world, and, after life, a better existence.

A little philosophy carries us away from truth, while a greater brings us back to it again.

What we know is nothing; but what we are ignorant of is immense.

Books which save the trouble of thinking, and inventions which save the labor of working, are in universal demand.

Some cultivate philosophy in theory who are imperfect philosophers in practice; as others advocate religion, who are nevertheless indifferently religious.

---

## II. Construction of Sentences.

**660.** WORDS are arranged in sentences according to certain rules called the *Rules of Syntax* (662 and 666).

### **661.** *General Principles.*

1. *In every sentence* there must be a *verb* and its *subject*, expressed or understood.

2. Every *article, adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle*, must have a substantive (109), expressed or understood.

3. Every *subject* has its own *verb*, expressed or understood.

4. Every *finite verb* (that is, every verb not in the infinitive or participles) has its own *subject* in the nominative case, expressed or understood.

5. Every *possessive case* limits a noun or substantive.

6. Every *objective case* is the object of a transitive verb in the active voice, or of a preposition, or denotes circumstances of *time, value, weight, or measure* (828).

7. The *infinitive mood* depends upon a verb, adjective, or noun.

8. Every *adverb* limits a verb, adjective, or adverb.

9. *Conjunctions* unite words and phrases that stand in the same relation in a sentence.

The exceptions to these general principles will appear under the Rules of Syntax.

#### *Parts of Syntax.*

**662.** The *Rules of Syntax* may all be referred to three heads, viz., *Concord or agreement, Government, and Position.*

**663.** *Concord* is the *agreement* which one word has with another in gender, number, case, or person.

**664.** *Government* is the *power* which one word has in determining the mood, tense, or case of another word. The word governed by another word is called its *regimen*.

**665.** *Position* means the *place* which a word occupies in relation to other words in a sentence.

**666.** In the English language, which has but few inflections, the meaning of a sentence often depends much on the *position* of the words of which it consists.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

**RULE I.**—*Substantives* denoting the *same person or thing* agree in case ; as,

The river Thames.—Cicero the orator.—Paul the apostle.—I myself.—I Paul have written it.—I Wisdom dwell with Prudence.

**RULE II.**—1. An *adjective* or *participle* qualifies the *substantive* to which it belongs ; as,

A good boy ; a new book ; an old hat ; a rough road ; a steep hill ; a lofty mountain ; God is good ; an amusing story ; a man loved by all.

2. Adjectives denoting *one*, qualify nouns in the *singular* ; adjectives denoting *more than one*, qualify nouns in the *plural* ; as,

One man ; this book ; that house ; two men ; these books ; those houses ; the sixth day ; several weeks ; many sorrows ; this court (676, etc.).

**RULE III.**—1. The article *a* or *an* is put before common nouns in the *singular* number, when used *indefinitely* ; as,

A man ; a house ; a tree ; an acorn ; an hour ; a history ; an historical fact ; a youth ; a unit (186–187 and 707).

2. The article *the* is put before common nouns, either *singular* or *plural*, when used *definitely* ; as,

“The sun shines.”—“The moon rises.”—“The city of New York.”—“The age of improvement.”—“The seven stars.”—“The twelve Cæsars.”—“The most virtuous (men) are the most happy” (707, 2).

**RULE IV.**—*Personal pronouns* agree with the *words* for which they stand in gender, number, and person ; as,

“All that a man hath he will give for his life.”—“A tree is known by its fruit.”—“The court has finished its business.”—“The people elect their rulers” (729, etc.).

**RULE V.**—The *relative* agrees with its *antecedent* in number and person ; as,

“The man who speaks.”—“The book which was lost.”—“The friends whom we love.”—“Ye who love mercy.”—“I that speak to you.”—“The best thing you can do” (742, etc.).

RULE VI.—The *subject* of a *finite* verb is put in the *nominative*; as,

"I am."—"Thou speakest."—"He reads."—"We talk."—"Time flies."—"Who did that?"—"I know who did it."—"Do you know who is to blame?"—"He is taller than I (am); than she (is)" (760).

RULE VII.—A *substantive* whose case depends on no other word is put in the *nominative absolute*; as,

"The ship having arrived, all is safe."—"He being alone, there was no one to disturb him."—"Your fathers, where are they?"—"Or I only and Barnabas, have not we power to forbear working?"—"O Absalom! my son, my son!"—"Plato, thou reasonest well" (768, etc.).

RULE VIII.—A *verb* agrees with its *subject* in number and person; as,

"I write."—"Thou writest."—"He reads."—"We sell."—"They buy."—"John and James are brothers."—"Jane or Mary is at home."—"The army is on its march."—"The people are kind."—"Come (ye) and see."—"Go thou and do likewise."—"Who art thou?" (776, etc.).

RULE IX.—The *predicate* substantive after an *attributive* verb is put in the *same case* as the *subject* before it; as,

"I am he."—"Ye are they who justify yourselves."—"God is love."—"Who do men say that I, the Son of man, am?"—"He is said to be a good man."—"They represent him to be a good man."—"Saying is not doing" (796, etc.).

RULE X.—A *substantive* being the *object* of a *transitive verb* in the active voice, is put in the *objective* case; as,

"We love him."—"He loves us."—"Whom shall I send?"—"Send me."—"Honor thy father and mother."—"Them that honor me I will honor."—"Boys love to play."—"Boys love playing."—"I know that thou fearest God."—"Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who art thou?" (801, etc.).

RULE XI.—A *substantive* being the *object* of a *preposition* is put in the *objective* case; as,

"Of him, and through him, and to him, are all things; to whom be glory for ever."—"To whom much is given, of him much shall be required."—"Come with us, and we will do (to) thee good."—"Science they do not pretend to."—"Whom did he speak to?" (818, etc.).

**RULE XII.**—*Certain words and phrases* should be followed by appropriate *prepositions*; as,

"Confide *in*"—"dispose *of*"—"adapted *to*"—"swerve *from*"—etc. (884, etc.).

**RULE XIII.**—A *substantive* that *limits* the signification of *another*, must be put in the possessive case; as,

"Pompey's pillar."—"Virtue's reward."—"For conscience' sake."  
—"The duke of Wellington's funeral."—"The secretary of state's office."  
—"Whose pen is this?"—"It is John's: it is not mine" (241).  
—"It came from the stationer's."—"Sheldon & Co.'s warehouse" (889, etc.).

**RULE XIV.**—The *subjunctive* mood is used in *dependent* clauses, when both *contingency* or *doubt*, and *futurity*, are expressed; as,

"Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him."—"If he study, he will improve."—"If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke."  
—"See thou do it not" (857, etc.).

**RULE XV.**—The *infinitive* mood is governed by *verbs*, *nouns*, or *adjectives*; as,

"I desire to learn."—"A desire to learn."—"Anxious to learn."  
—"To do good and to communicate, forget not."—"To perform is better than to promise."  
—"Fools who came to scoff, remained to pray."  
—"Let us go."—"You need not go" (865, etc.).

**RULE XVI.**—*Participles* have the construction of *nouns*, *adjectives*, and *verbs*; as,

(NOUN).—"Saying is not doing."—"In the keeping of his commandments."  
—"A forsaking of the truth."—"Avoid doing evil."  
(ADJECTIVE).—"The sword hangs rusting on the wall."—"A bound book."  
—"The lost sheep." (VERB).—"Having loved his own, he loved them to the end."  
—"The men stood speechless, hearing a voice, but seeing no man" (890, etc.).

**RULE XVII.**—In the use of verbs, and words that in *point of time* relate to each other, the *order of time* must be observed; as,

"I have known him many years."—"I expected he would come" (not "would have come").—"I expect he will come."—"It would have been easy to do it" (not "to have done it")—"I expected to go" (not "to have gone") (908, etc.).

**RULE XVIII.**—*Adverbs* modify *verbs*, *adjectives*, and other *adverbs*; as,

"John speaks distinctly; he is remarkably diligent, and reads very correctly."—"Julia sings well."—"The day is far spent."—"When will you return?"—"Soon" (922, etc.).

**RULE XIX.**—*Conjunctions* connect *words, phrases, or sentences*; as,

"You and he must go, but I stay at home."—"Honor thy father and thy mother."—"He or his brother is to blame."—"They can neither read nor write."—"He is slow, but sure."—"While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night, shall not cease" (944, etc.).

**RULE XX.**—*Interjections* have no grammatical connection with the other words in a sentence; as,

"O ye of little faith!"—"Ah me!"—"O cruel thou!"—"Envious! of David Garrick? Poh! poh! Pshaw! pshaw!" (970, etc.).

### *General Rule.*

In every sentence, the *words* employed, and the *order* in which they are arranged, should be such as clearly and properly to express the idea intended; and, at the same time, all the parts of a sentence should correspond, and a *regular* and *dependent construction* be preserved throughout (973).

### *Ellipsis.*

**RULE 1.**—An ellipsis, or omission of words, is admissible, when they can be supplied by the mind with such certainty and readiness as not to obscure the sense; as,

"We walked by faith, not by sight" (977, etc.).

**RULE 2.**—An ellipsis is not allowable when it would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety (979, etc.).

## Substantives in Apposition.

**667. RULE I.**—*Substantives denoting the same person or thing, agree in case* (162); as,

"Cicero the orator."—"I Paul have written it."—"We, the people of the United States."—"Ye woods and wilds."—"This was said to us men."—"The river Thames."—"Jane and Eliza, Mary's cousins."—



"The *chief* of the princes, *he* who defied the enemy," etc.—"That was related of *Dr. West*, *him* who translated Pindar."

668. The word annexed is said to be in *apposition* with the other, and is added to express some *attribute, description, or appellation*, belonging to it. The words so related must always be in the same member of the sentence—that is, both in the subject, or both in the predicate. A substantive *predicated* of another is *not* in apposition with it, though denoting the same thing.

The substantive in apposition commonly stands *last*; sometimes *first*.

669. Two or more words forming *one complex name*, or a name and a title prefixed, though really in apposition, are properly inflected and parsed as one word; as, "*George Washington*."—"General Washington's tent." In such examples, the sign of the possessive is annexed only to the last (848), and sometimes also when the words in apposition do not form a complex name; as, "We arrived at our friend Wilson's plantation."

For the plural of proper names with titles prefixed, see 161.

670. A *noun* is sometimes put in *apposition* with a *sentence*, and a sentence sometimes in apposition with a noun; as, "*The weather forbids walking*, a prohibition hurtful to us both."—"The promise, that he should be the heir of the world, was given to Abraham."—"Delightful task, to rear the tender thought!" (867, 4.)

671. A *plural* term is sometimes used in apposition after two or more substantives *singular*, to combine and give them emphasis; as, "*Time, labor, money, all* were lost." Sometimes the same substantive is repeated for the sake of emphasis; as, "*Cisterns*, broken cisterns."

672. *Distributive words* are sometimes put in apposition with a *plural* substantive; as, "*They* went each of them on his way" (301).—"They all went, *some* one way, and *some* another." In the construction of a sentence, the distributive word is sometimes omitted; as, "*They* [interrogative pronouns] do not relate [*each*] to a preceding noun."

673. Of this character are such expressions as the following: "*They* stood in *each other's* way"—that is, *they* stood *each* in the other's way.—"*They* love *one another*"—that is, *they* love, *one* (loves) *another* (311).

674. A substantive is sometimes connected with another in a sort of apposition by the word *as*, meaning *in the condition of, in the capa-*

*city of*; thus, "*Cicero as an orator was bold—as a soldier, he was timid.*" But here—the reverse of the former case (669)—the substantive in apposition with another in the possessive case, or with a possessive pronoun, is *without* the sign, while the other has it; as, "JOHN's reputation as an *author* was great—HIS fame as an *artist* still greater."

675. In designating *time and place*, instead of a noun in apposition, a preposition with its case is often used; as, "The *month of August*."—"The *State of Ohio*."—"The *city of New York*."

Throughout the exercises in syntax—*first, correct the errors*; *secondly, analyze* orally the sentences so corrected; *thirdly, parse* all the words *etymologically*; and *last, parse syntactically* the word or words to which the rule refers.

The pupils should be required to frame oral and written sentences under each rule.

#### EXERCISES.

In the following sentences, what words are in apposition, and to what? In what case do they agree? Give the rule:—

Religion, the support of adversity, adorns prosperity.—Byron the poet, the only son of Captain John Byron, was born in 1788.—My brother William's estate has been sold.—Coleridge, a remarkable man, and rich, imaginative poet, was the friend of Wordsworth.

"And on the palace floor, a lifeless corse she lay."

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

[As the nominative and the objective case in nouns are alike in English, there is no liability to error under this rule, except in the case of pronouns.]

Please give that book to my brother William, he who stands by the window.—The gentleman has arrived, him whom I mentioned before.—Do you speak so to me, I who have so often befriended you?—I speak of Virgil, he who wrote the *Æneid*.—I saw the travelers, they whom we met yesterday.

## An Adjective with a Substantive.

**676.** RULE II.—1. *An adjective or participle qualifies the substantive to which it belongs* (196); as, “A good man.”

2. *Adjectives denoting one, qualify nouns in the singular: adjectives denoting more than one, qualify nouns in the plural*; as, “This man.”—“These men.”—“Six feet.”

**677.** Adjectives denoting *one* are the ordinals, *first, second, third*, etc. (204), *last*; *this, that*; *one, each, every, either, neither*; *much*, and its comparative *more*; *all*, denoting quantity, *enough, whole*.

**678.** When any of these is joined to a *plural* noun, the whole is regarded as *one aggregate*; as, “The first *two weeks*”—“Every *ten miles*”—“The last *four lines*”—“The last *days of summer*,” etc. But the verb after such subjects is usually plural.

**679.** In such expressions the cardinal number, if small, may precede the words *first* and *last*, but not the other cardinals; as, “The *two first weeks*”—“The *four last lines*” (704, 3); meaning the two weeks *at the beginning or preceding all the rest*—the four lines *at the end, or succeeding all the rest*.

**680.** Two or more adjectives, expressing qualities that belong to *different objects* of the same name, and that name expressed only with the last, should have an article *before each*; as, “The *red and the white rose*”—that is, *two roses*, the one red and the other white. So, “The *first and the second page*.” It has become common, however, even with good writers, to drop the second article, and change the singular into the plural to express the same idea; thus, “The *first and second pages*”—“The *first and second verses*, etc. This mode of expression, though incorrect in itself, is less stiff and formal than the other. (See Appendix X.) When adjectives *denoting one* are connected by the *distributives, or, nor*, etc, the noun must be singular.

**681.** Adjectives denoting *more than one*, are the following, viz.: all cardinal numbers above *one*; as, *two, three*, etc.; *few, many*, with its comparative *more*; *all*, denoting number; *both, several*, and *enow*. *Enow* is nearly obsolete.

**682.** Adjectives *without a substantive* expressed are often

used as *nouns*; as, "The *rich* and the *poor* meet together" (201). This is especially common with all adjective pronouns except the possessives, and the distributive *every*; as, "Of books, *some* are good, *some* are bad."—"All things come alike to *all*" (289).

683. Adjectives are sometimes used *indefinitely* after an *infinitive* or *participle*, without reference to any particular substantive, to express an abstract idea; as, "To be *good* is to be *happy*."—"Being *good* is better than being *great*."

684. When an adjective is a *predicate* (621), it must qualify its substantive in the *subject*; as, "*God* is *good*, *he* is also *just*"—"To do *good* to others is *profitable* to ourselves."—"That *men* should *lie* is *base*."

685. An adjective in the predicate sometimes qualifies the subject, not considered simply as a substantive, but as a substantive *affected by the action of the connecting verb*, which, in that case may be regarded as a strengthened or modified copula (601); as, "That *type* stands *low*."—"This *fruit* tastes *bitter*."—"The *wind* blows *cold*."—"The *door* is painted *green*."—"John grows *tall*."—"Milk turns *sour*."—"Clay burns *white*."—"Down feels *soft*."

686. Adjectives thus used are sometimes, though improperly called *adverbial adjectives*. As the adverb is sometimes used improperly instead of the adjective in such expressions, the distinction should be carefully marked. Thus—

The *adverb* expresses the *manner of the act*.

The *adjective* expresses the *condition or state of the subject*.

Hence, when the meaning intended can be expressed by the corresponding adjunct (541), the *adverb* should be used; as, "The stream flows *rapidly*" (in a rapid manner). Here the adverb *rapidly* modifies the verb *flows*. But when the meaning can be expressed nearly by substituting the verb *to be* or *to become* as a copula, the *adjective* should be used; as, "The stream grows [becomes] *rapid*." This is further illustrated by the following examples, viz. :—

## ADJECTIVE.

John grows [becomes] *old*. John grows *rapidly* [in a rapid manner.]

She looks [is] *cold*.

She looks *coldly* [in a cold manner] on him.

He feels [is] *warm*.

He feels *warmly* [in a warm manner] the insult.

The eagle flies [is] *high*.

The eagle flies *swiftly* [in a swift manner.]

The apple tastes [is] *sweet*. Mary sings *sweetly* [in a sweet manner.]

**687.** *Adjectives* should not be used as *adverbs*; thus, *miserable* poor," should be, "*miserably* poor"—"sings *elegant*," should be, "sings *elegantly*." So, also, *adverbs* should not be used as *adjectives* (925); thus, "He arrived *safely*," should be, "He arrived *safe*."

**688.** *This here, that there, them* books, are vulgarisms, for *this, that, those* books.

**689.** An adjective sometimes qualifies an *adjective and noun* together as one compound term; as, "A *venerable* old man." "The *best* black tea."

**690.** Sometimes an adjective modifies the meaning of an *other adjective*; as, "*red-hot* iron"—"A *bright-red* color."

**691.** *Several adjectives* frequently qualify the *same substantive*; as, "A *large, strong, black* horse."

#### *This, That; These, Those.*

**692.** When two or more objects are contrasted, *this* refers to the last mentioned, *that* to the first; as, *Virtue* and *vice* are opposite qualities; *that* ennobles the mind, *this* debases it."

**693.** *Former* and *latter* are used in the same way (304). So also, *the one, the other*, referring to words in the singular or plural (307).

**694.** When no contrast is expressed, *this* refers to a thing near or just mentioned, and *that* to a thing more remote or formerly mentioned.

#### *Construction of Comparatives and Superlatives.*

**695.** When one object is compared with *one other* of the *same class*, or with *more than one of a different class*, individually, or in the aggregate, the *comparative* is used; as, "James is the *weaker* of the two"—"He is *taller* than his father"—"He is taller than any of his brothers."

**696.** Sometimes, however, when two objects of the same class are compared, the superlative is used, being thought to be less stiff and formal; as, "James is the *weakest* of the two."

**697.** When one object is compared with *more than one of the same class*, the *superlative* is used, and commonly has the prefixed (713); as, "John is *the tallest* amongst us."—"He is *the best* scholar in a class of ten."—"He is *the most diligent* of them all."

**698.** In the use of the comparative and superlative, when more than two objects are compared, the following distinction should be carefully observed :—

**699.** When the *comparative* is used, the latter term of comparison must always *exclude* the former ; “ Eve was fairer than any of her daughters.” — “ Russia is larger than any *other* country in Europe.” — “ China has a greater population than any nation of Europe,” or “ than any *other* nation on the globe.” Thus used, the comparative requires *than* after it (963, 2).

**700.** When the *superlative* is used, the latter term of comparison must always *include* the former ; “ Russia is the largest country in Europe.” — “ China has the greatest population of any nation on the globe.”

**701.** *Double* comparatives and superlatives are improper ; thus, “ James is *more taller* than John ”—omit *more* ; “ He is the *most wisest* of the three ”—omit *most*.

**702.** The double comparative *lesser*, however, is sanctioned by good authority ; as, “ Lesser Asia ”—“ Every lesser thing.”—*N. Y. Review*.—“ Like lesser streams.”—*Coleridge*.

**703.** Adjectives *not admitting comparison* (223) should not be compared, nor connected with comparative words, such as *so*, *as*, and the like. Thus, *more universal*, *so universal*, *as universal*, should be *more general*, *so general*, *as general* ; and so of similar words. As exceptions see 224.

### *Position of Adjectives.*

**704.** An adjective is commonly placed *before its substantive* ; as, “ A good man ”—“ A virtuous woman.”

1. Adjectives should be placed as *near as possible* to their substantives, and so that it may be certain to what noun they belong ; thus, “ A new pair of shoes ”—“ A fine field of corn ”—“ A good glass of wine,” should be, “ A pair of new shoes ”—“ A field of fine corn ”—“ A glass of good wine,”—because the adjectives qualify *shoes*, *corn*, *wine*, and not *pair*, *field*, *glass*. When ambiguity can not otherwise be avoided, the use of the hyphen may be resorted to with advantage ; thus, “ A good man’s coat ”—“ A good man’s-coat.”

2. When an adjective qualifies *two or more* substantives, connected by *and*, it is usually expressed before the first, and understood to the rest ; as, “ A man of great wisdom and moderation.”

3. It has been disputed whether the numerals, *two, three, four, etc.*, should be placed *before* the words *first* and *last*, or *after* them, when used to indicate the beginning and end of a series. On this point, with small numbers, usage is nearly equally divided; and, as the matter now stands, in some cases the one form seems to be preferable, and in some, the other. In this construction, as in some others which involve no impropriety, euphony and taste seem to govern. This much is certain—neither form can be justly condemned on the ground of either *authority* or *propriety*. See Appendix XI.

**705.** An *adjective* is placed *after* its substantive—

1. Generally when it *qualifies a pronoun*; as, "We saw him *faint* and *weary*."
2. When other *words depend* on the adjective; as, "A *man sick* of the palsy"—"A *pole* ten feet *long*."
3. When the quality results from the *action* expressed a verb; as, "Extravagance makes a *man poor*"—"Virtue makes a *poor man happy*."
4. When the adjective is *predicated* of the substantive; as, "God is *good*"—"We are *happy*"—"He who is *good* is *happy*"—"He looks *feeble*"—"To play is *pleasant*"—"That he should *fail* is *strange*."

**706.** In many cases the adjective may stand either *before* or *after* its substantive, and sometimes—especially in poetry, and in connection with an infinitive or participle—at a considerable distance from it. In all these, the variety is so great that no rules can provide for them. Care, however, should be taken to place the adjective where its relation to the substantive will be clear and natural, and its meaning effective.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Correct the errors in the following sentences, and give a reason for the change :—

These kind of books can hardly be got.—I have not been from home this ten days.—I ordered six ton of coal, and these make the third that has been delivered.—The garden wall is five rod long; I measured it with a ten-foot pole.—Twenty heads of cattle passed along the road.—It is said that a fleet of six sails has just entered the bay.—That three pair of gloves cost twelve shilling.—(159, 2) A man who is prudent and industrious will, by that means, increase his fortune.—

Charles formed expensive habits, and by those means became poor.—If you are fond of those sort of things, you may have them.—(680) There was a blot on the first or second pages.—The first and second verse are better than the third and fourth.

(687) Come quick and do not hinder us.—Time passes swift, though it appears to move slow.—We got home safely before the dark, and found our friends sitting comfortably around the fire.—The boat glides smooth over the lake.—(685) Magnesia feels smoothly.—Open the door widely.—The door is painted greenly.

(688) Hand me that there pen, for this here one is the worst of all.—Them books were sold for a lesser price than they cost.

(692) "For beast and bird ;

These to their grassy couch, those to their nests, repair."

"Night's shadows hence, from thence the morning's shine ;

That bright, this dark, this earthly, that divine."

(694) That very subject which we are now discussing is still involved in mystery.—This vessel, of which you spoke yesterday, sailed in the evening.

(698-700) That merchant is the wealthiest of all his neighbors.—China has a greater population than any nation on earth.—That ship is larger than any of its class.—There is more gold in California than in any part of North America.—The birds of Brazil are more beautiful than any in South America.—Philadelphia is the most regular of any city in Europe.—Israel loved Joseph more than all his children.—Solomon was wiser than any of the ancient kings.

(701, 702) A more worthier man you can not find.—The nightingale's voice is the most sweetest in the grove.—A worse evil yet awaits us.—The rumor has not spread so universally as we supposed.—Draw that line more perpendicular.—This figure is a more perfect circle than that is.—He is far from being so perfect as he thinks he is.

---

## The Article and its Noun.

**707. RULE III.**—1. *The article a or an is put before common nouns in the singular number when used indefinitely* (185) ; as, "A man"—"An apple," that is, "any man"—"any apple" (186, 187).



2. The article *the* is put before common nouns, either *singular* or *plural*, when used *definitely* (191); as, "The sun rises"—"The city of New York."

[See Etymology of the Article, 183.]

**708.** A common noun, in the singular number, without an article or limiting word, is usually taken in its *widest* sense: as, "*Man* is mortal"—"*Anger* is a short madness."

**709.** *The* is sometimes used before a singular noun, to particularize a species or class, *without specifying any individual* under it; as, *the oak, the rose, the horse, the raven*, meaning not any particular *oak, rose, horse, or raven*, but the class so called, in a general sense. In such cases, whether the noun is used to denote a class or an individual, can be determined only by the sense, as in the following examples: "*The oak* produces acorns"—"*The oak* was struck by lightning."—" *The horse* is a noble animal"—"*The horse* ran away."—" *The lion* shall eat straw like the *ox*"—" *The lion* tore the *ox* in pieces."—" *The night* is the time for repose"—"*The night* was dark."

**710.** Every article belongs to a noun, expressed or understood, except as in 714 and 715.

**711.** When several nouns are *connected* in the *same construction*, the article is commonly expressed with the first, and understood to the rest; as, "The men, women, and children, are expected." But when emphasis, or a different form of the article is required, the article is prefixed; as, "The men, the women, and the children are expected."—"A horse and *an* ass."

**712.** But when several nouns in the same construction are *disjunctively* connected, the article must be repeated; as, "The men, or the women, or the children, are expected."

**713.** *The* is commonly put before an *adjective used as a noun*; as, "*The righteous* is more excellent than his neighbor." Also before adjectives in the *superlative degree*, when comparison is implied (213); as, "Gold is *the* most precious of the metals." But when comparison is not implied, the superlative is either without an article, or has *a* or *an* preceding it; as, "A most excellent man."

**714.** *The* is sometimes put *intensively* before *adjectives and adverbs* in the comparative degree; as, "*The higher* the mountain,

*the colder* its top"—“*The faster he goes, the sooner he stops.*” Thus used, it performs the function of an *adverb*.

**715.** An adjective placed *after its noun* as an epithet, commonly has the article *the* before it; as, “Alexander *the Great*”—“Charles *the Fifth*.” This may be considered as inverted for “The great Alexander;” “The fifth Charles;” or, by ellipsis, for “Alexander, the great [conqueror],” “Charles, the fifth [emperor of the name].”

**716.** *A* or *an* is sometimes put before the adjectives *few*, *hundred*, *thousand*, followed by a plural noun; as, “*A few men*”—“*A hundred acres*”—“*A thousand miles*.” In such cases the adjective and noun may be considered as a compound term, expressing *one* aggregate, and having the construction of a collective noun (790). Or the adjective may be regarded as a collective noun (204), and the noun following governed by *of* understood; as, “*A few [of] men*”—“*A hundred [of] acres*,” etc. This is evidently the construction of larger numbers; thus, we never say, “*A million dollars*,” but “*A million of dollars*.”

**717.** When two or more adjectives belong to the *same noun*, the *article* of the noun is put with the *first adjective*, but not with the rest; as, “*A red and white rose*,” that is, *one* rose partly *red* and partly *white*. But,

**718.** When two or more adjectives belong each to a *different object* of the same name, the *article* of the noun is put with *each* adjective; as, “*A red and a white rose*”—“*A red rose and a white rose*,” that is, *two* roses, *one* red and the *other* white.

**719.** The same remarks apply to the demonstrative *that* as to the article (717, 718); as, “*That great and good man*”—*one* man.

**720.** So also, when two or more epithets follow a noun, if both designate the *same* person, the article precedes the *first* only. If they designate *different* persons, the article must precede *each*; thus, “Johnson, the bookseller and stationer,” means *one* man, who is both a bookseller and a stationer: but, “Johnson *the* bookseller, and *the* stationer,” means two men, one a bookseller named Johnson, and the other a stationer, not named.

**721.** When two nouns after a word implying *comparison* refer to the same person or thing, the last *must want* the article; as, “He is a better soldier than statesman.” But when they refer to different persons, the last *must have* the article; as, “He is a better soldier than *a* statesman [would be].”

722. The article *a* before the adjectives *few* and *little* renders the meaning *positive*; as, "A few men can do that."—"He deserves a little credit." But without the article the meaning is *negative*; as, "*Few* men can do that."—"He deserves *little* credit."

723. In the translation of the Scriptures, and in some other writings of that time, *the* is often used before *which*; as, "That worthy name by *the which* ye are called."—" *The which* when I had seen."—*Bunyan*.

724. The article is generally *omitted* before *proper names*, *abstract nouns*, and names of *virtues*, *vices*, *arts*, *sciences*, etc., when not restricted, and such other nouns as are of themselves so manifestly definite as not to require it; as, "*Christmas* is in *December*."—" *Logic* and *mathematics* are important studies."—" *Truth* is mighty." Still certain proper names, and names used in a certain way, have the article prefixed; as, "*The Alps*"—" *The Rhine*"—" *The Azores*"—" *The immortal Washington*"—" He was *Johnson*, of the family of *the Johnsons* in England."

#### *Position of the Article.*

725. The article is commonly placed *before* its noun; as, "*A man*"—" *The man*."

726. If the noun is qualified by an adjective before it, the article precedes the adjective; as, "*A good man*."

727. But the article *follows* the adjectives *all*, *such*, *many*, *what*, *both*; and all adjectives preceded by *too*, *so*, *as*, or *how*; as, "*All the men*"—" *Such a man*"—" *Many a man*"—" *What a man*"—" *Both the men*"—" *Too great a man*"—" *So great a man*"—" *As great a man*"—" *How great a man*."

728. When the adjective follows the noun, not as an epithet, the article remains before the noun, and the adjective is without it; as, "A man destitute of principle should not be trusted." For an adjective as an epithet, see (715) above.

NOTE.—The use of the article is so varied, that the best general rule is to study what the sense requires, both as to its proper use and position.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Change, or omit, or insert the article, where necessary, and give a reason for so doing.

(707, 1, 2) A country around New York is beautiful in a spring.—A

life of the modern soldier is ill represented by heroic fiction.—Earth existed first in the state of chaos.—An age of chivalry is gone.—A crowd at the door was so great that we could not enter.—The large number of men was present.

(708) The fire, the air, the earth, and the water, are four elements of the philosophers.—Reason was given to a man to control his passions.—A man was made to mourn.—The gold is corrupting.—The silver is a precious metal.

(709) Horse is a noble animal.—A lion is generous, a cat is treacherous, a dog is faithful.—A horse-leech cries, "Give, give," and a grave is never satisfied.—The war has means of destruction more dreadful than cannon or sword.

(712) Neither the man nor boy was to blame.—A man may be a mechanic, or farmer, or lawyer, and be useful and respected; but idler or spendthrift can never be either.

(713) We should ever pay attention to graceful or becoming.—The memory of just is blessed; but the name of wicked shall rot.—Best men are often those who say least.—James is a man of the most brilliant talents.—Keep good and throw bad away.

(715) Herod Great was distinguished for his cruelty; Pliny younger for gentleness and benignity.—Peter Hermit proposed his plan for recovering Jerusalem to Pope Martin II.—The father of William Cowper, poet, was chaplain to George II.

(717) A red and a white flag was the only one displayed from the tower.—A beautiful stream flows between the old and new mansion.—A hot and cold spring were found in the same neighborhood.—The young and old man seem to be on good terms.—The first and second book are difficult.—Thomson the watchmaker and the jeweler made one of the party.

(721) A man may be a better soldier than a logician.—There is much truth in the saying that fire is a better servant than a master.—He is not so good a poet as an historian.

(722) It is always necessary to pay little attention to business.—A little respect should be paid to those who deserve none.—Let the damsel abide with us few days.—Are not my days a few?—A few men of his age enjoy so good health.

## The Pronoun and its Antecedent.

**729. RULE IV.**—*Personal Pronouns agree with the words for which they stand, in gender, number, and person*; as, "All that a man hath will *he* give for his life"—"A tree is known by *its* fruit."

### *Special Rules.*

**730. RULE 1.**—*When a pronoun refers to two or more words taken together, it becomes plural*; and *if they are of different persons, prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third*; as, "*He and she* did their duty"—"*John and you, and I* will do our duty."

**RULE 2.**—*When a pronoun refers to two or more words in the singular, taken separately, or to one of them exclusively, it must be singular*; as, "A clock or a watch moves merely as *it* is moved."

**RULE 3.**—*But if either of the words referred to is plural, the pronoun must be plural also*; as, "Neither *he* nor *they* trouble themselves." Distributives are always of the third person singular (801).

**731.** Nouns are taken together when connected by *and*—separately when connected by *or* or *nor*, as above; also after *each*, *every*, *no*, though connected by *and*; as, "Each book and each paper is in *its* place."

**732.** When singular nouns of different genders are taken separately, they can not be represented by a pronoun, for want of a singular pronoun, common gender, except by a clumsy repetition; thus, "If any *man* or *woman* shall violate *his* or *her* pledge, *he* or *she* shall pay a fine." The use of the *plural* pronoun in such cases, though sometimes used, is improper; as, "If any *man* or *woman* shall violate *their* pledge," etc.

**733.** Pronouns referring to singular nouns, or other words of the common gender (126), taken in a general sense, are commonly masculine; as, "A parent should love *his* child." "Every person has *his* faults."—"No one should commend *himself*." The want of a singular personal pronoun, common gender, is felt also in this construction.

**734.** A pronoun referring to a *collective noun* in the singular, expressing many as one whole, should be in the *neuter singular*;

but when the noun expresses many as individuals, the pronoun should be *plural*; as, "The *army* proceeded on *its* march."—"The *court* were divided in *their* opinion."

735. A *singular* noun after the phrase, "*many a*," may take a pronoun in the *plural*, but never in the same clause; as—

"In Hawick twinkled *many* a light,—

Behind him soon *they* set in night."—*W. Scott*.

736. The *personal pronoun* is sometimes used at the beginning of a sentence, instead of the word *person* or *persons*; as, "*He* who"—"*They* who"—also, "*Those* who" for "The *persons* who."

737. Pronouns representing nouns *personified* (129), take the gender of the noun as a *person*; as, "*Night*, sable goddess, from *her* ebon throne." But pronouns representing nouns taken metaphorically (1046, 3) agree with them in their *literal* sense; as, "Pitt was the *pillar* which in *its* strength upheld the state."

738. It is improper in the progress of a sentence to denote the same person by pronouns of *different numbers*; as, "I labored long to make *thee* happy, and now *you* reward me by ingratitude." It should be either "to make *you* happy," or "*thou* rewardest" (245).

739. In the use of pronouns, when it would be uncertain to which of two or more antecedent words (229) a pronoun refers, the ambiguity may be avoided by repeating the noun, instead of using the pronoun, or by changing the form of the sentence; thus, "When we see the beautiful variety of color in the rainbow, we are led to consider *its* cause"—better "the cause of *that variety*."

### *Position of Pronouns.*

740. The *first* and *second* personal pronouns commonly stand instead of nouns *implied*, but not expressed. *Possessive* pronouns, and the pronouns of the *third person*, are commonly placed *after* their antecedents (229); but sometimes this order, especially in poetry, is reversed.

741. When words of *different persons* come together, the usual order of arrangement, in English, is to place the second person before the third, and the first person last; as, "*You* and *he*, and *I* are sent for."—"This matter concerns *you*, or *him*, or *me*."

In connection with these rules and observations, see also the observations on gender (128-134), on number (155-160), and on personal pronouns (240-252).

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In each sentence state the antecedent words to which the pronouns refer; change the pronouns which are wrong, and give a reason for the change:—

(720) A person's success in life depends on their exertions; if they shall aim at nothing, they shall certainly achieve nothing.—Extremes are not in its nature favorable to happiness.—A man's recollections of the past regulate their anticipations of the future.—Let every boy answer for themselves.—Each of us had more than we wanted.—Every one of you should attend to your own business (301.)

(730, 1) Discontent and sorrow manifested itself in his countenance.—Both cold and heat have its extremes.—You and your friend should take care of themselves.—You and I must be diligent in your studies.

(730, 2) John or James will favor us with their company.—One or other must relinquish their claim.—Neither wealth nor honor confers happiness on their votaries.—(731) Each day and each hour brings their changes.—No thought, no word, no action, however secret, can escape in the judgment, whether they be good or evil.

(732) Let every man and every woman strive to do their best.—If any boy or girl shall neglect her duty, they shall forfeit their place.

(733) One should not think too highly of themselves.—A teacher should always consult the interest of her pupils.—A parent's care for her children is not always requited.

(734) The assembly held their meetings in the evening.—The court, in their wisdom, decided otherwise.—The regiment was greatly reduced in their number.—Society is not always answerable for the conduct of their members.—The committee were divided in its opinions.—The public are informed that its interests are secured.

(737) The earth is my mother; I will recline on its bosom.—That Freedom, in its fearless flight may here announce its glorious reign.—Policy keeps coining truth in its mints,—such truth as it can tolerate, and every die, except its own, it breaks and casts away.

(738) Though you are great, yet consider thou art a man.—Care for thyself, if you would have others care for you.

(739) One man may do a kindness to another, though he is his enemy.—John gave his enemy a present which he highly valued.

(741) I and my father were invited.—An invitation was sent to me and George.—You and I and James were to be of the party; but neither I nor you nor he can go.

## The Relative and its Antecedent.

**742. RULE V.**—*The Relative agrees with its antecedent in number and person*; as, “Thou *who* speakest.”—“The book *which* was lost.”

[See Etymology, 255, etc.]

**743.** The *number* of the relative can be determined only from the number of the antecedent.

**744.** *Who* is applied to *persons*, or *things personified* (129); as, “The man *who*.”—“The fox *who* had never seen a lion.”

**745.** *Which* is applied to *things* and *inferior animals*—sometimes to children—to collective nouns in the singular, implying unity—and also to persons, in asking questions.

**746.** In the translation of the Bible, *which* is applied to *persons*; as, “Our Father *which* art in heaven.”

**747.** *Which* applies to a noun denoting a person, when the *character*, or the man *merely as a word*, is referred to; as, “He is a good *writer*, *which* is all he professes to be.”—“That was the work of Herod, *which* is but another name for cruelty.”

**748.** *That*, as a relative, is used instead of *who* or *which*—

1. After *adjectives* in the superlative degree—after the words *very*, *same*, and *all*—often after *no*, *some*, and *any*—and generally in restrictive clauses (268).
2. When the antecedent includes both *persons* and *things*; as, “The man and the horse *that* we saw.”
3. After the *interrogative who*, and often after the *personal* pronouns; as, “*Who that* knew him could think so?”—“*I that* speak in righteousness.”
4. Generally when the propriety of *who* or *which* is *doubtful*; as, “The little child *that* was placed in the midst.”

**749.** The relatives *who* or *which* and *that* should not be *mixed* in a series of relative clauses having the same antecedent. Thus, it is improper to say, “The man *that* met us and *whom* we saw.” It should be, “*who* met us,” or “*that* we saw.”

**750.** The relative refers sometimes to the idea expressed by an *adjective*, sometimes to the *infinitive*. But this construction is rare. See examples (256).



**751.** The relative in the *objective case* is often *omitted*; as, "Here is the book I promised you." The relative in the *nominative case* is hardly ever omitted except in poetry; as—

"In this, 'tis God—directs, in that, 'tis man."

**752.** The antecedent is *omitted* before *what* (266), and generally before the compound relatives (273). It is sometimes understood, especially in poetry; as—

"[He] who lives to nature, rarely can be poor."

**753.** *What* should not be used for the *conjunction that*. Thus, "I can not believe but *what* it is so," should be, "but *that* it is so." Also, the demonstrative *that* should not be used for the relative *what*; as, "We speak *that* we do know," better, "*what* we do know."

### *Position of the Relative.*

**754.** The *relative* is generally placed *after* its *antecedent*.

**755.** To prevent ambiguity, the relative should be placed as *near its antecedent* as possible, and so that there can be no uncertainty as to the word to which it refers.

**756.** In most instances, the *sense* will be a sufficient guide in this matter; thus, "They removed their wives and children in wagons covered with the skins of animals, *which* formed their simple habitations." Here the *sense* only can determine to which of the three words, *wagons*, *skins*, or *animals*, the relative *which* refers. But—

**757.** When the antecedent can not be determined by the *sense*, it should be determined by the *position* of the relative, which, as a general rule, should belong to the *nearest antecedent*. Thus—

"We walked from the house to the barn } *which* had been erected."  
 "We walked to the barn from the house }

Here the relative *which*, as determined by its position, refers, in the first sentence, to *barn*, and in the second, to *house*.

**758.** So also, when the antecedents denote the same object, the one being in the subject and the other in the predicate, the relative takes the *person* of the one *next it*; as, "I am the *man who* commands you"—not "*command* you." If the relative refer to *I*, the words should be arranged, "*I who* command you am the man." Hence—

**759.** A relative clause which *modifies* the *subject* should not be placed in the *predicate*; thus, "He should not keep a horse that

can not ride," should be, "He that can not ride should not keep a horse."

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, which are the relatives? What is the antecedent to which each refers? Correct those which are wrong, and give the rule, or the reason for the change.

(744) Those which seek wisdom will certainly find her.—This is the friend which I love.—(745) That is the vice whom I hate.—The tiger is a beast of prey who destroys without pity.—The court who gives currency to such manners should be exemplary.—The nations who have the best rulers are happy.—Your friend is one of the committee who was appointed yesterday.—The family with whom I lived has left the city.—(747) His father set him up as a merchant, who was what he desired to be.

(748) It is the best situation which can be got.—That man was the first who entered.—This is the same horse which we saw yesterday.—Solomon was the wisest king whom the world ever saw.—The lady and the lapdog, which we saw at the window, have disappeared.

(749) O Thou who hast preserved us, and that wilt still preserve us!—The man whom we met to-day, and that was at our house yesterday, is the same.

(752) I have sent every thing what you ordered.—All whosoever came were made welcome.—He whoever steals my purse steals trash.

—(753) I can not believe but what you have been sick.—It is not impossible but what you are mistaken.

(755) The king dismissed his minister without inquiry, who had never before committed so unjust an action.

(759) He needs no spectacles that can not see, nor boots that can not walk.—Those must not expect the sympathy of the diligent who spend their time in idleness.

---

## The Subject Nominative.

**760. RULE VI.**—*The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative*; as, "*I am.*"—"Thou art."—"He is."—"They are."—"Time flies."—"The letter is written."

**761.** A *finite verb* is a verb in the indicative, potential, subjunctive, or imperative mood. It is called *finite*, because in these

parts it is *limited* by person and number. In the infinitive and participles, it is not so limited.

**762.** The subject of a finite verb (315) may be a noun, a pronoun, an infinitive mood (394), a participle used as a noun (462), or a clause of a sentence (637). All these, when the subject of the verb, are regarded as substantives in the *nominative* (109 and 867).

**763.** Every *nominative*, not *absolute* (769), or in *apposition* (868), or in the *predicate* (796), is the *subject of a verb*, expressed or understood.

**764.** The following sentence is wrong, because the nominative *who* has no verb of which it is the subject, viz.: "These evils were caused by Cataline, *who*, if he had been punished, the republic would not have been exposed to so great dangers." Better—"If Cataline, *by whom* these evils were caused, had been punished," etc. Hence—

**765.** It is improper to use both a *noun* and *its pronoun* as the subject of the same verb; thus, "The king *he* is just," should be, "The king is just." Except when the compound pronouns are added to the subject for the sake of emphasis (249); as, "The king *himself* has come."

**766.** 1. The nominative, especially in answer to a question, and after *than* or *as*, often has the verb understood; as, "*Who* said so?"—" *He* [said so]."—"James is taller than *I* [am]; but not so tall as *you* [are]; but—

2. *Than* is followed by the *objective* case of the *relative*; as, "A soldier *than whom* you never saw a braver."

NOTE.—In *comparative* clauses, the case after *than* and *as* is determined by its relation in the comparison; as,

He loved John better than [he loved] *me*.

He loved John better than *I* [loved him].

### *Position of the Subject.*

**767.** The *subject* is commonly placed *before the verb*. But in imperative or interrogative sentences, and in sentences inserted for the sake of emphasis or euphony, the subject is often placed *after* the verb; as, "Go *thou*."—"Did *he* go?"—"May *you* be happy!"—"Were *I* he."—"Neither did *they*."—"Said *I*."—"There was a *man*," etc.

Under this rule there is liability to error only in the use of pronouns, and in leaving a nominative without its verb.

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Which nouns or pronouns in the following sentences are the subject of a verb? If not in the proper case, change them, and give the rule or reason for the changes.

(760) Him and me are of the same age.—Suppose you and me go.—Them are excellent.—Whom do you think has arrived?—Them that seek wisdom will find it.—You and us enjoy many privileges.

(766) John is older than me.—You are as tall as her.—Who has a knife? Me.—Who came in? Her and him.—You can write as well as me.—That is the boy whom we think deserves the prize.

(765) Virtue, however it may be neglected for a time, yet men are so constituted as to respect genuine merit.

## The Nominative Absolute or Independent.

**768. RULE VII.**—*A substantive whose case depends on no other word is put in the nominative absolute.*

NOTE.—The nominative under this rule is usually called *the nominative absolute* or *independent*; because, in English, though always in the form of the nominative, yet it has no grammatical dependence on any word in the sentence. This occurs in all examples under the following

*Special Rules.*

**769. RULE 1.**—*A substantive with a participle, whose case depends on no other word, is put in the nominative; as, "He being gone, only two remain."*

**770.** In this construction, the *substantive* is sometimes *understood*; as, "His conduct, viewing it even favorably, can not be commended;" that is, "*we [a person]* viewing it," etc.

**771.** Sometimes *being* and *having been* are omitted; as, "Her wheel [*being*] at rest"—"He *destroyed* or *won*," etc., that is, "He *having been destroyed* or *won*," etc.—"This said," that is, "This *being* said."

**772.** In this construction, the substantive with the participle is used to express an assumed fact in an *abbreviated form*, and is

equivalent to a dependent clause, connected by *when, while, if, since, because*, etc. (644); as, "*He having gone*, his brother returned;" = "*Since or because he went*, his brother returned."

**773. RULE 2.**—*A substantive denoting a person or thing addressed without a verb or governing word, is put in the nominative; as, "I remain, dear sir, yours truly"—"Plato, thou reasonest well."*

**774. RULE 3.**—*A substantive, unconnected, in mere exclamation, is put in the nominative; as, "O, the times! O, the manners!"*

**775. RULE 4.**—*A substantive, used by pleonasm (1044, 2) before an affirmation, is put in the nominative; as, "The boy, oh! where was he?"—"Your fathers, where are they?"—"The prophets, do they live for ever?"*

Under this rule, a mistake can be made only in the case of pronouns.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Point out the noun or pronoun whose case depends on no other word—put it in the case required by the rule, and give the special rule requiring it.

Me being absent, the business was neglected.—He made as wise proverbs as anybody, him only excepted.—All enjoyed themselves very much, us excepted.—Whom being dead, we shall come.

Whose gray top

Shall tremble, him descending.

The bleating sheep with my complaints agree;

Them parched with heat, and me inflamed by thee.

Her quick relapsing to her former state.

Then all thy gifts and graces we display,

Thee, only thee, directing all our way.

### The Verb and its Subject.

**776. RULE VIII.**—*A verb agrees with its subject in number and person; as, "I read," "Thou readest," "He reads," "We read," etc.*

[Respecting the subject in the nominative, see (493). This rule, and the special rules under it, apply to an infinitive mood or clause of a

sentence, when the subject of a verb (763), as well as to nouns and pronouns.]

REMARK.—*Impersonal verbs* (520) are always in the third person singular; as, "*It hails,*" "*it rains,*" etc. Such expressions as "*it appears,*" "*it seems,*" "*it happens,*" and the like, sometimes called impersonal verbs, are really personal, having for their subject an infinitive mood or substantive phrase following, to which "*it*" preceding refers; as, "*It appears* that the river is rising."—" *It seems* to be so" (see 246, 4). So also, in the expressions *as follows,* *as concerns,* *as appears,* and the like, the verb is not impersonal; but whether singular or plural, refers to a subject understood; as, "The case was *as follows,*" i. e., as it here *follows*.—"The conditions were *as follow,*" i. e., were as *they* here *follow,* or as those *which follow*.

### Special Rules.

777. RULE 1.—A *singular noun used in a plural sense has a verb in the plural*; as, "Ten *sail are* in sight" (160).

778. RULE 2.—Two or more *substantives, singular, taken together, have a verb in the plural*; as, "*James and John are* here."

779. Substantives taken together are connected by *and*, expressed or understood (955), as in the example above.

780. A singular nominative and an objective, connected by *with*, sometimes have a plural verb; as, "The ship with the crew *were* lost." This construction is incorrect, and should not be imitated. A mere *adjunct* of a substantive *does not change* its number or construction. Either, then, the verb should be singular, "The ship with the crew *was* lost," or, if the second substantive is considered as belonging to the subject, it should be connected by *and*; as, "The ship *and* the crew *were* lost." But—

781. When substantives connected by *and* denote *one person* or thing, the verb is *singular*; as, "Why *is* *dust and ashes* proud?"—"The *saint, the father, and the husband, prays.*"—Burns.

782. Singular nouns, preceded by *each, every, no*, though connected by *and*, have the *verb* in the *singular*; as, "Each *book and each paper was* arranged."—"Every *paper and every book was* arranged."—"No *book and no paper was* arranged."

783. When a verb, having several subjects connected by *and*, is

placed *after* the *first*, it *agrees* with that, and is *understood* to the rest ; as,

“Forth in the pleasing spring  
Thy *beauty walks*, thy *tenderness*, and *love*.”—*Thomson*.

**784.** When the substantives connected are of *different persons*, the verb in the *plural* prefers the *first* to the *second*, and the *second* to the *third*. This can be perceived only in the pronoun (780, 1).

**785.** RULE 3.—*Two or more substantives, singular, taken separately, or one to the exclusion of the rest, have a verb in the singular ; as,*

“James or John *attends*.”—“Neither James nor John *attends*.”—“John, and not [but not] James, *attends*.”—“John, as well as James, *attends*.”—“Not John, but James, *attends*.”

**786.** Nouns taken *separately* are connected by *or*, *nor*, *as well as*, *and also*, etc. A noun taken so as to *exclude* others is connected with them by such phrases as *and not*, *but not*, *not*, etc. In such the verb agrees with the subject *affirmed of*, and is understood with the others.

NOTE.—*Singular nouns* connected by *nor* sometimes have a *plural verb*. In that case the verb denies equally of all, and *nor* is equivalent to *and*, connecting the nouns, and a negative which is transferred to, and modifies the verb ; as, “Neither Moses, nor Minos, nor Solon, nor Lycurgus, were eloquent men”—*Acton*—“Moses, and Minos, and Solon, and Lycurgus, were not eloquent men,” or, “were none of them eloquent.” This construction has not been generally noticed, but it often occurs in the best writers.

**787.** But when two or more substantives, taken separately, are of *different numbers*, the verb agrees with the one *next* it, and the plural subject is usually placed next the verb ; as, “Neither the captain nor the sailors *were* saved ; rarely, “Neither the sailors nor the captain *was* saved.”

**788.** RULE 4.—*When substantives, taken separately, are of different persons, the verb agrees with the one next it ; as,* “James or I *am* in the wrong.”—“Either you or he *is* mistaken.”—“I or thou *art* to blame.”

**789.** Though sentences are often formed according to this rule, they are generally harsh and inelegant.—It is generally better to put the verb with the first substantive, and repeat it with the second ; or

to express the same idea by arranging the sentence differently ; as, "James *is* in the wrong, or I *am*," or, "One of us *is* in the wrong." "Either you *are* mistaken or he *is*."—"I *am* to blame, or thou *art*." This remark is sometimes applicable, also, when the substantives are of the same person, but different in number, and requiring each a different form of the verb ; as, "Either the captain or the sailors were to blame ;" otherwise, "Either the captain *was* to blame, or the sailors *were*."

**790.** RULE 5.—1. A *collective noun*, expressing many as one whole, has a verb in the *singular* ; as, "The company *was* large."

**791.** 2. But when a *collective noun* expresses many as individuals, the verb must be *plural* ; as, "My people do not consider."

**792.** It is sometimes difficult to determine whether a *collective noun* expresses *unity* or *plurality*. It is now generally considered best to use the *plural*, where the *singular* is not manifestly required.

**793.** A subject after "many a" has a verb in the *singular* ; as, "Full many a flower *is* born," etc. (785).

**794.** Two or more verbs connected in the same construction, as a *compound predicate* (627) have the same subject ; as, "James *reads* and *writes*." "James neither *reads* nor *writes*."

**795.** But when verbs are *not connected* in the same construction, each verb should have its *own* subject. The following sentence is wrong in this respect : "The whole is produced as an illusion of the first class, and hopes it will be found worthy of patronage ;" it should be, either "He *produces* the whole as an illusion," etc., "and *hopes*," etc. ; "The whole is produced," etc., "and he hopes, etc., or, "and it is hoped," etc.

For the *position* of the verb and its subject, see (767), and also (741).

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

What is the verb in each of the following sentences ? What is its subject ? See if they agree. If they do, give the rule and show how it applies. If they do not, change the verb so as to agree with its subject, and give the rule. Thus, *loves* should be *love*, to agree with *I*, in the first person, singular. *Rule*—"A verb agrees," etc. (776)●

(776) I loves reading.—A soft answer turn away wrath.—We is but of yesterday, and knows nothing.—The days of man is as grass.—



Thou sees how little has been done.—He dare not act otherwise.—Fifty pounds of wheat produces forty pounds of flour.—A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye.—So much of ability and merit are seldom found.—A judicious arrangement of studies facilitate improvement.—Was you there ?—I, who are first, has the best claim.—The derivation of these words are uncertain.—To be ignorant of such things are now inexcusable.—(482).—She needs not trouble herself.

(777) Forty head of cattle was sold in one hour.—The horse was sent forward to engage the enemy.—The foot, in the meantime, was preparing for an attack.—Fifty sail was seen approaching the coast. Two dozen is as many as you can take.—One pair was spoiled ; five pair was in good condition.

(778) Patience and diligence, like faith, removes mountains.—Life and death is in the power of the tongue.—Anger and impatience is always unreasonable.—Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing.—To profess regard, and to act differently, marks a base mind.—To be good and to seem good is different things.

(781) That able scholar and critic have died.—Your friend and patron who were here yesterday have called again to-day.

(782) Every leaf, and every twig, and every drop of water, teem with life.—Every man and every woman were searched.—No wife, no mother, no child, soothe his cares.—No oppressor, no tyrant, triumph there.

(785) Either the boy or the girl were present.—Neither precept nor discipline are so forcible as example.—Our happiness or misery depend much upon our own conduct.—A man's being rich, or his being poor, do not affect his character for integrity.—To do good or to get good are equally neglected by the foolish.

(786) His time, as well as his money and health, were lost in the undertaking.—He, and not we, are to blame.—James, and also his brother, have embarked for the gold region.

(787) Neither the scholars nor the teacher was present.—Whether the subjects or the king is responsible, makes no difference.

(788) Either he or I are willing to go.—Neither thou nor he art of age.—You or your brother are blamed.—Neither James nor I has had a letter this week.

(790) Stephen's party were entirely broken up.—The meeting were large and respectable.—The people often rejoice in that which will

prove their ruin.—The British Parliament are composed of lords and commons.—The noble army of martyrs praiseth thee, O God!—A great number of women were present.—The public is respectfully informed.—The audience was much pleased.—The council was not unanimous.—Congress have adjourned.

While still the busy world is treading o'er

The paths they trod five thousand years before.

(793) Many a one have tried to be rich, but in vain.—Many a broken ship have come to land.

(795) The letter from which the extract was taken, and came by mail, is lost.—It was proposed by the president to fit out an expedition, and has accomplished it.—Our friend brought two loads to market, and were sold at a good price.

## The Predicate Substantive.

**796. RULE IX.**—*The predicate substantive, after an attributive verb, is put in the same case as the subject before it (797); as,*

"It is *I*."—"He shall be called *John*."—"She walks a *queen*."—"I took it to be *him*."—"He seems to be a *scholar*."—"The opinion is, *that he will live*." Hence—

NOTE.—As the subject of a verb can be only in the nominative (760), or objective (872), the predicate substantive can be *only* in the *nominative* or *objective*.

**797.** Any verb may be the copula [attributive verb] between the subject and the predicate substantive, except a transitive verb in the active voice. But those most commonly used in this way are the verbs *to be, to become, to seem, to appear*; intransitive verbs of *motion, position*, etc., and passive verbs, denoting *to call, name, style, appoint, choose, make, esteem, reckon*, etc.

**798.** The predicate substantive after a verb may be any thing that can be the subject of a verb (762).

**799.** The *infinitive* without a *definite* subject, or the *participle* of an attributive verb (604) in a substantive clause, has a *predicate* substantive after it in the *nominative*; as,

"*To be a foreigner is a disadvantage.*"

"*He was not known to be a foreigner.*"

"*His being a foreigner was not known.*"

"*He was suspected of being a foreigner.*"

"*We did not know his being [or, of his being] a foreigner.*"

In all these examples, the word *foreigner* is the predicate nominative after *to be*, or *being*, because these phrases being only abridged dependent clauses (649), the predicate noun remains in the same case after the clause is abridged as it was before. Thus, "*He was not known to be a foreigner,*"—"It was not known *that he was a foreigner.*" As, then, in the latter form, *foreigner* is in the nominative under the rule, it remains the same in the abridged form, and so of the other examples. But when we say, "*For him to be a foreigner,*" or, "*We did not know him to be a foreigner*" (395), *him*, in both examples, is the subject of *to be*, and *foreigner* is in the objective, according to the rule.

### Position.

**800.** The usual *position* of the predicate substantive is *after the verb*, as that of the subject is before it, and this is always the order of construction. But in both the direct and the indirect question, and in inverted sentences, its *place* is often different; thus, "*Who is he?*"—"We know not *who he is.*"—"Is *he* a student?"—"He is the same *that he was.*"—"The *dog it* was that died."—"A *man he* was to all the country dear."—"Feet was *I* to the lame."

### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In each of the following sentences, which is the attributive verb?—what is its subject?—what the predicate substantive? Correct where it is wrong, and give the reason for the correction. Thus, *me* is the predicate substantive, and should be *I*, because the subject *it* is in the nominative. Rule—"The predicate," etc.

(796) It is *me*.—It was *me* who wrote the letter, and *him* who carried it to the post-office.—I am sure it could not have been *her*.—You would probably do the same thing if you were *him*.—I understood it to be *he*.—It may have been *him*, but there is no proof of it.—I little thought it had been *him*.

Whom do you think he is?—Who do you think *him* to be?—Whom do men say that I am?—He is the man whom you said it was.

- —Let him be whom he may.—Is it not him whom you thought it was?—Thomas knew not whom it was that called, though quite certain it was not her who we saw yesterday.
- 

## The Object after Transitive Verbs.

**801. RULE X.**—*A substantive, being the object of a transitive verb in the active voice, is put in the objective case; as, "We love him."—"He loves us."—"Whom did they send?"*

**802.** The *infinitive* mood, a *participle* used as a noun, or *part of a sentence*, may be the object of a transitive verb, as well as a noun or pronoun; as, "Boys love *to play*."—"I know *who is there*."—"I wish *that they were wise*."—"You see *how few have returned*."

### Special Rules.

**803. RULE 1.**—*An intransitive verb does not govern an objective case (320, 1). Thus—*

"Repenting *him* of his design," should be, "Repenting of his design." Still, a few anomalies of this kind are to be found; as, "They laughed *him* to scorn."—"The manliness to look the *subject* in the face."—"Talked the *night* away."

**804. RULE 2.**—*Intransitive verbs in a transitive sense (375) govern the objective case (321, 1, 2); as, "He runs a race."—"They live a holy life."*

**805.** To this usage may be referred such expressions in poetry as the following: "The brooks ran *nectar*."—"The trees wept *gums* and *balms*."—"Her lips blush deeper *sweets*," etc.

**806.** To this rule also belongs the objective after *causatives* (375, 3); as "He runs a *stage*."—"John walks his *horse*."—"He works *him* hard," etc. Such expressions, however, as "*Grows corn*," are inelegant, and should be avoided.

**807. RULE 3.**—*Intransitive verbs do not admit a passive voice, except when used transitively (375). Thus—*

"I am purposed"—"I am perished," should be, "I have purposed"

—"I am perishing." But we can say, "My race *is run*," because *run* is used transitively. Such expressions as, "I *am resolved*"—"He *is deceased*"—"He *is retired* from business."—"We *are determined* to go on," etc., though common, are incorrect. It is better to say, "I *have resolved*"—"He *has retired*," etc.

808. A transitive verb in the active voice, without an object, either *has* an object understood, or is used intransitively (323).

809. RULE 4.—A *transitive verb does not admit a preposition after it*; thus, "I must premise *with* a few observations."—"I will not allow *of* it." Omit *with* and *of*.

810. RULE 5.—*Verbs signifying to name, choose, appoint, constitute, and the like, generally govern two objectives, viz., the direct, denoting the person or thing acted upon, and the indirect, denoting the result of the act expressed*; as, "They named *him* John."—"The people elected *him* president."—"They made *it* a book."

811. In such sentences, when the verb is in the *passive* voice, the *direct object* of the active form is made the *subject* of the passive, and the indirect remains as the *predicate nominative* after the verb, according to Rule IX. Thus, "He was named *John*."—"He was elected *president*."—"It was made *a book*."

812. Besides the direct or immediate object in the objective case, some verbs have a *remote object* between the *immediate* and the verb, governed by a preposition understood; as, "John gave *ME* a book." But when the remote object comes last, the preposition must be expressed; as, "John gave a book *to ME*." The verbs thus used are such as signify to *ask, teach, offer, promise, give, pay, tell, allow, deny*, and some others.

813. These verbs properly take the *immediate object* of the active voice as the *subject in the passive*, and the *remote object* remains in the *objective* after the passive, governed by a preposition expressed or understood; as, "A book was promised *me, or to me*" (811).

814. In loose composition, however, the *remote object* is sometimes made the subject, and the *immediate object* remains in the *objective case* after the passive voice; as, "*I* was promised a book." The verbs *ask* and *teach* frequently have this double construction in the passive, but in general the regular construction is better.

Similar to this are certain expressions sufficiently correct in the ac-

nitive form, but which are *anomalous*, and can not be analyzed in the form usually but incorrectly given to them *in the passive*. Thus, *Active*—"They took possession of the farm." *Passive* (incorrectly) "The farm was taken possession of by them"—(correctly) "Possession of the farm was taken by them." This anomaly arises from inadvertently making the object of the preposition (*farm*), instead of the object of the verb in the active voice (*possession*), the subject of the verb in the passive. Such anomalies are the following: "The circumstance was made use of."—"The ship was lost sight of."—"The occasion was taken advantage of." Either the regular passive form of expression should be used, or, if that be awkward, a different form of expression should be chosen.

### *Position.*

**815.** As the *nominative* and the *objective* case of nouns are *alike in form*, the arrangement of the sentence should clearly distinguish the one case from the other. The *nominative* generally *precedes* the verb, and the *objective* *follows* it. Thus, "Brutus killed Cæsar." If one (or both) of these should be a pronoun, the order may be varied without obscuring the sense, and sometimes the objective is rendered more emphatic by being placed *first*; as, "*Him* he slew."

**816.** When the objective is a *relative* or an *interrogative* pronoun, it *precedes* both the verb and its subject; as, "The man *whom* we saw is dead."—" *Whom* did you send?"

**817.** The objective should not, if possible, be separated from its verb by intervening clauses. Thus, "We could not *discover*, for want of proper tests, the *quality* of the metal." Better, "We could not, for want of proper tests, *discover the quality* of the metal."

### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, correct the errors according to the rule, and give a reason for the change. Parse the sentences corrected. Thus, *I* should be *me*, because it is the object of *loves*. *Rule X*.—"A substantive being the object," etc.

(801) He loves I.—He and they we know, but who art thou?—She that is idle and mischievous, reprove sharply.—Ye only have I known.—They that honor me I will honor.—Who do you think I saw yesterday?—Who, having not seen, we love.—Who should I meet the

other day but my old friend?—Who dost thou take to be such a coward?

(803) You will have reason enough to repent you of your foolish conduct.—They did not fail to enlarge themselves on the subject.—Go, flee thee away into the land of Judea.

(807) Several persons were entered into a conspiracy.—Fifty men are deserted from the army.—I am purposed that I will not sin.—He has almost perished with cold.—I am resolved to go.

(809) No country will allow of such a practice.—False accusation can not diminish from his real merit.—His servants ye are, to whom ye obey.—He ingratiates with some by traducing others.—They shall not want for encouragement.

Change the following into the regular form, and give a reason for the change:—

(818) I was promised a pension.—He was offered a pardon.—She would not accept the situation, though she was offered it.—I was paid a dollar for my services.—I was given a book of great value.

(817) Becket could not better discover, than by attacking so powerful an interest, his resolution to maintain his right.—The troops pursued, without waiting to rest, the enemy to their gates.

## The Objective after Prepositions.

**818. RULE XI.**—A *substantive*, being the *object of a preposition*, is put in the *objective case*; as, “To whom much is given, of him much shall be required.”

**819.** The *object of a preposition* is sometimes an infinitive mood—a participle used as a noun—part of a sentence—a phrase, or dependent clause, as well as a noun or pronoun; as, “He is ABOUT to depart.”—“AFTER we came.”—“ON receiving his diploma.”—“Much depends ON who are his advisers.”

**820.** As a general rule, it is considered *inelegant* to connect either an active-transitive verb and a preposition, or two prepositions with the *same object*. Thus, “I wrote to and warned him.” Better, “I wrote to him, and warned him.” So, “Of him, and through him, and to him, are all things.” Not *of*, and *through*, and *to him*,” etc.

**§21.** This general rule is so little regarded, even by the best writers, that it is a matter of doubt whether it should any longer retain a place in our grammars. In many instances, at least, the form of speech condemned by the rule is clearly better in respect of perspicuity, brevity, and strength, than that which it recommends, and in such cases it should be adopted. In some cases, again, as in the above example, the full form is better than the elliptical. In this matter, every one must be guided by his taste and judgment, avoiding equally obscurity and harshness.

**§22.** When the prepositions *to*, *at*, *in*, stand before names of places, the following usage should be carefully observed, viz. :—

1. *To*—is used after a *verb of motion toward* ; as, "He went to Spain." But it is omitted before *home* ; as, "Go home."
2. *At*—is used before names of *houses, villages, towns, and foreign cities* ; as, "He resides at the Mansion House."—"At Saratoga Springs."—"At Lisbon."
3. *In*—is used before names of *countries and large cities* ; as, "He lives in England"—"*in* London"—"*in* New York." But *at* is used before the names of places and large cities after the verbs *touch, arrive, land*, and frequently after the verb *to be* ; as, "We touched at Liverpool, and, after a short passage, landed at New Orleans."—"I was at New York."
4. In speaking of one's residence in a city, *at* is used before the *number*, and *in* before the *street* ; as, "He resides at No. —,"—"He lives in State street."—When both are mentioned together, the preposition is commonly understood before the last ; as, "He lives at No. —, State street," or, "He lives in State street, No. —."

**§23.** The preposition is frequently *understood*, as follows :—

1. A preposition expressed with the *first noun* or pronoun of a series, may be understood as to the rest ; as, "Be kind to John, and James, and Mary."
2. When the *remote object* of a verb, governed by a preposition, is placed between the verb and its immediate object, the preposition is often omitted ; as, "Give me your hand."—Bring me a chair."—"Get me a book" (812).
3. *To*—is commonly omitted after *like, near, nigh* ; as, "Like his father."—"Near a river," etc. ; and *of* frequently after *worthy* and *unworthy*.



824. Sometimes the *antecedent* term of a preposition, and sometimes the *subsequent* (539), is *omitted*. Thus, the *antecedent*: “[*I say*] in a word.”—“All shall know me [*reckoning*] from the least to the greatest.” The *subsequent*: “There is a man I am acquainted with”—that is, *with whom* I am acquainted. The *subsequent* is *always omitted* when it is the indefinite antecedent to which a *compound relative* refers (272): as, “Give it to whoever will take it.”

825. The phrases, *in vain, in secret, at first, at last, in short, on high*, and the like, may either be parsed together as *adverbs*, or the noun may be supplied, and *each word* parsed *separately*; as, “In a vain manner.”—“In a secret place,” etc.

826. *Adverbs* representing adverbial phrases ending with a preposition, *govern* a noun following, in the *objective*; as, “*Maugre* hell,” that is, “*in spite of* hell.”—*Milton*.

827. Though words denoting *weight, measure*, etc., are evidently governed by a preposition, yet, as it is for the most part understood, it is better to dispose of such cases by the following

#### *Special Rule.*

828. RULE.—*Nouns denoting time, value, weight, or measure, are commonly put in the objective case, without a governing word* (166, 3); as,

“He was absent six *months* last year.”—“It cost a *shilling*.”—“It is not worth a *cent*.”—“It weighs a *pound*.”—“The wall is six *feet* high, and two *feet* thick.”

This may be called the *objective of time, weight, value*, etc., as the case may be.

829. Nouns denoting *time how long*, are generally *without a preposition*; as, “He is ten *years* old.” Also, nouns denoting *time when*, in a general or indefinite way; as, “He came last *week*.” But nouns denoting the *time when, definitely*, or with precision, generally have the preposition expressed; as, “He came last week, on *Wednesday, in the evening*.”

#### *Position of the Preposition.*

830. Prepositions should be placed *before the words* which they govern, and as *near* to them as possible; but *never before that* as a relative.

831. *Whom* and *which* are sometimes governed by a prepo-

sition at *some distance* after them; this, however, should be avoided as much as possible. Thus, "That is the man *whom* I gave the letter *to*." Generally better thus—"to *whom* I gave the letter."

832. The *preposition with its regimen* (539) should be placed as *near* as possible to the word to which it is related.

833. Under this rule, there is liability to error only in the use of *pronouns* and with regard to *position* (830).

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In each of the following sentences, point out the preposition, and the word governed by it. Correct the errors and give a reason for the change. Parse the sentences when corrected.

(818) To who will you give that pen?—That is a small matter between you and I.—He came along with James and I.—He gave the book to some one, I know not who.—(831) Who does it belong to?—The book which I read that story in is lost.

(823) I have been to Boston.—They live in Saratoga Springs.—We touched in Liverpool on our way for New York.—He has been to home for some days.—He lives at Hudson street, in No. 42.—We remained in a village in the vicinity of London.

(823) Be so good as lend to me your grammar.—Get to him a book like that.—Ask of me that question again.—This has taught to me a lesson which I will always be mindful of.

(830) The nature of the undertaking was such as to render the progress very slow of the work.—Beyond this period the arts can not be traced of civil society.

(832) The wrong position of the preposition and its regimen often produces very ludicrous sentences. The following are specimens:—

Wanted, a young man to take care of some horses, of a religious turn of mind.—The following verses were written by a young man who has long lain in the grave, for his own amusement.—A public dinner was given to the inhabitants, of roast beef and plum pudding.—I saw that the kettle had been scoured, with half an eye.—He rode to town, and drove twelve cows, on horseback.—The man was digging a well, with a Roman nose.

**834. RULE XII.—*Certain words and phrases should be followed by appropriate prepositions.***

The following list may be useful for reference :—

Abhorrence <i>of</i> .	Ask <i>of</i> a person ; <i>for</i> a thing ; <i>after</i> what we wish to hear of.
Abound <i>in, with</i> .	Aspire <i>to, after</i> .
Abridge <i>from</i> .	Associate <i>with</i> , seldom <i>to</i> .
Absent <i>from</i> .	Assent <i>to</i> .
Access <i>to</i> .	Assure <i>of</i> .
Accommodate <i>to</i> .	Attain <i>to</i> .
Accord <i>with</i> .	Averse <i>to, from</i> .
Accuse <i>of</i> .	Banish <i>from, to</i> .
Acquaint <i>with</i> .	Believe <i>in</i> , sometimes <i>on</i> .
Acquit <i>of</i> .	Bereft <i>of</i> .
Acquiesce <i>in</i> .	Bestow <i>upon, on</i> .
Adapted <i>to</i> .	Betray <i>to</i> a person ; <i>into</i> a thing.
Adequate <i>to</i> .	Boast <i>of</i> .
Adhere <i>to</i> .	Bind <i>to, in</i> .
Adjudge <i>to</i> .	Blush <i>at</i> .
Admonish <i>of</i> .	Border <i>upon, on</i> .
Address <i>to</i> .	Call <i>on</i> a person ; <i>at</i> a place.
Admission (access) <i>to</i> .	Capacity <i>for</i> .
Admission (entrance) <i>into</i> .	Careful <i>of, in</i> .
Advantage <i>over, of</i> .	Catch <i>at</i> .
Affinity <i>to, with</i> .	Change (exchange) <i>for</i> ; (alter) <i>to, into</i> .
Affection <i>for</i> .	Charge <i>on</i> a person ; <i>with</i> a thing.
Agree <i>with</i> a person ; <i>to</i> a proposition from another ; <i>upon</i> a thing among themselves.	Compare <i>with</i> , in respect of quality ; <i>to</i> , by way of illustration.
Agreeable <i>to</i> .	Comply, compliance <i>with</i> .
Allude <i>to</i> .	Composed <i>of</i> .
Alter <i>to</i> , alteration <i>in</i> .	Concede <i>to</i> .
Amerce <i>in</i> .	Concur <i>with</i> a person ; <i>in</i> a measure ; <i>to</i> an effect.
Annex <i>to</i> .	Condescend <i>to</i> .
Analogy <i>to, with</i> .	Confer <i>on, upon</i> .
Antipathy <i>to, against</i> .	Confide <i>in</i> .
Approve <i>of</i> .	Conformable, conformity <i>to, with</i> .
Array <i>with, in</i> .	Congenial <i>to</i> .
Arrive <i>at</i> .	
Ascendant <i>over</i> .	

Congratulate <i>upon, on.</i>	Discourage <i>from</i> ; discouragement <i>to.</i>
Consonant <i>to.</i>	Disgusted <i>at, with.</i>
Consist (to be composed) <i>of</i> ; (to be comprised) <i>in.</i>	Dispose <i>of</i> ; disposed (adj.) <i>to.</i>
Consistent <i>with.</i>	Dispossess <i>of.</i>
Contrast <i>with.</i>	Disqualify <i>for.</i>
Conversant <i>with</i> men; <i>in</i> things; <i>about</i> and <i>among</i> are less proper.	Dissent <i>from.</i>
Convict <i>of</i> a crime; <i>in</i> a penalty.	Distinct <i>from.</i>
Copy <i>after</i> a person; <i>from</i> a thing.	Divested <i>of.</i>
Correspond (to be consistent) <i>with</i> ;	Divide <i>between</i> two; <i>among</i> more.
(answering or suitable) <i>to.</i>	Eager <i>in, on, of, for, after.</i>
Correspondence <i>with.</i>	Embark <i>in.</i>
Cured <i>of.</i>	Employ <i>in, on, about.</i>
Debar <i>from.</i>	Enamored <i>with.</i>
Defend (others) <i>from</i> ; (ourselves) <i>against.</i>	Encroach <i>upon, on.</i>
Demand <i>of.</i>	Endeavor <i>after</i> a thing.
Denounce <i>against</i> a person.	Engage <i>in</i> a work; <i>for</i> a time.
Depend, dependent <i>upon, on.</i>	Enjoin <i>upon.</i>
Deprive <i>of.</i>	Entrance <i>into.</i>
Derogate <i>from</i> ; derogatory <i>to.</i>	Equal <i>to, with.</i>
Derogation <i>from, of.</i>	Equivalent <i>to.</i>
Despair <i>of.</i>	Espouse <i>to.</i>
Despoil <i>of.</i>	Estimated <i>at.</i>
Devolve <i>on.</i>	Exception <i>from, to.</i>
Die, perish <i>of</i> a disease; <i>by</i> an instrument, or violence; <i>for</i> another.	Exclude, exclusion <i>from.</i>
Differ, different <i>from.</i>	Exclusive <i>of.</i>
Difficulty <i>in.</i>	Expelled <i>from.</i>
Diminish <i>from</i> , diminution <i>of.</i>	Expert <i>at</i> (before a noun); <i>in</i> (before an active participle).
Disabled <i>from.</i>	Fall <i>under</i> disgrace; <i>from</i> a tree; <i>into</i> a pit; <i>to</i> work; <i>upon</i> an enemy.
Disagree <i>with</i> a person; <i>to</i> a proposal.	Familiar <i>to, with</i> ; a thing is familiar <i>to</i> us—we <i>with</i> it.
Disagreeable <i>to.</i>	Fawn <i>upon, on.</i>
Disappointed <i>of</i> what we do not get; <i>in</i> what does not answer when got.	Followed <i>by.</i>
Disapprove <i>of.</i>	Fond <i>of.</i>
	Foreign <i>to, sometimes from.</i>
	Founded <i>upon, on, in.</i>
	Free <i>from.</i>
	Fruitful <i>in.</i>

- Full *of*.  
 Glad *of* something gained by ourselves; *at* something that befalls another.  
 Grateful *to* a person; *for* favors.  
 Hanker *after*.  
 Hinder *from*.  
 Hold *of*; as, "Take hold *of* me."  
 Impose *upon*.  
 Incorporate (active-transitive) *into*;  
 (intransitive or passive) *with*.  
 Inculcate *on*.  
 Independent *of*.  
 Indulge *with* a thing not habitual;  
*in* a thing habitual.  
 Indulgent *to*.  
 Influence *on, over, with*.  
 Inform *of, about, concerning*.  
 Initiate *into* a place; *in* an art.  
 Inquire.—(see *ask*).  
 Inroad *into*.  
 Inseparable *from*.  
 Insinuate *into*.  
 Insist *upon*.  
 Instruct *in*.  
 Inspection (prying) *into*; (superintendence) *over*.  
 Intent *upon, on*.  
 Interfere *with*.  
 Intervene *between*.  
 Introduce *into* a place; *to* a person.  
 Intrude *into* a place enclosed;  
*upon* a person, or a thing not enclosed.  
 Inured *to*.  
 Invested *with, in*.  
 Lame *of*.  
 Level *with*.  
 Long *for, after*.  
 Look *on* what is present; *for* what is absent; *after* what is distant.
- Made *of*.  
 Made much *of*.  
 Marry *to*.  
 Martyr *for*.  
 Militate *against*.  
 Mistrustful *of*.  
 Need *of*.  
 Obedient *to*.  
 Object *to, against*.  
 Observance, observation *of*.  
 Obtrude *upon, on*.  
 Occasion *for*.  
 Offensive *to*.  
 Operate *upon, on*.  
 Opposite, opposition *to*.  
 Partake *of*; participate *of, in*.  
 Penetrate *into*.  
 Persevere *in*.  
 Pitch *upon*.  
 Poor *in*.  
 Prefer *to, over, above*.  
 Preference *to, over*.  
 Preferable *to*.  
 Prefix *to*.  
 Prejudice *against*.  
 Preside *over*.  
 Prevent *from*.  
 Prevail (to persuade) *with, on, upon*;  
 (to overcome) *over, against*.  
 Prey *on, upon*.  
 Productive *of*.  
 Profit *by*.  
 Protect others *from*; ourselves *against*.  
 Pronounce *against* a person; *on* a thing.  
 Provide *with, for*.  
 Proud *of*.  
 Purge *of, away*.  
 Quarrel *with*.  
 Reckon *on, upon*.

Reconcile (to friendship) <i>to</i> ; (to make consistent) <i>with</i> .	Strip <i>of</i> .
Reduce (subdue) <i>under</i> ; (in other cases) <i>to</i> .	Submit <i>to</i> .
Reflect <i>upon, on</i> .	Sent <i>to</i> .
Regard <i>for</i> ; in regard <i>to</i> .	Swerve <i>from</i> .
Rely <i>upon, on</i> .	Taste <i>of</i> , means actual enjoyment; taste <i>for</i> , means capacity or genius <i>for</i> .
Replete <i>with</i> .	Tax <i>with</i> (for example, a crime, an act) ; <i>for</i> (a purpose, a state).
Reproached <i>for</i> .	Thankful <i>for</i> .
Resemblance <i>to</i> .	Think <i>of, on</i> .
Resolve <i>on</i> .	Touch <i>at</i> .
Respect <i>to</i> ; in respect <i>to, of</i> .	Unite (transitive) <i>to</i> ; (intransitive) <i>with</i> .
Restore <i>to</i> .	Unison <i>with, to</i> .
Rich <i>in</i> .	Useful <i>for</i> .
Rob <i>of</i> .	Value <i>upon, on</i> .
Rule <i>over</i> .	Vest, before the possessor, <i>in</i> ; be- fore the possessed, <i>with</i> .
Share <i>in, of</i> .	Wait <i>upon, on</i> .
Sick <i>of</i> .	Witness <i>of</i> .
Significant <i>of</i> .	Worthy, unworthy <i>of</i> . But after these, <i>of</i> is generally omitted.
Similar <i>to</i> .	
Sink <i>into, beneath</i> .	
Skillful (before a noun) <i>in</i> ; (be- fore a participle) <i>at, in</i> .	
Strain <i>out</i> .	

835. *What preposition* it is proper to use, often depends as much *upon what follows*, as upon what goes before. Thus, "To fall *from a height*"—"into a pit"—"*in battle*"—"to work"—"*upon an enemy*"

836. *Into* is used only *after verbs of motion*, and implies *entrance*. *In* is used after verbs of *motion or rest*, and denotes *situation*, but never *entrance* ; as, "He went *into* a carriage, and rode *in* it."

837. *Boast, approve, and disapprove*, are often used *without a preposition* following ; so also *worthy* and *unworthy*.

838. The *same preposition* that follows a *verb* or *adjective*, usually follows the *noun derived from it*, and *vice versa* ; as, "Confide *in*"—"Confident *in*"—"Confidence *in*."

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, point out the prepositions and the antecedent term. If not appropriate, correct, and give the rule.

This remark is founded with truth.—He was eager of recommending him to his fellow-citizens.—I find great difficulty of writing.—Every change is not a change to the better.—Changed for a worse shape it can not be.—It is important, in times of trial, to have a friend to whom you can confide.—You may rely in the truth of what he says.—Many have profited from good advice, but have not always been grateful of it.—I have no occasion of his services.—Favors are not always bestowed to the most deserving.—This is very different to that.—Virtue and vice differ widely with each other.—Come in the house.—We rode into a carriage with four horses.—The boy fell under a deep pit.—Such conduct can not be reconciled to your profession.—Go, and be reconciled with thy brother.—A man had four sons, and he divided his property between them.—I am now engaged with that work.—He insists on it that he is right.

## The Possessive Limiting Substantives.

**839. RULE XIII.**—*A substantive that limits the signification of another, must be put in the possessive case ; as, "Virtue's reward."—"John's books."*

**840.** The substantive in the possessive case *limits* the signification of the other, by representing the thing named as *proceeding from, possessed by, or suitable to* the person or thing expressed by the possessive (165). It is of course necessary, under this rule, that the substantives *signify different things*.

**841.** A substantive, limited by the possessive, may be *any noun* in any case, or a *verbal noun* (462), either alone or with its regimen, or modifying words ; as, "On eagle's wings."—"He was opposed to John's writing."—"I am in favor of a pupil's composing frequently" (896).—"John's having devoted himself too much to study was the cause of his sickness" (463).

**842.** The noun limited by the possessive is *often under-*

**stood**; as, "This book is John's [book]." It is always omitted after the possessive case of the *personal pronouns*; as, "This book is *mine, thine, ours,*" etc.; and, in this construction, when supplied, the possessive case must be changed for the possessive pronoun (241); as, "This is *my* book, *thy* book, *our* book;" not *mine* book, etc. (202).

**843.** The *possessive* case, and the preposition *of*, with the *objective*, are often *equivalent*; as, "My father's house" = "The house of my father." But—

**844.** Sometimes the idea expressed by *of*, with the *objective*, can not be expressed at all by the *possessive*; as, "A ring of gold."—"A cup of water."—"A piece of land."—"The house of refuge," etc. Sometimes, again, the ideas expressed are *different*; thus, "The Lord's day," means the sabbath; "The day of the Lord," means the day of judgment. "My father's picture," means a picture belonging to my father; "A picture of my father," means a portrait of him. "God's love," means only the love which God feels. "The love of God," means either the love which God feels to us, or that which we feel to him.

**845.** *Of*, before a possessive case, *followed* by the substantive which it limits, usually governs that substantive; as, "The heat of the sun's rays." But *of* before a possessive, *not followed* by the substantive which it limits, governs that substantive understood, and the expression refers to *a part* of the things possessed; as, "A discovery of [that is, from] Sir Isaac Newton's [discoveries];" meaning, "One of Sir Isaac Newton's discoveries" (242).

**846.** Even when the possessive case, and *of* with the objective, are equivalent in meaning, the *arrangement* and *euphony*, as well as the perspicuity of the sentence, will often render the one expression preferable to the other. When this is the case, care should be taken to use that form which, in the circumstances, is best. Thus, "In the name of the army," is better than, "In the army's name;" "My mother's gold ring," is better than, "The gold ring of my mother." A succession of words in either form is harsh, and may be avoided by a proper mixture of the two; thus, "My brother's wife's sister"—better, "The sister of my brother's wife."—"The sickness of the son of the king"—better, "The sickness of the king's son."

**847.** When several nouns come together in the possessive case, implying *common possession*, the sign of the possessive is *annexed to the last*, and *understood to the rest*; as, "Jane



and Lucy's books," that is, books the common property of Jane and Lucy. But if common possession is *not* implied, or if several words intervene, the sign of the possessive should be annexed to each; as, "Jane's and Lucy's books," that is, books, some of which are Jane's, and others Lucy's. "This gained the king's, as well as the people's, approbation."

848. When a name is *complex*, consisting of more terms than one, the sign of the possessive is annexed to the last only; as, "Julius Cæsar's Commentaries."—"John the Baptist's head."—"His brother Philip's wife."—"The Bishop of London's charge." Here *Julius Cæsar's* is a complex name, in the possessive; *John* and *brother* are in the possessive, without the sign, that being annexed to the words *Baptist* and *Philip*, in apposition. In the last example, "London" is in the objective case, governed by *of*, and the 's annexed properly belongs to *Bishop*, which limits the word *charge*. In parsing the words *separately*, the transfer must, of course, be so made. But the true reason for annexing 's to *London* is, that the whole phrase, "Bishop of London," is regarded as *one term*, in the possessive, limiting the word *charge*, and may be so parsed. Thus, "A complex noun in the possessive case, limiting the word *charge*."

849. When a *short explanatory term* is joined to a name, the sign of the possessive may be annexed to either; as, "I called at Smith's the bookseller," or, "at Smith the bookseller's." But if, to such a phrase, the substantive which it limits is added, the sign of the possessive must be annexed to the last; as, "I called at Smith the bookseller's shop."

850. If the explanatory circumstance be *complex*, or consist of *more terms than one*, the sign of the possessive must be annexed to the name or first substantive; as, "This psalm is David's, the king, priest, and prophet of the people."—"That book is Smith's, the bookseller in Maiden Lane."

851. This mode of expression, however, is never elegant, and though sometimes used when the governing substantive is understood, yet it would be better to avoid it, and say, "This is a psalm of David, the king," etc., or "This is one of the psalms of David," etc. But an expression like this can not, with any propriety, be used when the substantive limited by the possessive is added. Thus, "David, the king, priest, and prophet of the people's psalm," would be intolerable.

852. When *two nouns* in the possessive are used *to limit*

*different words*, the *sign* of the possessive must be *annexed to each*; as, "He took refuge at the governor's, the king's representative," that is, "at the governor's *house*."

853. The *s* after the apostrophe is sometimes *omitted*, when the first word ends and the following word begins with an *s*, or when the use of it would occasion a disagreeable repetition of *s*-sounds; as, "For righteousness' sake."—"For conscience' sake."—"For Jesus' sake."—"At Jesus' feet" (173). In other cases such omissions would generally be improper; as, "James' book."—"Miss' shoes," instead of, "James's book."—"Miss's shoes."

854. A *clause of a sentence* should never come between the possessive case and the word which it limits; thus, "She began to extol the farmer's, as she called him, excellent understanding," should be "the excellent understanding of the farmer, as she called him."

855. A noun limited by the *possessive plural*, or by two or more nouns severally in the possessive singular, should not be plural unless the sense require it. Thus, "The men's health [not *healths*] suffered from the climate."—"John's and William's wife [not *wives*] are of the same age."

856. The possessive *whosoever* is sometimes *divided* by interposing the word which it limits: as, "*whose* house *soever*." This, in general, however, is to be avoided, and to be admitted only when euphony and precision are thereby promoted (277).

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, show which is the limiting substantive, and which is the one limited—where wrong, correct according to the rule or observations.

(839) Virtues reward.—One mans loss is often another mans gain. Mans chief end is to glorify God.—My ancestors virtue is not mine.—A mothers tenderness and a fathers care are natures gifts for mans advantage.—For Christ sake.—For ten sake.—Which dictionary do you prefer—Webster, Walker, or Johnson?—(172) Asa his heart was perfect.—John Thompson his book.—Lucy Jones her book.

(841) He was averse to the nation involving itself in war.—Much depends on your pupil composing frequently.—He being rich did not make him happy.—I am opposed to him going on such an expedition.

(842) That book is James book, and that one is Roberts.—That knife is your knife, but I thought it was my knife.—My book is old, but your book and Roberts book are new.

(845) That landscape is a picture of my father.—The work you speak of is one of Irving.—Gravitation was a discovery of Sir Isaac Newton.—That is a ring of my mother.

(846) The world's government is not left to chance.—The tree is known by the fruit of it.—The commons' vote was against the measure: the lords' was in its favor.—The weekly return of the day of the Lord is a blessing to man.—The representatives house is now in session.—John's brother's wife's mother is sick.—The severity of the sickness of the son of the king caused great alarm.

(847) William's and Mary's reign.—Cain and Abel's sacrifice were not the same.—David and Solomon's reign were prosperous.—John and William's wife were cousins.—Men, women, and children's shoes for sale.—He cared for his father, and also for his mother's interest.

(848) Messrs. Sheldon's & Co.'s bookstore is in New York.—Smith's and McDougal's printing-office is in Beekman street.—Jack's the Giant-killer's wonderful exploits.—The bishop's of London's charge to his clergy. The Grand Sultan's Mahomet's palace.—The secretary's of war report.

(850 and 851) Call at Smith, the bookseller and stationer's.—The parcel was left at Johnson, a merchant in Broadway's. He emulated Cæsar, the greatest general of antiquity's bravery. General Grant, an excellent man and brave soldier's residence.

(852) That house is Smith, the poor man's friend.—We spent an agreeable hour at Wilson, the governor's deputy.—The coach stopped at Mr. Brown, Henry's father.

(853) James father arrived yesterday.—Charles books are completely spoiled.—King James translators merely revised former translations.—For conscience's sake.

(854) They condemned the judge's in the case of Bardwell decision.—The prisoner's, if I may say so, conduct was shameful.—Peter the Hermit's, as he was called, opinion.

(855) All men have talents committed to their charges.—It is the duty of Christians to submit to their lots.—We protest against this course, in our names and in the names of our constituents.—A father's and mother's loves to their children are very tender.

## The Subjunctive Mood.

**857. RULE XIV.**—*The subjunctive mood is used in dependent clauses, when both contingency or doubt, and futurity, are expressed ; as, "If he continue to study he will improve."*

**858.** When contingency or doubt only and *not* futurity, is implied, the *indicative* is used ; as, "If he *has* money he keeps it."

**859.** Contingency or doubt is usually expressed by the connectives *if, though, unless, except, whether*, etc. ; but whether futurity is implied or not, must be gathered from the context. In general, when the sense is the same, with *shall, will, or should* prefixed to the verb, as without it, the subjunctive may be used ; otherwise, not. Thus, in the preceding example, "If he continue," and "If he shall continue," mean the same thing.

**860.** *Formerly* the subjunctive was used to express contingency, or doubt, *whether futurity was implied or not*. Of this the English Bible furnishes examples on almost every page (see Job xx., 12–14), where present usage would require the indicative. The tendency, at present, is to the other extreme. The present or future indicative, or past potential, is now more generally used instead of the present subjunctive (391); and this has led some grammarians to reject the subjunctive altogether, and to regard what was formerly called the present subjunctive as an elliptical form of the future indicative, or past potential. It appears to be certain, however, that there are forms usually called the present subjunctive, established by the authority of the best writers of every age, not excepting even the present, which can not be disposed of in this way ; for example, "It is no matter whether this or that *be* in itself the less or the greater crime."—*Lillo*.—"The question is not whether man *be* a free agent."—*Hobbes*. "If this *be* an error, it is a harmless one." In none of these can *shall, or will, or should* be introduced, without changing or destroying the sense. In all of them, present usage would substitute *is* for *be*. It will not do, however, for the grammarian to set up a rule, by which established and reputable usage is condemned, though the present taste tends another way. Still, there are cases in which this change is inadmissible (390).

**861.** *Lest* and *that*, annexed to a command, require the *subjunctive* form ; as, "Love not sleep, lest thou *come* to poverty."—

"Take heed that thou *speak* not to Jacob, either good or bad." And sometimes without a command; as, "They shall bear thee up, lest thou *dash* thy foot against a stone."—"Is not this the fast that I have chosen,—that thou *bring* the poor to thy house?"

862. *If*, with *but* following it, when futurity is denoted, requires the *subjunctive* mood; as, "If he *do* but touch the hills, they shall smoke." But when future time is *not* implied, the *indicative* is used; as, "If he *does* but whisper, every word is heard distinctly."

863. The subjunctive mood is used to express a *wish* or *desire*; as, "I wish I *were* at home."—"Oh that he *were* wise!"

864. A supposition or wish, implying a *present denial* of the thing supposed or desired, is expressed by the past subjunctive; as, "If my kingdom *were* of this world, then would my servants fight," implying, "It is not of this world."—"Oh that thou *wert* as my brother!" implying, "Thou art not" (439, 2).

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

What verbs, in the following sentences, should, according to the rule, be in the subjunctive mood, and what in the indicative? Correct them accordingly—parse the sentences corrected.

(857) If a man smites his servant and he dies, he shall surely be put to death.—We must go to-morrow, unless it rains.—There will be enough to do next week, if the weather is good.—Though the sky be clear, it is cold.—He will maintain his cause, though he loses his estate.—Ask John if he know when the legislature meets.—If he know anything, he surely knows that, unless he gets better, he can not be removed.—If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread.

(861) Take care that the horse does not run away.—See that thou dost it not.—Let him that standeth take heed lest he falls.—Kiss the son, lest he is angry.

(862) If he is but in health, it will be the cause of great thankfulness.—If he does but run, he will soon overtake them.—Oh that he was wise—I wish I was at home.

(864) If I was not Alexander, I would be Diogenes.—If it was not so, I would have told you.—If he was a year older, I would send him to school.—Was gold more abundant, it would be of less value.—Was I he, I would ~~accept~~ the offer.

## The Infinitive Mood.

**865. RULE XV.**—*The infinitive mood is governed by verbs, nouns, or adjectives*; as, “I *desire* to learn.”—“A *desire* to learn.”—“*Anxious* to learn.”

**866.** The infinitive is a sort of verbal noun, and has the construction of both a verb and a noun.

**867.** *As a noun*, the infinitive may be:—1. The *subject* of a verb (394); as, “*To play* is pleasant.” 2. The *object* of a verb (802); as, “Boys love *to play*.” 3. The *predicate-nominative* after an attributive verb (798); as, “He is *to be married*.” 4. In *apposition* with another noun (670); as, “Spare, spare your friends the task, *to read, to nod, to scoff, to condemn*.” 5. The *object* of a *preposition* (819); as, “*About to depart*.”—“What went ye out for *to see*?”

**868.** *As a verb* (at the same time that the infinitive is used as a noun), it may have all the *modifications of the verb* in respect of *time, government, or adjuncts*, forming, with them, an *abridged sentence*, or clause, or phrase (653); as, “To see the sun at midnight is impossible.” Here, *to see* is modified by its object *the sun*, and by the adjunct *at midnight*, and the whole phrase is the subject of *is*. Hence the following

### Special Rules.

**869. RULE 1.**—*One verb being the subject* (762) *of another, is put in the infinitive*; as, “*To study* is profitable” (872).

**870. RULE 2.**—*A verb in the infinitive may be the object of another verb*; as, “Boys love *to play*.”—“They seem *to study*” (394; 630, 4; 802).

**871.** Verbs which take the infinitive as their *object*, are transitive verbs in the active voice; and the infinitive, either alone, or modified by other words, is equivalent to the objective case (802). Verbs followed by the infinitive as an attribute of their subject are intransitive or passive verbs, which form a sort of modified copula between their subject and the infinitive following. Thus, “The watch seems *to go*” = “The watch is apparently going” (797).

**872. RULE 3.**—*The infinitive, as the subject or the object of*

*a verb, sometimes has a subject of its own in the objective case.*

**873.** In either construction, the infinitive, with its subject, is an *abridged dependent clause* (653), and when used as the subject, is introduced by *for*. Thus, *subject*—"For *us* to do so would be improper"—"That we should do so would be improper." *Object*—"I know *him* to be an honest man"—"I know that *he* is an honest man." Here the object of *know* is neither *him*, nor *to be*, etc., separately, but the whole clause, "*him to be an honest man*," taken together, equivalent to, "*that he is an honest man*."

**874.** In many such sentences, the *subject* of the infinitive resembles the *direct*, and the infinitive itself the *indirect object* of the preceding verb, as in the construction (810). Hence, when the verb is changed into the passive form, the objective after the active verb (which is also the subject of the infinitive) becomes the subject of the passive verb in the nominative, and the infinitive remains after it, like the indirect object (811). Thus, *active*—"I desired *him* to go." *Passive*—"He was desired to go."

**875.** RULE 4.—*The infinitive is used as a predicate-nominative after any verb as a copula* (603); as "*You are to blame*" (356).

**876.** When used as a predicate nominative after the verb *to be*, the infinitive denotes—

1. An *equivalent expression*; as, "*To obey is to enjoy*."
2. What is *possible* or *obligatory*; as, "*Gold is to be found in California*."—"The laws are *to be observed*."
3. What is *settled* and *determined upon*, and, of course, *future*; as, "*The ship is to sail to-morrow*."

**877.** RULE 5.—*To, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after the verbs bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, and let, in the active voice, nor after let in the passive*; as, "*I saw him do it*."—"You need not go."—"He was let go."

**878.** To this rule there are some exceptions. As it relates only to euphony and usage, *to* may be inserted when harshness will not thereby be produced; thus, "*Conscious that his opinions need to be disguised*."—*McKenzie*.

**879.** For the same reason, *to* is sometimes *omitted* after the verbs *perceive, behold, observe, have, and know*.

**880.** When several infinitives come together in the same construction, the *sign to*, expressed with the first, is sometimes *omitted*

before those that follow ; thus, "It is better to be a king and *die*, than to live and *be* a prince." This should never be done when either harshness or obscurity would be the result.

**881.** *To*, the sign of the infinitive, should never be used *for the infinitive itself*. Thus, "I have not written, and I do not intend *to*," is a colloquial vulgarism for, "I have not written, and do not intend *to write*."

**882.** RULE 6.—*The infinitive is used to express the purpose, end, or design of the preceding act ;* as, "Some who came *to scoff*, remained *to pray*." Here, *to scoff*, and *to pray* are not governed by *came* and *remained*, but are put without a governing word, to express the *end for which* they came and remained.

**883.** This construction of the infinitive is sometimes preceded by the phrase, "*in order*," and formerly was preceded by *for ;* as, "What went ye out *for to see*?" This is now obsolete.

**884.** RULE 7.—*In comparisons, the infinitive mood is put after so as, too, or than ;* as, "Be so good *as to read* this letter."—"Too old *to learn*."—"Wiser than *to undertake* it." Some consider this construction as elliptical, and that the infinitive depends on a word understood.

**885.** The *infinitive* is sometimes used to *assign*, in an abridged form, the *reason* of that which goes before ; as, "Base coward that thou art, *to flee*!"—"Ungrateful man! *to waste* my fortune, *rob* me of my peace," etc.—"Must not one sigh *to reflect* on so grave a subject?"

**886.** The infinitive is sometimes put *absolutely*, without a governing word ; as, "*To say* the truth, I was in fault."

**887.** The infinitive is sometimes *omitted ;* as, "I consider him [*to be*] an honest man."

**888.** The verb *have*, followed by the infinitive, sometimes expresses *obligation or necessity ;* as, "We *have to do* it," that is, "We must do it."

**889.** In parsing, the infinitive, in these several constructions, may be briefly stated thus : "The infinitive as the *subject* of—,"—"as the *object* of—,"—"as the *predicate-nominative* after—,"—"The infinitive of *purpose—comparison—cause—used absolutely*."

NOTE.—When the *infinitive* represents the *act of any particular person or thing*, its *subject* should always be stated.



## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

[There is but little liability to err in the use of this mood, except in its tense (920, 921), and in the improper use or omission of the sign *to*. When there is no rule to authorize the omission, it should be inserted.]

(865) Strive learn.—They obliged him do it.—(869) It is better live on a little than outlive a great deal.—It is better to be a king and die, than live and be a prince.—(870) He scorns either to temporize, or deceive, or be guilty of evasion.

(877) You need not to be so serious.—I have seen some young persons to conduct themselves very discreetly.—He bid me ~~to~~ go home.—They all heard him to say it.—He was heard say it by everybody.—They were seen pass the house.—I have observed some satirists to use the term.—Dare be wise.—They were bid come into the house.—(881) Be sure to write yourself, and tell him ~~to~~.—I strive to live as God designed me to.

[Point out the use of the infinitive in the following correct sentences, and show how it is governed.]

It too often happens that, to be above the reach of want, just places us within the reach of avarice.—It does no good to preach generosity, or even justice, to those who have neither sense nor soul.—He was born to be great.—They thought to make themselves rich. Great desires are difficult to be gratified.—To know ourselves, we must commence by knowing our own weaknesses.—If we have not always time to read, we have always time to reflect.—To be or not to be, that is the question.—Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might.

---

## Construction of Participles.

**890. RULE XVI.—***Participles have the construction of nouns, adjectives, and verbs* (452, etc.).

**891.** The participle as a *noun*, in the nominative case, may be the *subject* of a verb (762), or the *predicate-nominative* after it (798); as, "*Saying* is not *doing*." In the *objective* case, it may be the *object* of a transitive verb (802), or preposition (819); as, "*Avoid doing* evil."—"There is pleasure in *doing* good."

**892.** In a substantive phrase, a noun following the present or perfect participle (as well as the infinitive, 799) of an attributive verb (604), is in the *predicate-nominative*; as, "His *being* an expert dancer."—"The crime of *being* a young man," etc.

**893.** The *participle*, as an adjective, expresses an *attribute* of a noun or pronoun, *without affirmation*; as, "The sword hangs *rusting* on the wall."

**894.** The *participle*, while used as a noun or adjective, may be *modified* in all respects *as the verb* (630).

**895.** To participles used in these ways, the *rules of syntax* for nouns, adjectives, and verbs, *may* of course *be applied*.

### *Special Rules.*

**896.** RULE 1.—*When the present or perfect participle is used as a noun, a noun before it is put in the possessive case* (841); as, "Much depends on the *pupil's* composing frequently."—"John's having done so is evident."

**897.** But a pronoun in this construction must be the *possessive pronoun*, and *not* the *possessive case*; as, "Much depends on *your* composing," etc.—not *yours*.

**898.** In many cases, the nominative or the objective before the present participle as an *adjective*, will express nearly the same idea. Thus, "Much will depend on the *pupil's* composing," and "Much will depend on the *pupil* composing," mean substantially the same thing. Still, the construction is different: in the first, the *dependence* is on the *composing*; in the second, it is on the *pupil*; and though in these examples the sense is nearly the same, yet there are often examples in which the sense is entirely different. Thus, "What do you think of my *horse's* running to-day?" implies he *has* run, and asks, "How do you think he ran?" But "What do you think of my *horse* running to-day?" implies he *has not* run, and asks, "Do you think he should run?"

**899.** RULE 2.—*When the present participle, used as a noun, has an article or adjective before it, the preposition of follows*; as, "By the observing of these rules."—"This was a complete forsaking of the truth."

**900.** In this construction, the participle becomes *simply a noun*, and *can not be modified* as a verb. Hence we can not say, "By the observing *carefully* of these rules;" because the adverb

*carefully* can not modify a noun. But we can say, "By the careful observing of," etc.; because *careful*, being an adjective, can modify a noun. Or we can say, "By observing these rules carefully," etc.; because *the* and *of* being both removed, *observing* can be modified as a verb (922).

**901.** Both the *article* and *of* may be omitted; but not the one without the other. By this omission, the participle becomes a participial noun, and can be modified as the verb (462). *Of* can not be used when a preposition follows.

**902.** So here, again, in either of these constructions, the sense in many cases will be the same. Thus, "By the observing of these rules he became eminent," and "By observing these rules he became eminent," express the same idea. But, as in the other case (898), so here, there are examples in which the sense is entirely different. Thus, "He expressed the pleasure he had in the hearing of the philosopher," and "He expressed the pleasure he had in hearing the philosopher," mean entirely different things. So, "At the hearing of the ear, they will obey," and "At hearing the ear, they will obey." The first is sense—the last, nonsense.

In such cases, all *ambiguity* will be avoided by observing the following:—

**903.** RULE 3.—*When the verbal noun expresses something of which the noun following denotes the doer, it should have the article and the preposition; as, "It was said in the hearing of the witness." But when it expresses something of which the noun following does not denote the doer, but the object, both should be omitted; as, "The court spent some time in hearing the witness."*

**904.** RULE 4.—*The past participle, and not the past tense, should be used after the auxiliaries have and be; as, "I have written," not wrote.—"The letter is written," not wrote.*

**905.** So, also, the past participle should *not* be used for the past tense; as, "He *ran*," not *run*.—"I *saw*," not *seen*.—"I *did*," not *done*.

**906.** In many verbs whose present passive expresses, not the present continuance of the act, but the result of the act in a finished state, the *present participle* active has a *passive* as well as an active sense, and is used with the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the present passive progressively; as, "The house *is building*," not *being built*. When, in such verbs, the participle in *ing* has not a passive sense, or where the use of it in a passive sense would be ambiguous, a different form of expression should be used (456, etc.).

**907.** The *participle* is sometimes used *absolutely*, having no dependence on any other word; as, "Properly *speaking*, there is no such thing as chance" (769, 770).

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, correct the errors, and give a reason for the change:—

(892). Its being me need make no difference.—We could not be sure of its being him.—The whole depended on its being them.

(893) Man rebelling against his Maker brought him into ruin.—Joseph having been sold by his brethren was overruled for good.—A man being poor does not make him miserable.—(895) What do you think of my horse running to-day? Did he run well?—What think you of my horse's running to-day? Will it be safe?

(899) He spends part of his time in studying of the classics.—By the obtaining wisdom you will command respect.—By obtaining of wisdom you will command respect.—The learning any thing well requires application.—Learning of any thing well requires great application.—Because of provoking his sons and daughters, the Lord abhorred them.—(903) In the hearing of the will read, and in the examining of sundry papers, much time was spent.—The greatest pain is suffered in the cutting of the skin.

(904) He has broke his cup.—I have drank enough.—The tree was shook by the wind.—The tree has fell.—I seen the man who done it.—He has began the work.—Some fell by the wayside and was trode down.

The following sentences from E. Everett, Daniel Webster, Irving, N. A. Review, Cooper, Bancroft, Thomas Brown, Sir G. M'Kensie, Butler, etc., have been changed into modern newspaper English. Restore them, according to (906).

The fortress was being built.—The spot where this new and strange tragedy was being acted.—An attempt was being made in the English Parliament.—The magnificent church now being erected in the city of New York.—While these things were being transacted in England.—While the ceremony was being performed.—The court was then being held.—And still be being done and never done.—Wheat is being sold at a fair price.—Gold is being found in great quantities.—A report ia now being prepared.—Goods are now being sold off at first cost.—While the necessary movement was being made.

## Connection of Tenses.

**908. RULE XVII.**—*In the use of verbs, and words that, in point of time, relate to each other, the order of time must be observed*; as, "I have known him these many years"—not, "I know him these many years;" nor, "I knew him these many years."

**909. REMARK.**—The particular *tense* necessary to be used must *depend upon the sense*, and no rules can be given that will apply to all cases. But it may be proper to observe—

**910.** *What is always true* must be expressed in the *present tense*; as, "The stoics believed that 'all crimes *are* equal'" (403).

**911.** The *present-perfect*, and not the present tense should be used in connection with words denoting an *extent* of time continued to the present; thus, "They *continue* with me now three days," should be, "*have continued*" (407).

**912.** The *present-perfect tense* ought *never* to be used in connection with words which express *past* time; thus, "I have *formerly* mentioned his attachment to study," should be, "I *formerly* mentioned," etc.

**913.** To express an event *simply as past*, without relation to any other point of time than the present, or as taking place *at a certain past time* mentioned, the *past tense* is used; as, "God created the world."—"In the beginning, God created the world." Exercises in (912) are examples.

**914.** When we wish to represent an event as *past at or before* a certain past time referred to, the verb must be put in the *past-perfect tense*. Thus, when we say, "The vessel *had arrived* at nine o'clock," we mean, at nine o'clock the arriving of the vessel *was past*. But when we say, "The vessel *arrived* at nine o'clock," we mean, the arriving of the vessel *was then present*.

**915.** It is always essential to the use of this tense that the event be *past* at the time referred to. It is proper to notice here, also, that, in pointing out the time of a past event, two points or periods of time are often mentioned,—the one for the purpose of *ascertaining the other*. Thus, "We arrived *an hour before sunset*." Here the past-perfect is not used, though the arrival is represented as past before a past time

mentioned, viz., *sunset*, because *sunset* is not the time referred to, but is mentioned in order to *describe* that time; and at the time described, the event of *arriving* was not past, but present. If in this example we omit the word "hour," and merely say "*before sunset*," the construction will be the same. This will show that it is correct to say, "Before I went to France I visited England," because the visiting of England is represented as present, and not past, at the time indicated by the word *before*. But if the event mentioned is represented as *past* at the time indicated by the word *before*, or if the sentence is so arranged that only one point of past time is indicated at which the event referred to is past, the *past-perfect* must be used; as, "They *had arrived* before we sailed."—"They arrived after we *had sailed*."—"I *had visited* England when we returned to America."

916. The *present* and the *past* of the auxiliaries *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, should *never* be associated in the *same sentence*; and care must be taken that the subsequent verb be expressed in the *same tense* with the antecedent verb (844); thus, "I *may*, or *can* do it now, if I *choose*."—"I *might* or *could* do it now, if I *chose*."—"I *shall* or *will* do it when I *can*."—"I *may* do it if I *can*."—"I once *could* do it, but I *would* not."—"I *would* have done it then, but I *could* not."—"I *mention* it to him that he *may* stop if he *choose*."—"I *mentioned* it to him that he *might* stop if he *chose*."—"I *have mentioned* it to him, that he *may* stop."—"I *had mentioned* it to him, that he *might* stop."—"I *had mentioned* it to him that he *might have stopped*, had he *chosen*."

917. In dependent clauses, the *past-perfect indicative* or *potential* is used to express an event antecedent to, but never contemporary with, or subsequent to, that expressed by a verb in the past tense in the leading clause. "Thus, we can say, "I *believed* he *had done* it," but not, "I *hoped* he *had done* it," because *belief* may refer to what is past, but *hope* always refers to something future. See also the infinitive (920, 921).

918. When *should* is used instead of *ought* to express *present duty* (863), it may be followed by the present or present-perfect; as, "You *should* study, that you *may* become learned."

919. The *indicative present* is frequently used after the words *when*, *till*, *before*, *as soon as*, *after*, to express the relative time of a *future action* (406); as, "When he *comes* he will be welcome." When placed before the *present-perfect indicative*, these words denote the completion of a future action or event; as, "He will never be better *till* he *has felt* the pangs of poverty."

**920.** A verb in the *infinitive* mood must be in the *present tense* (446), when it expresses what is *contemporary* in point of time with the principal verb, or *subsequent* to it; as, "He appeared *to be* a man of letters."—"The apostles were determined *to preach* the gospel." Hence, verbs denoting *hope, desire, intention, or command*, must be followed by the *present infinitive*, and not by the *perfect* (451).

**921.** But the *perfect infinitive* must be used to express what is *antecedent* to the time of the principal verb; as, "Romulus is *said to have founded* Rome.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

(910) The doctor said that fever always produced thirst.—The philosopher said that heat always expanded metals.

(911) I know the family more than twenty years.—I am now at school six months.—My brother was sick four weeks, and is no better.—He tells lies long enough.

(912) He has lately lost an only son.—He has been formerly very disorderly.—I have been at London last year, and seen the king last summer.—I have once or twice told the story to our friend before he went away.

(914) After Columbus made his preparations, he set out on his voyage of discovery.—When we finished our lessons, we went out to play.—He that was dead sat up and began to speak.—It was a strange thing to me, for I never saw such a thing before.

(916) I should be obliged to him if he will gratify me in that particular.—Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.—Be wise and good, that you might be happy.—He was told his danger, that he may shun it.

(917) We had hoped that Lord Nugent would have been able to collect much new and interesting information.—Columbus hoped that he would have rendered the natives tributary to the crown of Spain.—We expected that they would have come.

(918) He should study diligently, that he might become learned.—We should respect those persons, because they continue long attached to us.

(919) We shall welcome him when he shall arrive.—As soon as he shall return we will recommence our studies.

(920) From the little conversation I had with him, he appeared to have been a man of learning.—Our friends intended to have met us.—He was afraid he would have died.

(921) Kirkstall Abbey, now in ruins, appears to be an extensive building.—Lycurgus, the Spartan law-giver, is said to be born in the nine hundred and twenty-sixth year before Christ.

## Construction of Adverbs.

**922. RULE XVIII.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs ;** as, “John speaks distinctly ; he is remarkably diligent, and reads very correctly.”

[See Etymology of Adverbs, 523, etc.]

**923.** A few *adverbs* sometimes *modify nouns or pronouns* (526) ; as “Not only the men, but the women also, were present.”—“I, even I, do bring a flood.”—*Gen.* vi. 17.

**924.** An *adverb* sometimes *modifies a preposition*, and sometimes an adjunct or clause of a sentence (525) ; as, “He sailed nearly round the globe.”—“Just below the ear.”—“Verily, I say unto you.”

### Special Rules.

**925. RULE 1.—Adverbs should not be used as adjectives, nor adjectives as adverbs** (686, 687).

Thus, “The above [preceding] extract.”—“It seems strangely [strange].”—“We arrived safely [safe].”—“He writes beautifully [beautifully].”

**REMARK**—Though it is perhaps never necessary to use an adverb as an adjective, yet the authority of good writers has so far sanctioned the violation of this rule in certain cases, that remonstrance would be unavailing. Thus, such phrases as the following are common : “The above rule ;”—“the then ministry ;”—“for very age ;”—“the hither side ;”—“thine often infirmities,” and the like. Adverbs so used should, of course, be reckoned adjectives, and parsed as such.

**926.** The adverbs *hence, thence, whence*, meaning *from this place, from that place, from which place*, properly *should not* have



920. A verb in the *3rd tense* (440), when it expresses time with the principal to be a man of letters, the gospel." Hence, *command*, must not be by the *perfect*.

921. But the *pre* is *antecedent* to said to have found

(910) The philosopher said

(911) I know school six better.—He

(912) He disorderly-summer.—went away

(914) A age of day play.—H thing to

(916) ticular.-and god may sh

(917) collect he wou —We

(918) We sh to us.

(919) shall :

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

For the practice of the the omission of it *hither, thither*, In ordinary discourse, as, "We came *here*."

921. *Where* shall not be used for *in which*, unless the is antecedent to a protestation, *where* [between]

922. *When, where, then, when, where*, in such phrases *when, where, then, when, where*, etc., are sometimes used by *where, then, when, where*, etc., are sometimes used by *where, then, when, where*, etc., are sometimes used by

923. *At once, far from* are sometimes used by *at once, far from*, etc., are sometimes used by *at once, far from*, etc., are sometimes used by

924. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

925. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

926. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

927. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

928. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

929. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

930. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

931. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

932. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

933. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

934. *There, properly as an adverb of place, is often used as an in-*

men is an affirmative verb, equivalent to "Be it so," or "so."

No, before a noun, is an adjective; as, "No man." If an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is an adverb; as, "No taller."—"No sooner." In all other cases the comparative negative is not; as, "He will not come."—"Whether he come or not."

### *Position of the Adverb.*

**936. RULE 3.**—Adverbs are for the most part placed before adjectives, after a verb in the simple form, and after the first auxiliary in the compound form; as, "He is very attentive, behaves well, and is much esteemed."

**937.** This rule applies generally to adverbial adjunct phrases as well as to adverbs (825).

**938.** This is to be considered only as a general rule, to which there are many exceptions. Indeed, no rule for the position of the adverb can be given which is not liable to exceptions. That order is the best which conveys the meaning with most precision. In order to this, the adverb is sometimes placed before the verb, or at some distance after it.

**939.** Never, often, always, sometimes, generally precede the verb. Not, with the participle or infinitive, should generally be placed before it (500).

**940.** The improper position of the adverb only often occasions ambiguity. This will generally be avoided when it refers to a sentence or clause, by placing it at the beginning of that sentence or clause; when it refers to a predicate, by placing it before the predicated term; and when it refers to a subject, by placing it after its name or description; as, "Only acknowledge thine iniquity."—"The thoughts of his heart are only evil."—"Take nothing for your journey but a staff only." These observations will generally be applicable to the words merely, solely, chiefly, first, at least, and perhaps to a few others.

**941.** In prose, to, the sign of the infinitive, or rather a part of it, should never be separated by placing an adverb immediately after it. Thus, "They are accustomed to carefully study their lessons," should be "to study carefully," or "carefully to study," etc.

**942.** The adverb enough is commonly placed after the ad-

*from* before them, because it is implied. But the practice of the best writers has so sanctioned the use of it, that the omission of it would now sometimes appear stiff and affected.

927. After *verbs of motion*, the adverbs *hither, thither, whither*, are now used only in solemn style. In ordinary discourse, *here, there*, and *where*, are used instead of them; as, "We came *here*." "They walked *there*."—"Where did he go?"

928. *Where* should *not be used in which*, unless the reference is to *place*. Thus, "They framed a protestation, *where* [better, *in which*] they repeated their former claims."

929. The adverbs *now, then, when, where*, in such phrases as *till now, till then, since when, to where*, etc., are sometimes used by good writers as *nouns*. This, however, is rare in prose and should not be imitated. In poetry it is more common (1048).

930. Of this character are the expressions *at once, far from hence*, etc.; but these are now established *idioms*, and in parsing are regarded as *one word* (535, 6).

931. *There*, properly an adverb of place, is often used as an introductory *expletive*; as, "*There* came to the beach a poor exile" (529).

932. RULE 2.—*Two negatives in the same clause are equivalent to an affirmative, and should not be used unless affirmation is intended*; as, "I can not drink *no* [any] more," or "I can drink *no* more."

REMARK.—But a *repetition* of the negation by independent negative words or phrases, or by transferring the word *neither* to the end of the clause, usually *strengthens* the negation; as, "There is *none* righteous, *no, not* one."—"He will *never* consent, *not* he, *nor* I *neither*."

933. One negative is sometimes connected with another implied in the negative prefixes *dis, un, in, in, il, ir*, etc.; as, "You are *not unacquainted* with his merits," that is, "You *are* acquainted," etc. In this way a pleasing variety of expression is sometimes produced. But the word *only*, with the negative, *preserves the negation*; as, "He was *not only* illiberal, but even covetous."

934. The adverbs *nay, no, yea, yes*, often stand *alone* as a negative or an affirmative answer to a question; as, "Will he go?"—"No"="He will not go."—"Is he at home?"—"Yes"="He is at

home." *Amen* is an affirmative verb, equivalent to "*Be it so*," or "*May it be so*."

935. *No*, before a *noun*, is an *adjective*; as, "*No man*." Before an *adjective* or adverb in the comparative degree, it is an *adverb*; as, "*No taller*."—" *No sooner*." In all other cases the proper negative is *not*; as, "*He will not come*."—"Whether he come or *not*."

### *Position of the Adverb.*

936. RULE 3.—*Adverbs are for the most part placed before adjectives, after a verb in the simple form, and after the first auxiliary in the compound form*; as, "*He is very attentive, behaves well, and is much esteemed*."

937. This rule applies generally to adverbial *adjunct phrases* as well as to adverbs (825).

938. This is to be considered only as a *general rule*, to which there are *many exceptions*. Indeed, no rule for the position of the adverb can be given which is not liable to exceptions. That order is the best which conveys the meaning with most precision. In order to this, the adverb is *sometimes* placed *before the verb*, or at some distance after it.

939. *Never, often, always, sometimes*, generally *precede* the verb. *Not*, with the participle or infinitive, should generally be placed *before* it (500).

940. The improper position of the adverb *only* often occasions ambiguity. This will generally be avoided when it refers to a sentence or clause, by placing it at the *beginning* of that sentence or clause; when it refers to a *predicate*, by placing it *before* the predicated term; and when it refers to a *subject*, by placing it *after* its name or description; as, "*Only* acknowledge thine iniquity."—"The thoughts of his heart are *only* evil."—"Take nothing for your journey but a staff *only*." These observations will generally be applicable to the words *merely, solely, chiefly, first, at least*, and perhaps to a few others.

941. In prose, *to*, the sign of the infinitive, or rather a part of it, should *never be separated* by placing an adverb immediately after it. Thus, "*They are accustomed to carefully study their lessons*," should be "*to study carefully*," or "*carefully to study*," etc.

942. The adverb *enough* is commonly placed *after the ad-*

*jective* which it modifies; as, "A large *enough* house"—"A house large *enough* for all."

943. *Ever* and *never* are sometimes improperly confounded; thus, "Seldom or *ever*," should be "Seldom or *never*," or "Seldom, if *ever*." *Ever so*, referring to quantity or degree, means *in whatsoever degree*. Hence, "Charming *never so* wisely," should be "*ever so* wisely." So, "*Ever so* much"—"*ever so* wise," etc.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

[As adverbs are uninflected, mistakes are liable to be made chiefly in their position, or in using as adverbs words that are not *so*, or in using adverbs where other words are required.]

Correct the errors in the following :—

(925) They hoped for a soon and prosperous issue to the war.—The then emperor was noted for his cruelty.—She walks graceful.—He spoke eloquent.—She did that work good.—Our friends arrived safely.—His expressions sounded harshly.—She is a remarkable pretty girl.—My foot slipped, and I pretty near fell down.

(926) He departed from thence into a desert place.—I will send thee far from hence to the Gentiles.—From hence! away!

(927) Where art thou gone?—And he said unto me, "Come up here."—The city is near, oh! let me escape there.—Where I am, there ye can not come.

(928) He drew up a petition, where he represented his own merit.—The condition where I found him was deplorable.—He went to London last year, since when I have not seen him.

(932) I can not do no more.—He will never be no taller.—He did not say nothing at all.—I have received no information on the subject, neither from him nor from his friend.—I can not see to write no more.—Nothing never can justify ingratitude.—(935) Be so kind as to tell me whether he will do it or no.

(936) We should not be overcome totally by present events.—We always should prefer our duty to our pleasure.—It is impossible continually to be at work.—Not only he found her employed, but pleased and tranquil also.—In the proper disposition of adverbs, the ear carefully requires to be consulted as well as the sense.—They seemed to be nearly dressed alike.—(937) I wished that any one would hang me a hundred times.

(938) The women contributed all their rings and jewels voluntarily

to assist the government.—He determined to invite back the king, and to call together his friends.—(938) Having not known or having not considered the measures proposed, he failed of success.

(940) Theism can only be opposed to polytheism.—By greatness I do not only mean the bulk of any single object, but the distinctness of a whole view.—Only you have I known of all the nations of the earth.—In promoting the public good, we only discharge our duty.—He only read one book, not two.—He read the book only, but did not keep it.—He only read the book, but not the letter.—He chiefly spoke of virtue, not of vice.—He only reads English, not French.

(941) Scholars should be taught to carefully scrutinize the sentiments advanced in the books they read.—To make this sentence perspicuous, it will be necessary to entirely remodel it.

## Construction of Conjunctions.

**944. RULE XIX.**—*Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences* (561).

**945.** Words of the *same class*, having a *similar relation* to another word to which they belong, are connected by a conjunction. Thus—

1. *Nouns or pronouns* ; as, “*James and John and I are here.*”
2. *Adjectives* ; as, “*A prudent, brave, and honorable man.*”
3. *Verbs* ; as, “*Cæsar came, and saw, and conquered.*”
4. *Adverbs*, or adverbs and adjuncts ; as, “*He won the prize fairly and honorably,*” or “*fairly and with honor,*” or *with fairness and with honor.*”
5. *Prepositions* ; as, “*To and from the city.—Up and down the hill.*”

**946.** *Verbs* connected have the same *subject* ; as, “*James reads and writes.*”

**947.** *Nouns* or pronouns connected in the *nominative* case, either as subjects or attributes, are related as such to the *same verb* ; as, “*John and James are cousins.*”—“*He is a gentleman and a scholar.*”

**948.** *Nouns* or pronouns connected in the *possessive* case limit the *same noun* ; as, “*John’s and James’s books.*”

**949.** Nouns or pronouns, connected in the *objective case*, are the object of the *same* verb or preposition, as, "He studies *grammar* and *logic*."—"Give the books to *him* and *me*."

**950.** When nominatives belong to *different* verbs, or verbs to *different* nominatives, the conjunction *connects the sentences*, not the words; as, "*John reads* and *James writes*."

**951.** *Single sentences* or clauses are connected by conjunctions, so as to form one *compound* sentence; as, "*I said that ye are gods*; but *ye shall die*."

**952.** *Similar sentences*, whether dependent or independent, are connected by the conjunctions *and, or, nor, but, yet*, etc.

**953.** *Dependent clauses* are connected with their leading clauses by such conjunctions, or other connective words, as may properly indicate the relation intended (962, 963).

**954.** Conjunctions are frequently *understood* between the words or sentences connected; as, "*Cæsar came, saw, and conquered*."—"The *men, women, and children*, were present."—"It is the part of those that are great, to give; of those that are poor, to ask."—"Learning collects materials; wisdom applies them."

### *Special Rules.*

**955.** RULE 1.—*Conjunctions connect the same moods and tenses of verbs, and the same cases of nouns and pronouns*; as, "*Do good, and seek peace*."—"Honor thy father and mother."

[This rule applies to the *infinitive* and *participles*.]

**956.** Verbs of the same *mood* and *tense*, under this rule, are generally also in the *same form* (475); as, "*He reads and writes*"—not, *does write*.

**957.** Verbs in different clauses, connected by a conjunction, but having a different construction, may be in different moods and tenses; as, "*I read that I may learn*."

**958.** When two or more verbs in the *compound tenses*, or in the progressive or emphatic form, or in the passive voice, are connected, the *auxiliary* expressed with the first may be *understood to the rest*; as, "*He can neither read nor write*."—"Diligence *should be commended and rewarded*." Still, however, the repetition of the auxiliary is often more emphatic; as, "*They shall come, and they shall declare his truth*."

**959.** Verbs of the same mood, tense, or form, connected as a com-

pound predicate (627), have the *subject* expressed with the first and *understood* to the rest ; as, “*Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.*”  
But—

**960.** When verbs connected are *not* of the same mood, tense, or form, and especially if *contrast* or opposition, expressed by *but, though, yet*, is intended, the nominative is frequently repeated ; as, “*He came, but he would not stay.*” But still—

**961.** This is to be regarded only as a general direction, in accordance with, perhaps, the majority of cases, but to which, as a rule, there are *many exceptions*. The object aimed at is to secure *euphony* and *perspicuity* ; and when these are preserved without repeating the subject, it may be omitted ; as, “*The two charges had been, and still are, united in one person.*”—*North British Review*.

**962.** After expressions implying *doubt, fear, or denial*, the conjunction *that* is properly used—not *lest, but, but that* ; as, “*I do not doubt that he is honest.*”—“*I am afraid that he will die.*” Also, *what* should never be used for *that*. Thus, “*He will not believe but what I am to blame,*” should be, “*but that I am to blame.*”

**963. RULE 2.**—*Certain words in the antecedent clause of a sentence require corresponding connectives in the subsequent one ; thus :—*

1. In clauses or words *simply connected*—

*Both* requires *and* (569) ; as, “*Both he and I came.*”

*Either* ——— *or* (570) ; as, “*Either he or I will come.*”

*Neither* ——— *nor* (570) ; as, “*Neither he nor I came.*”

*Whether* ——— *or* ; as, “*Whether he or I came.*”

*Though* ——— *yet* ; as, “*Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.*”

*Not only* ——— *but also* ; as, “*Not only he but also his brother goes.*”

2. In clauses connected so as to imply *comparison*—

The *comparative degree* requires *than* ; as, “*He is taller than I.*”

*Other* requires *than* ; as, “*It is no other than he.*”

*Else* ——— *than* ; as, “*What else do you expect than this ?*”

*As* ——— *as* (expressing *equality*) ; as, “*He is as tall as I am.*”

*As* ——— *so* (expressing *equality*) ; as, “*As the day is, so shall thy strength be.*”



- So** requires *as* (with a negative, expressing *inequality*); as, "He is not *so* learned *as* his brother."
- So** ——— *that* (expressing *consequence*); as, "He is *so* weak *that* he can not walk."
- Such** ——— *as* (expressing *similarity*); as, "He or *such as* he."
- Such** ——— *that* (with a finite verb, to express a *consequence*); as, "The difference is *such that* all will perceive it."

For *as* and *so* in comparison, see 531. For *as*, sometimes regarded as a relative, see 271; as a connective of words in apposition, 674. For the infinitive after *so—as*, see 884.

964. *And, or, nor*, do not require the corresponding antecedent, and *though* does not always require *yet*. By poetic license (1048, 6), *or* and *nor* are sometimes used as antecedents, instead of *either, neither* (570).

965. In sentences *implying comparison*, there is commonly an *ellipsis* in the second member, after *than* and *as*; "My punishment is greater than [*that is which*] I can bear."—"My punishment is as great as [*that is which*] I can bear." And sometimes in sentences not implying comparison, after *though* and *if*; as, "Though [*it is*] coarse it is good."—"He is kind, if [*he is*] sincere" (978, 7).

966. A *relative* after *than* is put in the *objective* case; as, "Satan, than *whom* none higher sat" (766, 2). This anomaly may be regarded as a case of simple *enallage* (1044, 4).

967. RULE 3.—When a *subsequent clause* or part of a sentence is *common* to two different but connected antecedent clauses, it must be equally applicable to both; as, "That work always has been, and always will be, *admired*."—"He is as tall, though not so handsome, *as his brother*."

968. When this rule is violated, the *correction* is made, either—

1. By altering one of the antecedent clauses, so that the subsequent may be applicable to both. Thus, "The story has and will be believed," is not correct, because, though we can say, *will be believed*, we can not say, *has been believed*. It should be, "The story has been, and will be believed," or—

2. If this can not be done, we may *complete the construction* of the *first part* by annexing its appropriate subsequent, and leave

the subsequent of the second understood. Thus, "He was more beloved, but not so much admired, as Cynthio," is not correct, because we can not say, "He was more beloved as Cynthio." It should be, "He was more beloved than Cynthio, but not so much admired."

969. The principle of this rule applies to the appropriate *selection* of words, as well as to their *construction*. Thus, "This doctrine is founded and consistent with the truth," should be, "founded *upon* and consistent *with*," etc.

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, point out the conjunctions, the words or sentences connected by them—see whether they correspond, according to the rules, and if not, correct, and give a reason for the change.

(955) He reads and wrote well.—Anger glances into the breast of a wise man, but will rest only in the bosom of fools.—If he understand the subject, and attends to it, he can scarcely fail of success.—Enjoying health, and to live in peace, are great blessings.—Be more anxious to acquire knowledge than about showing it.

You and me are great friends.—This is a small matter between you and I.—My father and him are very intimate.—He is taller than me; but I am older than him.

(956) He reads and writeth well.—He reads and does write well.—He reads and is writing well.—Does he not read and writes well?—Earth hath her solitudes, and so has life.

(958) He can neither read nor can write.—I will come and will see you, and will tell you the whole story.

(960) Can these persons consent to such a proposal, and will consent to it?—How distinguished for talents he is, and how useful might be!—He could command his temper, though would not.

(962) I do not deny but he has merit.—They were afraid lest you would be offended.—We were apprehensive lest some accident had happened to him.—We can not deny but what he was ill-treated.

(963, 1) It is neither cold or hot.—It is so clear as I need not explain it.—The relations are so uncertain, as that they require much examination.—The one is equally deserving as the other.—I must be so candid to own that I have been mistaken.—He was as angry as he could not speak.—Though he slay me, so will I trust in him.—He must go himself, or send a servant.—There is no condition so secure as can not admit of change.—He is not so eminent and as much esteemed as he thinks himself to be.

## Connection of Tenses.

**908. RULE XVII.**—*In the use of verbs, and words that, in point of time, relate to each other, the order of time must be observed*; as, "I have known him these many years"—not, "I know him these many years;" nor, "I knew him these many years."

**909. REMARK.**—The particular *tense* necessary to be used must *depend upon the sense*, and no rules can be given that will apply to all cases. But it may be proper to observe—

**910.** *What is always true* must be expressed in the *present tense*; as, "The stoics believed that 'all crimes are equal'" (403).

**911.** The *present-perfect*, and not the present tense should be used in connection with words denoting an *extent* of time continued to the present; thus, "They *continue* with me now three days," should be, "*have continued*" (407).

**912.** The *present-perfect tense* ought *never* to be used in connection with words which express *past* time; thus, "I have *formerly* mentioned his attachment to study," should be, "I *formerly* mentioned," etc.

**913.** To express an event *simply as past*, without relation to any other point of time than the present, or as taking place at a certain past time mentioned, the *past tense* is used; as, "God created the world."—"In the beginning, God created the world." Exercises in (912) are examples.

**914.** When we wish to represent an event as *past at* or *before* a certain past time referred to, the verb must be put in the *past-perfect tense*. Thus, when we say, "The vessel *had arrived* at nine o'clock," we mean, at nine o'clock the arriving of the vessel was *past*. But when we say, "The vessel *arrived* at nine o'clock," we mean, the arriving of the vessel was then *present*.

**915.** It is always essential to the use of this tense that the event be *past* at the time referred to. It is proper to notice here, also, that, in pointing out the time of a past event, two points or periods of time are often mentioned,—the one for the purpose of *ascertaining the other*. Thus, "We arrived an *hour* before *sunset*." Here the past-perfect is not used, though the arrival is represented as past before a past time

mentioned, viz., *sunset*, because *sunset* is not the time referred to, but is mentioned in order to *describe* that time; and at the time described, the event of *arriving* was not past, but present. If in this example we omit the word "hour," and merely say "*before sunset*," the construction will be the same. This will show that it is correct to say, "Before I went to France I visited England," because the visiting of England is represented as present, and not past, at the time indicated by the word *before*. But if the event mentioned is represented as *past* at the time indicated by the word *before*, or if the sentence is so arranged that only one point of past time is indicated at which the event referred to is past, the *past-perfect* must be used; as, "They *had arrived* before we sailed."—"They arrived after we *had sailed*."—"I *had visited* England when we returned to America."

916. The *present* and the *past* of the auxiliaries *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, should *never be* associated in the *same sentence*; and care must be taken that the subsequent verb be expressed in the same tense with the antecedent verb (844); thus, "I *may*, or *can* do it now, if I *choose*."—"I *might* or *could* do it it now, if I *chose*."—"I *shall* or *will* do it when I *can*."—"I *may* do it if I *can*."—"I *once could* do it, but I *would* not."—"I *would* have done it then, but I *could* not."—"I *mention* it to him that he *may* stop if he *choose*."—"I *mentioned* it to him that he *might* stop if he *chose*."—"I *have mentioned* it to him, that he *may* stop."—"I *had mentioned* it to him that he *might* stop."—"I *had mentioned* it to him that he *might have stopped*, *had he chosen*."

917. In dependent clauses, the *past-perfect indicative* or *potential* is used to express an event antecedent to, but never contemporary with, or subsequent to, that expressed by a verb in the past tense in the leading clause. "Thus, we can say, "I *believed* he had done it," but not, "I *hoped* he had done it;" because *belief* may refer to what is past, but *hope* always refers to something future. See also the infinitive (920, 921).

918. When *should* is used instead of *ought* to express *present* duty (868), it may be followed by the present or present-perfect; as, "You *should* study, that you *may* become learned."

919. The *indicative present* is frequently used after the words *when*, *till*, *before*, *as soon as*, *after*, to express the relative time of a *future action* (406); as, "When he *comes* he will be welcome." When placed before the *present-perfect indicative*, these words denote the completion of a future action or event; as, "He will never be better *till* he *has felt* the pangs of poverty."

**920.** A verb in the *infinitive* mood must be in the *present tense* (446), when it expresses what is *contemporary* in point of time with the principal verb, or *subsequent* to it; as, "He appeared *to be* a man of letters."—"The apostles were determined *to preach* the gospel." Hence, verbs denoting *hope, desire, intention, or command*, must be followed by the *present infinitive*, and not by the *perfect* (451).

**921.** But the *perfect infinitive* must be used to express what is *antecedent* to the time of the principal verb; as, "Romulus is said *to have founded* Rome.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

(910) The doctor said that fever always produced thirst.—The philosopher said that heat always expanded metals.

(911) I know the family more than twenty years.—I am now at school six months.—My brother was sick four weeks, and is no better.—He tells lies long enough.

(912) He has lately lost an only son.—He has been formerly very disorderly.—I have been at London last year, and seen the king last summer.—I have once or twice told the story to our friend before he went away.

(914) After Columbus made his preparations, he set out on his voyage of discovery.—When we finished our lessons, we went out to play.—He that was dead sat up and began to speak.—It was a strange thing to me, for I never saw such a thing before.

(916) I should be obliged to him if he will gratify me in that particular.—Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.—Be wise and good, that you might be happy.—He was told his danger, that he may shun it.

(917) We had hoped that Lord Nugent would have been able to collect much new and interesting information.—Columbus hoped that he would have rendered the natives tributary to the crown of Spain.—We expected that they would have come.

(918) He should study diligently, that he might become learned.—We should respect those persons, because they continue long attached to us.

(919) We shall welcome him when he shall arrive.—As soon as he shall return we will recommence our studies.

(920) From the little conversation I had with him, he appeared to have been a man of learning.—Our friends intended to have met us.—He was afraid he would have died.

(931) Kirkstall Abbey, now in ruins, appears to be an extensive building.—Lycurgus, the Spartan law-giver, is said to be born in the nine hundred and twenty-sixth year before Christ.

## Construction of Adverbs.

**922. RULE XVIII.**—*Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs*; as, “John *speaks distinctly*; he is *remarkably diligent*, and reads *very correctly*.”

[See Etymology of Adverbs, 523, etc.]

**923.** A few *adverbs* sometimes *modify nouns or pronouns* (526); as “*Not only* the men, but the women *also*, were present.”—“I, *even I*, do bring a flood.”—*Gen.* vi. 17.

**924.** An *adverb* sometimes *modifies a preposition*, and sometimes an adjunct or clause of a sentence (525); as, “He sailed *nearly round* the globe.”—“*Just below* the ear.”—“*Verily*, I say unto you.”

### *Special Rules.*

**925. RULE 1.**—*Adverbs should not be used as adjectives, nor adjectives as adverbs* (686, 687).

Thus, “The *above* [*preceding*] extract.”—“It seems *strangely* [*strange*].”—“We arrived *safely* [*safe*].”—“He writes *beautiful* [*beautifully*].”

REMARK—Though it is perhaps never necessary to use an adverb as an adjective, yet the authority of good writers has so far sanctioned the violation of this rule in certain cases, that remonstrance would be unavailing. Thus, such phrases as the following are common: “The *above* rule;”—“the *then* ministry;”—“for *very* age;”—“the *hither* side;”—“thine *often* infirmities,” and the like. Adverbs so used should, of course, be reckoned adjectives, and parsed as such.

**926.** The adverbs *hence, thence, whence*, meaning *from this place, from that place, from which place*, properly *should not* have

*from* before them, because it is implied. But the practice of the best writers has so sanctioned the use of it, that the omission of it would now sometimes appear stiff and affected.

927. After *verbs of motion*, the adverbs *hither, thither, whither*, are now used only in solemn style. In ordinary discourse, *here, there*, and *where*, are used instead of them; as, "We came *here*." "They walked *there*."—"Where did he go?"

928. *Where* should *not be used* for *in which*, unless the reference is to *place*. Thus, "They framed a protestation, *where* [better, *in which*] they repeated their former claims."

929. The adverbs *now, then, when, where*, in such phrases as *till now, till then, since when, to where*, etc., are sometimes used by good writers as *nouns*. This, however, is rare in prose and should not be imitated. In poetry it is more common (1048).

930. Of this character are the expressions *at once, far from hence*, etc.; but these are now established *idioms*, and in parsing are regarded as *one word* (535, 6).

931. *There*, properly an adverb of place, is often used as an introductory *expletive*; as, "*There* came to the beach a poor exile" (529).

932. RULE 2.—*Two negatives in the same clause are equivalent to an affirmative, and should not be used unless affirmation is intended*; as, "I can not drink *no* [any] more," or "I can drink *no* more."

REMARK.—But a *repetition* of the negation by independent negative words or phrases, or by transferring the word *neither* to the end of the clause, usually *strengthens* the negation; as, "There is *none* righteous, *no, not one*."—"He will *never* consent, *not he, nor I neither*."

933. One negative is sometimes connected with another implied in the negative prefixes *dis, un, im, in, il, ir*, etc.; as, "You are *not unacquainted* with his merits," that is, "You *are* acquainted," etc. In this way a pleasing variety of expression is sometimes produced. But the word *only*, with the negative, *preserves the negation*; as, "He was *not only* illiberal, but even covetous."

934. The adverbs *nay, no, yea, yes*, often stand *alone* as a negative or an affirmative answer to a question; as, "Will he go?"—"No"—"He will not go."—"Is he at home?"—"Yes"—"He is at

home." *Amen* is an affirmative verb, equivalent to "*Be it so,*" or "*May it be so.*"

935. *No*, before a *noun*, is an *adjective*; as, "*No man.*" Before an *adjective* or adverb in the comparative degree, it is an *adverb*; as, "*No taller.*"—" *No sooner.*" In all other cases the proper negative is *not*; as, "*He will not come.*"—"Whether he come or *not.*"

### *Position of the Adverb.*

936. RULE 3.—*Adverbs are for the most part placed before adjectives, after a verb in the simple form, and after the first auxiliary in the compound form*; as, "*He is very attentive, behaves well, and is much esteemed.*"

937. This rule applies generally to adverbial *adjunct phrases* as well as to adverbs (825).

938. This is to be considered only as a *general rule*, to which there are *many exceptions*. Indeed, no rule for the position of the adverb can be given which is not liable to exceptions. That order is the best which conveys the meaning with most precision. In order to this, the adverb is *sometimes* placed *before the verb*, or at some distance after it.

939. *Never, often, always, sometimes*, generally *precede* the verb. *Not*, with the participle or infinitive, should generally be placed *before* it (500).

940. The improper position of the adverb *only* often occasions ambiguity. This will generally be avoided when it refers to a sentence or clause, by placing it at the *beginning* of that sentence or clause; when it refers to a *predicate*, by placing it *before* the predicated term; and when it refers to a *subject*, by placing it *after* its name or description; as, "*Only* acknowledge thine iniquity."—"The thoughts of his heart are *only* evil."—"Take nothing for your journey but a staff *only.*" These observations will generally be applicable to the words *merely, solely, chiefly, first, at least*, and perhaps to a few others.

941. In prose, *to*, the sign of the infinitive, or rather a part of it, should *never be separated* by placing an adverb immediately after it. Thus, "*They are accustomed to carefully study their lessons,*" should be "*to study carefully,*" or "*carefully to study,*" etc.

942. The adverb *enough* is commonly placed *after the ad-*



*fective* which it modifies; as, "A large *enough* house"—"A house large *enough* for all."

943. *Ever* and *never* are sometimes improperly confounded; thus, "Seldom or *ever*," should be "Seldom or *never*," or "Seldom, if *ever*." *Ever so*, referring to quantity or degree, means *in whatsoever degree*. Hence, "Charming *never so* wisely," should be "*ever so* wisely." So, "*Ever so* much"—"*ever so* wise," etc.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

[As adverbs are uninflected, mistakes are liable to be made chiefly in their position, or in using as adverbs words that are not so, or in using adverbs where other words are required.]

Correct the errors in the following :—

(925) They hoped for a soon and prosperous issue to the war.—The then emperor was noted for his cruelty.—She walks graceful.—He spoke eloquent.—She did that work good.—Our friends arrived safely.—His expressions sounded harshly.—She is a remarkable pretty girl.—My foot slipped, and I pretty near fell down.

(926) He departed from thence into a desert place.—I will send thee far from hence to the Gentiles.—From hence! away!

(927) Where art thou gone?—And he said unto me, "Come up here."—The city is near, oh! let me escape there.—Where I am, there ye can not come.

(928) He drew up a petition, where he represented his own merit.—The condition where I found him was deplorable.—He went to London last year, since when I have not seen him.

(932) I can not do no more.—He will never be no taller.—He did not say nothing at all.—I have received no information on the subject, neither from him nor from his friend.—I can not see to write no more.—Nothing never can justify ingratitude.—(935) Be so kind as to tell me whether he will do it or no.

(936) We should not be overcome totally by present events.—We always should prefer our duty to our pleasure.—It is impossible continually to be at work.—Not only he found her employed, but pleased and tranquil also.—In the proper disposition of adverbs, the ear carefully requires to be consulted as well as the sense.—They seemed to be nearly dressed alike.—(937) I wished that any one would hang me a hundred times.

(938) The women contributed all their rings and jewels voluntarily

to assist the government.—He determined to invite back the king, and to call together his friends.—(938) Having not known or having not considered the measures proposed, he failed of success.

(940) Theism can only be opposed to polytheism.—By greatness I do not only mean the bulk of any single object, but the distinctness of a whole view.—Only you have I known of all the nations of the earth.—In promoting the public good, we only discharge our duty.—He only read one book, not two.—He read the book only, but did not keep it.—He only read the book, but not the letter.—He chiefly spoke of virtue, not of vice.—He only reads English, not French.

(941) Scholars should be taught to carefully scrutinize the sentiments advanced in the books they read.—To make this sentence periphrastic, it will be necessary to entirely remodel it.

## Construction of Conjunctions.

**944. RULE XIX.**—*Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences* (561).

**945.** Words of the *same class*, having a *similar relation* to another word to which they belong, are connected by a conjunction. Thus—

1. *Nouns or pronouns* ; as, “*James and John and I* are here.”
2. *Adjectives* ; as, “*A prudent, brave, and honorable* man.”
3. *Verbs* ; as, “*Cæsar came, and saw, and conquered.*”
4. *Adverbs*, or adverbs and adjuncts ; as, “*He won the prize fairly and honorably,*” or “*fairly and with honor,*” or *with fairness and with honor.*”
5. *Prepositions* ; as, “*To and from* the city.—“*Up and down* the hill.”

**946.** *Verbs* connected have the same *subject* ; as, “*James reads and writes.*”

**947.** *Nouns* or pronouns connected in the *nominative* case, either as subjects or attributes, are related as such to the *same verb* ; as, “*John and James* are cousins.”—“*He is a gentleman and a scholar.*”

**948.** *Nouns* or pronouns connected in the *possessive* case limit the *same noun* ; as, “*John's and James's* books.”

**949.** Nouns or pronouns, connected in the *objective* case, are the object of the *same* verb or preposition, as, "He studies *grammar* and *logic*."—"Give the books to *him* and *me*."

**950.** When nominatives belong to *different* verbs, or verbs to *different* nominatives, the conjunction *connects the sentences*, not the words; as, "*John reads* and *James writes*."

**951.** *Single sentences* or clauses are connected by conjunctions, so as to form one *compound* sentence; as, "*I said that ye are gods*; but *ye shall die*."

**952.** *Similar sentences*, whether dependent or independent, are connected by the conjunctions *and, or, nor, but, yet*, etc.

**953.** *Dependent clauses* are connected with their leading clauses by such conjunctions, or other connective words, as may properly indicate the relation intended (962, 963).

**954.** Conjunctions are frequently *understood* between the words or sentences connected; as, "*Cæsar came, saw, and conquered*."—"The *men, women, and children*, were present."—"It is the part of those that are great, to give; of those that are poor, to ask."—"Learning collects materials; wisdom applies them."

### *Special Rules.*

**955.** RULE 1.—*Conjunctions connect the same moods and tenses of verbs, and the same cases of nouns and pronouns*; as, "*Do good, and seek peace*."—"Honor thy *father and mother*."

[This rule applies to the *infinitive* and *participles*.]

**956.** Verbs of the same *mood* and *tense*, under this rule, are generally also in the *same form* (475); as, "He *reads* and *writes*" —not, *does write*.

**957.** Verbs in different clauses, connected by a conjunction, but having a different construction, may be in different moods and tenses; as, "I *read* that I *may learn*."

**958.** When two or more verbs in the *compound tenses*, or in the progressive or emphatic form, or in the passive voice, are connected, the *auxiliary* expressed with the first may be *understood to the rest*; as, "He *can* neither *read* nor *write*."—"Diligence *should be commended and rewarded*." Still, however, the repetition of the auxiliary is often more emphatic; as, "They shall come, and *they shall* declare his truth."

**959.** Verbs of the same mood, tense, or form, connected as a com-

pound predicate (627), have the *subject* expressed with the first and *understood* to the rest ; as, "Cæsar *came, saw, and conquered.*"  
But—

**960.** When verbs connected are *not* of the same mood, tense, or form, and especially if *contrast* or opposition, expressed by *but, though, yet*, is intended, the nominative is frequently repeated ; as, "He came, but *he* would not stay." But still—

**961.** This is to be regarded only as a general direction, in accordance with, perhaps, the majority of cases, but to which, as a rule, there are *many exceptions*. The object aimed at is to secure *euphony* and *perspicuity* ; and when these are preserved without repeating the subject, it may be omitted ; as, "The two charges *had been*, and still *are*, united in one person."—*North British Review*.

**962.** After expressions implying *doubt, fear, or denial*, the conjunction *that* is properly used—not *lest, but, but that* ; as, "I do not doubt *that* he is honest."—"I am afraid *that* he will die." Also, *what* should never be used for *that*. Thus, "He will not believe but *what* I am to blame," should be, "but *that* I am to blame."

**963. RULE 2.**—*Certain words in the antecedent clause of a sentence require corresponding connectives in the subsequent one ; thus :—*

1. In clauses or words *simply connected*—

*Both* requires *and* (569) ; as, "*Both* he *and* I came."

*Either* ——— *or* (570) ; as, "*Either* he *or* I will come."

*Neither* ——— *nor* (570) ; as, "*Neither* he *nor* I came."

*Whether* ——— *or* ; as, "*Whether* he *or* I came."

*Though* ——— *yet* ; as, "*Though* he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him."

*Not only* ——— *but also* ; as, "*Not only* he *but also* his brother goes."

2. In clauses connected so as to imply *comparison*—

The *comparative degree* requires *than* ; as, "He is *taller than* I."

*Other* requires *than* ; as, "It is no *other than* he."

*Else* ——— *than* ; as, "What *else* do you expect *than* this?"

*As* ——— *as* (expressing *equality*) ; as, "He is *as* tall *as* I am."

*As* ——— *so* (expressing *equality*) ; as, "*As* the day is, *so* shall thy strength be."

- So** requires *as* (with a negative, expressing *inequality*); as, "He is not *so* learned *as* his brother."
- So** ——— *that* (expressing *consequence*); as, "He is *so* weak *that* he can not walk."
- Such** ——— *as* (expressing *similarity*); as, "He or *such as* he."
- Such** ——— *that* (with a finite verb, to express a *consequence*); as, "The difference is *such that* all will perceive it."

For *as* and *so* in comparison, see 531. For *as*, sometimes regarded as a relative, see 271; as a connective of words in apposition, 674. For the infinitive after *so—as*, see 884.

964. *And, or, nor*, do not require the corresponding antecedent, and *though* does not always require *yet*. By poetic license (1048, 6), *or* and *nor* are sometimes used as antecedents, instead of *either, neither* (570).

965. In sentences *implying comparison*, there is commonly an *ellipsis* in the second member, after *than* and *as*; "My punishment is greater than [*that is which*] I can bear."—"My punishment is as great as [*that is which*] I can bear." And sometimes in sentences not implying comparison, after *though* and *if*; as, "Though [*it is*] coarse it is good."—"He is kind, if [*he is*] sincere" (978, 7).

966. A *relative* after *than* is put in the *objective* case; as, "Satan, than *whom* none higher sat" (766, 2). This anomaly may be regarded as a case of simple *enallage* (1044, 4).

967. RULE 3.—When a *subsequent clause or part of a sentence is common to two different but connected antecedent clauses, it must be equally applicable to both*; as, "That work always has been, and always will be, *admired*."—"He is as tall, though not so handsome, *as his brother*."

968. When this rule is violated, the *correction* is made, either—

1. By altering one of the antecedent clauses, so that the subsequent may be applicable to both. Thus, "The story has and will be believed," is not correct, because, though we can say, *will be believed*, we can not say, *has be believed*. It should be, "The story has been, and will be believed," or—

2. If this can not be done, we may *complete the construction of the first part by annexing its appropriate subsequent, and leave*

the subsequent of the second understood. Thus, "He was more beloved, but not so much admired, as Cynthio," is not correct, because we can not say, "He was more beloved as Cynthio." It should be, "He was more beloved than Cynthio, but not so much admired."

969. The principle of this rule applies to the appropriate *selection* of words, as well as to their *construction*. Thus, "This doctrine is founded and consistent with the truth," should be, "founded *upon* and consistent *with*," etc.

## EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, point out the conjunctions, the words or sentences connected by them—see whether they correspond, according to the rules, and if not, correct, and give a reason for the change.

(955) He reads and wrote well.—Anger glances into the breast of a wise man, but will rest only in the bosom of fools.—If he understand the subject, and attends to it, he can scarcely fail of success.—Enjoying health, and to live in peace, are great blessings.—Be more anxious to acquire knowledge than about showing it.

You and me are great friends.—This is a small matter between you and I.—My father and him are very intimate.—He is taller than me; but I am older than him.

(956) He reads and writeth well.—He reads and does write well.—He reads and is writing well.—Does he not read and writes well?—Earth hath her solitudes, and so has life.

(958) He can neither read nor can write.—I will come and will see you, and will tell you the whole story.

(960) Can these persons consent to such a proposal, and will consent to it?—How distinguished for talents he is, and how useful might be!—He could command his temper, though would not.

(962) I do not deny but he has merit.—They were afraid lest you would be offended.—We were apprehensive lest some accident had happened to him.—We can not deny but what he was ill-treated.

(963, 1) It is neither cold or hot.—It is so clear as I need not explain it.—The relations are so uncertain, as that they require much examination.—The one is equally deserving as the other.—I must be so candid to own that I have been mistaken.—He was as angry as he could not speak.—Though he slay me, so will I trust in him.—He must go himself, or send a servant.—There is no condition so secure as can not admit of change.—He is not so eminent and as much esteemed as he thinks himself to be.

(963, 2) He has little more of the scholar besides the name.—Be ready to succor such persons who need thy assistance.—They had no sooner risen but they applied themselves to their studies.—These savage people seemed to have no other element but war.—He gained nothing further by his speech but only to be commended for his eloquence.—This is none other but the gate of Paradise.

(967) I always have, and I always shall be of this opinion.—He is bolder, but not so wise as his companion. Sincerity is as valuable, and even more so than knowledge.—Will it be urged that these books are as old or even older than tradition?—This book is preferable and cheaper than the other.

---

### Interjections.

**970. RULE XX.**—*Interjections have no grammatical connection with the other words in a sentence* (556).

**971.** After interjections, pronouns of the *first* person are commonly in the *objective* case ; those of the *second*, in the *nominative* ; as, “ Ah me ! ” — “ O thou ! ”

**972.** In neither of these, however, does the case depend on the interjection. The objective is commonly thought to be governed by a word understood ; thus, “ Ah [*pity*] me ! ” — “ Ah [*what will become of*] me ! ” The nominative is commonly the nominative of the person addressed (773).

---

### General Rule of Syntax.

**973.** *In every sentence, the words employed, and the order in which they are arranged, should be such as clearly and properly to express the idea intended ; and at the same time, all the parts of the sentence should correspond, and a regular and dependent construction be preserved throughout.*

**974.** This may be regarded as a general rule, applicable to every case, and therefore comprehending all the preceding. Though these are so full and minute as to embrace almost every thing belonging to the proper construction of sentences, yet there will sometimes occur instances of impropriety in the use, and arrangement, and connection of words, for the avoiding or correcting of which no very specific rule can be given.

**975.** Among the evils to be guarded against, under this general rule, are the following :—

1. The use of words which *do not* correctly or properly *convey the idea* intended, or which *convey another* with equal propriety.
2. The arrangement of words and clauses in such a way that their *relation* to other words and clauses is *doubtful*, or difficult to be perceived.
3. The *separating of adjuncts* (541) from *their principals*, and placing them so that they may be joined to words to which they do not belong (832).
4. The separating of *relative clauses* improperly *from their antecedents* (755, 759).
5. Using injudiciously, or too frequently, the *third personal possessive pronoun*, especially in indirect discourse (1129).

#### EXERCISES.

The following sentences are not grammatically incorrect, but from some of the causes mentioned above, are *obscure, inelegant, ambiguous, or unintelligible*. Let the pupil point out the error and correct it, and give a reason for the correction.

The son said to his father that he had sinned against heaven.—A farmer went to a lawyer, and told him that his bull had gored his ox.—The Greeks, fearing to be surrounded on all sides, wheeled about, and halted with the river on their backs.—Nor was Philip wanting to corrupt Demosthenes, as he had most of the leading men of Greece.—Parmenio had served, with great fidelity, Philip the father of Alexander, as well as himself, for whom he first opened the way into Asia.—Belisarius was general of all the forces under Justinian the First, a man of rare valor.—Lysias promised his father never to abandon his friends.—Carthage was demolished to the ground, so



that we are unable to say where it stood at this day.—Thus ended the war with Antiochus, twelve years after the second Punic war, and two after it had been begun.—Claudius was canonized among the gods, who scarcely deserved the name of a man.

**976.** Another class of improprieties arises from the improper *omission of words*, by which the grammatical construction of a sentence is broken up. As a general rule, the fewer the words by which we express our ideas, the better, provided the meaning is clearly brought out. This may often be done without using all the words necessary to the full grammatical form of a sentence; and hence, as the tendency always is to abbreviate speech, such words as can be spared, according to the usage of the language, are properly omitted. This omission is called

### Ellipsis (1044, 1).

Respecting the use of this figure, nothing more definite can be laid down than what is contained in the following

#### *Special Rules.*

**977. RULE 1.**—*An ellipsis, or omission of words, is admissible when they can be supplied by the mind with such certainty and readiness as not to obscure the sense.* Thus,

Instead of saying, "He was a learned man, and he was a wise man, and he was a good man," we may say, "He was a learned, wise, and good man."

**978.** According to common usage, an *ellipsis* of the different parts of speech is *allowed* in the following cases, viz. :—

1. *Noun and Pronoun.*—When two or more things are asserted of the same subject, the noun or pronoun is expressed before the first verb, and omitted before the rest. Also, when the same noun or pronoun is the object of several verbs, it is omitted after all except the last; as, "I love, fear, and respect him," instead of, "I love *him*, I fear *him*, and I respect *him*."

2. A noun is frequently omitted after the comparative degree; as, "I will pull down my barns, and build greater [barns]."

3. When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, the noun is omitted after all except the last; as, "A great, wise, and good *man*," for "A great *man*, a wise *man*, and a good *man*."

4. *Adjective and Article*.—When an adjective qualifies two or more nouns, it is omitted before all except the first only; as, “*Good* qualities and actions.”—“*Happy* boys and girls.”—“He is an honest, learned, and well-bred man,” for “*an* honest, *a* learned, and *a* well-bred man.”

5. *Verbs*.—A verb is often omitted after its subject, preceded by the comparative degree; as, “He is wiser than I [*am*].”—“I am younger than he [*is*].”

6. When several clauses come together, having the same predicate verb, the verb is often expressed in the first, and omitted in the rest; as, “The Italians *have imitated* the Latins; the English, the Italians; and the Americans, the English.” Sometimes it is omitted in the first, and expressed in the last; as, “Not only men, but nations, *imitate* one another.”

7. The verb *to be*, with its subject, in dependent clauses, is often *omitted* after the connectives, *if, though, yet, when*, etc.; as, “Study, if [*it is*] neglected, becomes irksome.”—“Though [*he was*] poor, he was honest” (965).

8. In *poetry*, verbs which express *address* or *answer*, are often omitted; as, “To him the prince [*replied*].” Also, when the words connected readily indicate what the verb must be, if expressed; as, “I’ll *hence* to London.”—“I’ll *in*.”—“*Away*, old man!”—*Shaks.* “Up, up, Glenarkin!”—*W. Scott.*

9. The *verb* is often omitted in the *second clause* of a sentence *after the auxiliary*, when the same verb is used in the first clause; as, “You have read, but I have not [*read*].” Also, verbs connected in the same voice, mood, and tense, having the auxiliary with the first, omit it with the rest; as, “He *will be loved* and *respected* for his virtues.”

10. *Adverb*.—When an adverb modifies more words than one, it is placed only *with the last*; as, “He spoke and acted *gracefully*.”

11. *Preposition*.—When the same preposition connects two or more subsequent terms of a relation with *one antecedent term*, is it usually omitted before all *except the first*; as, “*Over* the hills and valleys.”—“*Through* the woods and wifds.”

12. *Conjunction*.—When *several words* and *clauses* come together in the same construction, the conjunction is sometimes omitted entirely, sometimes between each pair, and sometimes before all

except the last ; as, "He caused the blind to see, the lame to walk, the deaf to hear, the lepers to be cleansed."—"We ran hither and thither, seeking novelty *and* change, sympathy *and* pastime, communion *and* love."—"Youth is the season of joy, of bliss, of strength, *and* pride."

13. *Interjection*.—The interjections are never omitted ; but, in the expression of sudden emotion, all but the most important words are commonly omitted ; as, "Well done!" for, "*That is* well done!" Also, after interjections, there is often an ellipsis of the obvious word ; as, "O for a lodge," etc., that is, "O *how* I long for a lodge," etc.—"A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!" that is, "*Bring me* a horse. *I would give* my kingdom for a horse."

979. RULE 2.—*An ellipsis is not allowable, when it would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety ; as, "We speak that we do know," for that which, etc.*

980. In general, no word should be omitted by ellipsis, that is *necessary* to the usual construction or harmony of a sentence, or to render the meaning perspicuous.

981. Articles, pronouns, and prepositions, *should* always be *repeated* when the words with which they stand connected are used *emphatically*. Under such circumstances, even nouns, adjectives, and verbs, must often be repeated ; as, "Not only *the* year, but *the* day and *the* hour were appointed."

982. It is generally improper, except in poetry, to omit the *antecedent to a relative* ; and it is always so, to omit a relative when it is in the nominative.

#### EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

In the following sentences, omit such words as are not necessary to the sense :—

(978, 1) Cicero was an eloquent man, an able man, a generous man, and he was a truly patriotic man.—Avarice and cunning may gain an estate ; but avarice and cunning can not gain friends.—(978, 4) He has an affectionate brother and an affectionate sister.—(978, 6) Genuine virtue supposes our benevolence to be strengthened and to be confirmed by principle.—Perseverance in laudable pursuits will reward all our toils, and will produce effects beyond our calculation.—(978, 10) We often commend imprudently, as well as censure imprudently.—(978, 11) Changes are almost constantly taking place in men,

and in manners, in opinions and in customs, in private fortunes and in public conduct.—(978, 1, 6, 9) He is temperate, he is disinterested, he is benevolent.—He regards the truth, but thou dost not regard it.—We succeeded, but they did not succeed.

In the following sentences, supply the words improperly omitted, and state why they should be restored :—

(979) We are naturally inclined to praise who praise us, and to flatter who flatter us.—Who best can suffer best can do.—His honor, interest, religion, were all embarked in this undertaking.—Many days, and even weeks, pass away unimproved.—The captain had several men died in his ship.—That is a property most men have, or at least may attain.—This property has or will be sold.—It requires few talents to which most men are not born, or at least may not acquire.—The people of this country possess a healthy climate and soil.—I have purchased a house and orchard.

## SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

**983. Syntactical Parsing** includes *etymological*, and adds to it a statement of the *relation* in which words stand to each other, and the *rules* according to which they are combined in *phrases and sentences*.

Before parsing a sentence syntactically, it should *first* be *analyzed*, as directed (658), and exemplified (659).

### *Model of Syntactical Parsing.*

“The minutest plant or animal, if attentively examined, affords a thousand wonders, and obliges us to admire and adore the Omnipotent hand by which it was created.”

This sentence contains all the parts of speech except the *interjection*. It is *parsed* etymologically (581, 582), and *analyzed* (659, 7), which see. It may now be *parsed* syntactically, as follows :—

*The*..... is the DEFINITE ARTICLE; it belongs to *plant* or *animal* (711), and shows these words to be limited.—RULE III., 2, “The article *the* is put,” etc. (707).

*minutest*.... is an ADJECTIVE, compared here by *er* and *est*, superlative, and qualifies *plant* or *animal*.—RULE II., 1, “An adjective or participle,” etc. (676).

- plant*..... is a NOUN, neuter, in the nominative singular, the subject of *affords* and *obliges*.—RULE VI., "The subject of a finite verb," etc. (760).
- or*..... is a DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTION, distributive, connecting as alternates *plant* and *animal* (567).—RULE XIX., "Conjunctions connect," etc. (944).
- animal*..... is a NOUN, neuter, in the nominative singular—same as *plant*—and connected with it by *or*.
- if* ..... is a CONJUNCTION, continuative; it connects its clause with the preceding as a condition.—RULE XIX., "Conjunctions connect," etc. (944).
- it*..... (understood) is a third PERSONAL PRONOUN, neuter, in the nominative singular; it stands for *plant* or *animal*. RULE IV., 2, "When a pronoun refers," etc. (730); and is the subject of *is examined*.—RULE VI., "The subject of a finite verb," etc. (760).
- is examined*. is a VERB, transitive, regular,\* in the present indicative, passive, expressing an act done to its subject *it*, with which it agrees.—RULE VIII., "A verb agrees," etc. (776).
- attentively* .. is an ADVERB, derived from *attentive*, and compared by *more* and *most*; it modifies *is examined*.—RULE XVIII., "Adverbs modify," etc. (922).
- affords*..... is a VERB, transitive, regular; in the present indicative, active, third person singular; agrees with, and affirms of *plant* or *animal*.—RULE 3 under RULE VIII., "Two or more substantives singular," etc. (785).
- a*..... is the INDEFINITE ARTICLE, and belongs to *thousand*. It shows that the number is regarded as *one aggregate* (716).—RULE III., 1, "The article *a* or *an*," etc. (707, 726).
- thousand*.... is a NUMERAL ADJECTIVE, cardinal, qualifying *wonders*.—RULE II., 1, "An adjective or participle," etc. (676).
- wonders*.... is a NOUN, neuter, in the objective plural, the object of *affords*.—RULE X., "A substantive being the object," etc. (801).

---

\* *Conjugating* is here omitted for brevity, it being unnecessary, because the verb is mentioned as *regular* (491, note).

- and* ..... is a COPULATIVE CONJUNCTION ; it connects *affords* and *obliges*.—RULE XIX., “Conjunctions connect,” etc. (944).
- obliges*..... is the same as *affords*. See above.
- us*..... is a PERSONAL PRONOUN, first person, masculine or feminine, in the objective plural, the object of *obliges*.—RULE X. (801). It is at the same time the subject of *to admire* and *to adore*.—RULE 3 under RULE XV., “The infinitive as the subject,” etc. (872, 873).
- to admire* .. is a VERB, transitive, regular, in the present infinitive, active, governed by *obliges*.—RULE XV., “The infinitive mood is governed,” etc. (865).
- and* ..... is a COPULATIVE CONJUNCTION ; it connects *to admire* and *to adore*.—RULE XIX., “Conjunctions connect,” etc. (944).
- to adore*.... is the same in parsing and construction as *to admire*.
- the*..... is the DEFINITE ARTICLE ; it belongs to *hand*, and shows it to be limited.—RULE III., 2, “The article *the*,” etc. (707).
- Omnipotent*.. is an ADJECTIVE, not compared, because it does not admit of increase (223). It qualifies *hand*.—RULE II., 1, “An adjective or participle,” etc. (676).
- hand*..... is a NOUN, neuter, in the objective singular, object of *to admire* and *to adore*.—RULE X. (801).
- by*..... is a PREPOSITION ; it shows the relation between *which*, the subsequent term (538, 539), and *was created*, the antecedent term.—“A preposition is a word,” etc. (538).
- which*..... is a RELATIVE PRONOUN, neuter, in the objective singular ; refers to, and agrees with, *hand* as its antecedent.—RULE V., “The relative agrees,” etc. (742), and is the object of the relation expressed by the preposition *by*.—RULE XI., “A substantive being the object,” etc. (818). It connects its clause with *hand*, and describes it (644, 614, 5).
- it*..... is a PRONOUN, same as before ; is the subject of *was created*.—RULE VI., “The subject of a finite verb,” etc. (760).
- was created*.. is a VERB, transitive, regular, in the past indicative, passive, third person singular ; affirms of, and agrees with *it*.—RULE VIII., “A verb agrees,” etc. (776).

In the same manner, parse the other sentences analyzed (659); and analyze and parse the exercises following them (page 143), and any correct sentences from any good author.

### *Promiscuous Exercises*

#### ON THE RULES OF SYNTAX, ETC.

**§** In the preceding "Exercises to be Corrected," care has been taken to insert such examples only as can be corrected by the rule, or the observations under which they are placed, or by those which precede them. In the following "Promiscuous Exercises," no particular arrangement is observed. Every sentence contains one error, many of them two, and some of them three or more. Many of the errors, too, are such as are often made; and, on account of our familiarity with them, are not so readily noticed. For example, nobody would say, "*Him* writes." Some, perhaps, might say, "Here is the man whom everybody says is the writer of that letter;" and yet the error in both is the same, and violates Rule VI. In all these examples for correction, the object aimed at is to put the pupil in possession of the idea intended to be expressed—and the exercise for him is to express that idea grammatically, in the best manner. There can be no danger of imitating an expression which he is forewarned is wrong; while it will exercise his judgment to detect the error, test his knowledge of grammar, and be a profitable exercise in composition to put the sentence right.

All these exercises may first be corrected orally—showing wherein each is wrong, and why—correcting the error, and giving a reason for the change made. They may then be *written out in a corrected state*. After that, each sentence may be analyzed as directed (658), and then parsed syntactically as directed (983).

1.—1. Too great a variety of studies perplex and weaken the judgment.—2. I called to see you, but you was not at home.—3. To act with caution, but with steadiness and vigor, distinguish the manly character.—4. The train of our ideas are often interrupted.—5. They were both unfortunate, but neither of them were to blame.

2.—1. We arrived safely at our journey's end.—2. That is a matter of no consequence between you and I.—3. This should not happen between such friends as him and me.—4. Them that seek knowledge will find it.—5. Such are the men whom, we might suppose, know better.—6. Our welfare and security consists in unity. . 7.—All the world is spectators of your conduct.

3.—1. Nothing is more lovelier than virtue.—2. His associates in wickedness will not fail to mark the alteration of his conduct.—3. He is taller than me, but I am stronger than him.—4. Neither riches or beauty furnish solid peace and contentment.—5. The abuse of mercies ripen us for judgments.—6. John, William, and Henry's hats were stolen.—7. A mans manners frequently influence his fortune.—8. Much depends on this rule being observed.—9. Such will ever be the effect of youth associating with vicious companions.—10. Give to every one their due.

4.—1. He writes tolerable well.—2. Three months' notice are required to be given previous to a pupil's leaving of the school.—3. That rose smells sweetly.—4. He employed another friend of his father to assert his claim—[whose claim?].—5. A soul inspired with the love of truth will keep all his powers attentive to the pursuit of it.—6. It is the duty of every one to be careful of their reputation.—7. It is remarkable, his continual endeavors to serve us.—8. This mode of expression has been formerly in use.—9. He promised long ago, that he had attended to that matter.—10. He was expected to have arrived earlier.

5.—1. Twice three are six.—2. Five are the half of ten.—3. Nine are not an even number.—4. One man and one boy is sufficient.—5. Two is better than one.—6. Two are an even number—three are not.—7. Three-fourths are more than one-half.—8. A drove of forty heads of cattle passed along.

6.—1. Molasses are thicker than water.—2. Wheat is being sold for a dollar a bushel, and oats is in demand.—3. The news by the last arrival is better than were expected.—4. Do you not think he writes good?—5 The wind blows coldly from the north, and the snow lies deeply on the ground.—6. James is as tall, if not taller than I am.—7. He puts down the mighty, and exalteth the humble.—8. Piety toward God, as well as sobriety and virtue, are necessary to happiness.

7.—1. Take care who you admit into friendship.—2. I always understood it to be he, whom they said wrote that book.—3. If I was him, I would take more care for the future.—4. We were in Havre when the revolution broke out at France.—5. I have been to Boston for a few days, and spend the time very pleasant.—6. That is the man and the horse which we met before.

8.—1. This excellent person was fully resigned either to have



13.—1. I was engaged formerly in that business, but I never shall be again concerned in it.—2. We do those things frequently which we repent of afterward.—3. That picture of your mother's is a very exact resemblance of her.—4. In reference to that transaction, he deserved punishment as much or more than his companions.—5. Every one of those pleasures that are pursued to excess, convert themselves into poison.—6. By these attainments are the master honored, and the scholar encouraged.—7. The temple consisted of one great and several smaller edifices.—8. Whether he will be learned or no, depends on his application.

### *A List of Improper Expressions.*

SELECTED CHIEFLY FROM PICKERING'S VOCABULARY.

<i>Improper.</i>	<i>Proper.</i>
The <i>alone</i> God. The <i>alone</i> motive. I <i>an't</i> ; you <i>an't</i> ; he <i>an't</i> , etc.	The <i>one</i> God. The <i>only</i> motive. I am not; you are not; he is not, etc.
<i>Any manner of</i> means. He was walking <i>back and forth</i> . His argument was <i>based</i> on this fact.	Any means. —— backward and forward. His argument was founded on this fact.
The money was <i>ordered paid</i> . I <i>calculate</i> to leave town soon. A <i>chunk</i> of bread. A <i>clever</i> house. He <i>conducts</i> well.	The money was ordered to be paid. I intend to leave town soon. A piece of bread. A good house. He conducts himself well, respect- ably.
He is <i>considerable</i> of a scholar. His farm was <i>convenient</i> to mine.	He is a pretty good scholar. His farm was contiguous to mine, close.
He is a <i>decent</i> scholar, writer. Her situation was distressing to a <i>degree</i> .	He is a pretty good scholar, writer. —— was extremely distressing.
A <i>total destitution</i> of capacity. The United States, or <i>either</i> of them. <i>Equally</i> as well; as good, etc.	A total want of capacity. The United States, or any of them. Equally well, or just as well, etc.

lived or to have died.—2. Between he and I there is some disparity of years, but none between he and she.—3. To be moderate in our views, and proceeding temperately in the pursuit of them, is the best way to insure success.—4. If he does but consider the subject, he will no doubt change his opinion.—5. Ignorance is the mother of fear, as well as admiration.—6. Let him be whom he may, I can not wait for him.

9.—1. Many have profited from the misfortunes of others.—2. Many ridiculous customs have been brought in use during the hundred last years.—3. Is there any person who you can send on that business?—4. A truth is virtue to which we should pay little regard.—5. The people of the United States enjoys a free Constitution and laws.—6. The pyramids of Egypt stood more than three thousand years.—7. It is thought they have been built by the Egyptian kings.

10.—1. He only got the money for a few days.—2. He was mistaken evidently in his calculations.—3. No man is fit for free conversation, for the inquiry after truth, if he be exceedingly reserved; if he be haughty, and proud of his knowledge; if he be positive and dogmatical in his opinions; if he be one who always affects to outshine all the company; if he be fretful and peevish; if he affect wit, and is full of puns, or quirks, or quibbles.—4. Humility neither seeks the last place, or the last word.—5. Either wealth or power may ruin their possessor.—6. Art thou the man who hast dared to insult me?—7. Oh that the winter was gone!

11.—1. We are often disappointed of things which, before possession, promised much enjoyment.—2. He was accused with acting unfairly, at least in a manner illy adapted for conciliating regard.—3. There is more business done in New York than in any city of the United States.—4. The ship Panama is early expected from Canton in the spring.—5. Every year, every day, and every hour, bring their changes.

12.—1. No power was ever yet intrusted to man without a liability to abuse.—2. A conceited fool is more abominable than all fools.—3. My gravity never did no one any harm.—4. Expectation and reality makes up the sum total of life.—5. Music, the love of it, and the practice of it, seems to pervade all creation.—6. The author dreads the critic, the miser dreads the thief, the criminal dreads the judge, the horse dreads the whip, the lamb dreads the wolf—all after their kind.—7. The intellectual and moral censor both have the same ends in view.

13.—1. I was engaged formerly in that business, but I never shall be again concerned in it.—2. We do those things frequently which we repent of afterward.—3. That picture of your mother's is a very exact resemblance of her.—4. In reference to that transaction, he deserved punishment as much or more than his companions.—5. Every one of those pleasures that are pursued to excess, convert themselves into poison.—6. By these attainments are the master honored, and the scholar encouraged.—7. The temple consisted of one great and several smaller edifices.—8. Whether he will be learned or no, depends on his application.

### *A List of Improper Expressions.*

SELECTED CHIEFLY FROM PICKERING'S VOCABULARY.

<i>Improper.</i>	<i>Proper.</i>
The <i>alone</i> God. The <i>alone</i> motive.	The <i>one</i> God. The <i>only</i> motive.
I <i>an't</i> ; you <i>an't</i> ; he <i>an't</i> , etc.	I am not; you are not; he is not, etc.
<i>Any manner of</i> means.	Any means.
He was walking <i>back and forth</i> .	—— backward and forward.
His argument was <i>based</i> on this fact.	His argument was founded on this fact.
The money was <i>ordered paid</i> .	The money was ordered to be paid.
I <i>calculate</i> to leave town soon.	I intend to leave town soon.
A <i>chunk</i> of bread.	A piece of bread.
A <i>clever</i> house.	A good house.
He <i>conducts</i> well.	He conducts himself well, respectably.
He is <i>considerable</i> of a scholar.	He is a pretty good scholar.
His farm was <i>convenient</i> to mine.	His farm was contiguous to mine, close.
He is a <i>decent</i> scholar, writer.	He is a pretty good scholar, writer.
Her situation was distressing <i>to a degree</i> .	—— was extremely distressing.
A <i>total destitution</i> of capacity.	A total want of capacity.
The United States, or <i>either</i> of them.	The United States, or any of them.
<i>Equally</i> as well; as good, etc.	Equally well, or just as well, etc.

*Improper.*

Mr. A—— B——, Esq.

I *expect* he must have died long ago.These things are in a bad *fix*.Will you *fix* these things for me?What do *folks* think of it?Talents of the highest *grade*.Do you love play? I *guess* I do.We may *hope* the assistance of God.A *horse colt*; a *mare colt*.It would *illy* accord.When did you come *in* town?A *lengthy* sermon, etc.Why don't you strike *like* I do?*Proper.*

A—— B——, Esq.

I think he must have died, etc.

—— in a bad state or condition.

Will you put these things in order for me?

What do people think of it?

Talents of the highest order.

—— there is no doubt of that.

We may hope for the assistance of God.

A colt; a filly.

It would ill accord.

When did you come into town?

A long sermon, etc.

—— as I do, or like as I do?

## PUNCTUATION.

**984.** *Punctuation* treats of the *points* and *marks* used in writing.

**985.** The use of these points is to mark the *divisions of a sentence*, in order to show the meaning more clearly, and to serve as a guide in the pauses and inflections required in reading.

**986.** The principal marks used for this purpose are the following: The *comma* (,), the *semicolon* (;), the *colon* (:), the *period* (.), the *interrogation point* (?), the *exclamation point* (!), the *dash* (—), the *parenthesis* ( ), the *brackets* [ ].

**987.** With respect to the length of the pauses indicated by these marks, *no very definite rule* can be given; the same point in certain kinds of composition, and in certain positions, requiring sometimes a longer and sometimes a shorter pause.

**988.** As a general rule, the comma marks the shortest pause; the semicolon, a pause double that of the comma; the colon, a pause

double that of the semicolon; and the period, a pause still longer than that of the colon.

### The Comma.

**989.** The *comma* is generally used in those parts of a sentence in which a short pause is required, and to mark a connection next in closeness to that which is unbroken.

#### *Special Rules.*

**990.** RULE 1.—In a *short, simple sentence*, the comma is *not* used; as, "Hope is necessary in every condition of life."

**991.** RULE 2.—When the *logical subject* of a verb is rendered long by the addition of several *adjuncts*, or other qualifying words, to the grammatical subject, a comma is usually inserted before the verb; as, "A steady and undivided attention to one subject, is a sure mark of a superior mind."

**992.** RULE 3.—In *complex* and *compound* sentences, the clauses or members are usually separated by commas; as, "Crafty men condemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them." But when the clauses are *short*, or closely connected, the comma is *not* used; as, "Revelation tells us *how* we may attain happiness."

**993.** RULE 4.—Two words of the *same class*, connected by a conjunction expressed, do *not* admit a comma between them; as, "The *earth* and the *moon* are planets."—"He is a *wise* and *prudent* man."—"He *catches* and *arrests* the hours."—"He acts *prudently* and *vigorously*." But when the conjunction is not expressed, a comma is inserted after each; as, "*Reason, virtue*, answer one great aim." But, of two adjectives, the last should not be separated by a comma from its noun; as, "He is a *plain, honest* man." Nor can two adjectives be separated from each other by a comma when used together as a compound adjective; as, "A *bright-red* color."

**994.** RULE 5.—*More than two words* of the same class, connected by conjunctions expressed or understood, have a comma *after each*; as, "Poetry, music, and painting, are fine arts." But when the words connected are adjectives, the last should not be separated from its noun by a comma after it; as, "David was a *wise, brave*, and *prudent* king."

**995.** RULE 6.—Words used in *pairs* take a comma after each pair; as, "Anarchy and confusion, poverty and distress, desolation and ruin, are the consequences of civil war."

**996. RULE 7.**—*Nouns in apposition* are separated by a comma, when the latter noun has several words or adjuncts connected with it, as, "Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles." But a single noun in apposition with another is not separated by a comma; as, "Paul the apostle."

**997. RULE 8.**—The *nominative independent*, and the nominative absolute (768), with the words dependent on them, are separated by commas from the rest of the sentence; as, "My son, hear the instruction of thy father."—"I am, sir, your obedient servant."—"The time of youth being precious, we should devote it to improvement."—"To confess the truth, I was in fault."

**998. RULE 9.**—*Comparative and antithetical clauses* are separated by a comma; thus, "As the hart panteth after the water-brooks, so doth my soul pant after thee."—"Though deep, yet clear; though gentle, yet not dull." But when the comparison is short, and the connection intimate, the comma is not used; as, "Wisdom is better than rubies."

**999. RULE 10.**—The adverbs *nay, so, hence, again, first, secondly*, etc., when considered important, and particularly at the beginning of a sentence, should be separated from the context by a comma; as, "Nay, but we will serve the Lord." So also, *as* and *thus*, introducing an example or quotation, as in the preceding sentence.

**1000. RULE 11.**—A *relative with its clause*, explanatory of its antecedent, is usually separated from the rest of a sentence; as, "He, who disregards the good opinion of the world, must be utterly abandoned," or, "He must be utterly abandoned, who disregards," etc. But when the relative, with its clause, is restrictive (267, 2), and the connection so close that it can not be separated, the comma is not used; as, "Self-denial is the *sacrifice which* virtue must make."

**1001. RULE 12.**—*That*, used as a conjunction, and preceded by another clause, usually has a comma before it; as, "Be virtuous, that you may be happy." But when the clause introduced by *that* is the subject or the object of the verb in the preceding clause, the comma is not inserted; as, "It is well *that* he should know it."—"I said *that* ye are gods."

**1002. RULE 13.**—When a *verb* is *understood*, a comma must be inserted; as, "Reading makes a full man; conversation, a ready man; and writing, an exact man."

**1003.** RULE 14.—*Words repeated* are separated by a comma; as, "Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord God Almighty."—"No, no, no, it can not be."

**1004.** RULE 15.—*Inverted sentences*, by throwing two or more words out of their regular connection, often require a comma; as, "To God, all things are possible." Not inverted, it would be, "All things are possible to God."—"His delight was, to assist the distressed. In the natural order, "To assist the distressed was his delight."

**1005.** RULE 16.—A *short expression*, in the matter of a quotation, is separated by commas; as, "Plutarch calls lying, *the vice of slaves*." Also the verbs *say*, *reply*, and the like, with their dependent words introducing a quotation or remark, are usually separated by commas; as, "The book of nature, *said he*, is open before thee."—"I say unto all, watch."

**1006.** RULE 17.—*Adjectives, participles, adverbs, infinitives*, etc., when separated from the word on which they depend, or, when accompanied by several adjuncts, commonly require commas to be inserted; as, "His talents, formed for great enterprises, could not fail of rendering him conspicuous."—"To conclude, I can only say this."—"We must not, *however*, neglect our duty."

### The Semicolon.

**1007.** The *semicolon* is used to separate the parts of a sentence which are *less closely connected* than those which are separated by the comma, and more closely than those which are separated by the colon.

#### General Rule.

**1008.** The parts of a sentence separated by a semicolon, should contain in themselves a *complete* and *independent proposition*, but still having a connection with the other parts.

#### Special Rules.

**1009.** RULE 1.—When the first division of a sentence contains a complete proposition, but is followed by a clause added as an *inference* or *reason*, or to give some explanation, the part thus added must be separated by a semicolon; as, "Perform your duty faithfully; for this will procure you the blessing of heaven."—"The orator makes the truth plain to his hearers; he awakens them; he excites

them to action ; he shows them their impending danger."—"Be at peace with many ; nevertheless, have but few counselors."

**1010. RULE 2.**—When *several short sentences*, complete in themselves, but having a slight connection in idea, follow in succession, they should be separated by a semicolon ; as, "The epic poem recites the exploits of a hero ; tragedy represents a disastrous event ; comedy ridicules the vices and follies of mankind ; pastoral poetry describes rural life ; and elegy displays the tender emotions of the heart."

**1011. RULE 3.**—When a sentence consists of *several members*, and these members are *complex*, and subdivided by commas, the larger divisions of the sentence are sometimes separated by a semicolon ; as, "As the desire of approbation, when it works according to reason, improves the amiable part of our species in everything that is laudable ; so nothing is more destructive to them, when it is governed by vanity and folly."

**1012. RULE 4.**—When a general term has several others, as particulars, in *apposition* under it, the general term is separated from the particulars by a semicolon, and the particulars, from each other by commas ; as, "Adjective pronouns are divided into four classes, possessive, distributive, demonstrative, and indefinite." But if the word *namely* be introduced, the separation is made by a comma only.

### The Colon.

**1013.** The *colon* is used to divide a sentence into two or more parts, less connected than those which are separated by a semicolon, but not so independent as to require a period.

### Special Rules.

**1014. RULE 1.**—A colon is used when a sentence is *complete in itself*, in both sense and construction, but is followed by some additional remark or illustration, depending upon it in sense, though not in Syntax ; as, "The brute arrives at a point of perfection that he can never pass : in a few years he has all the endowments of which he is capable."—"Study to acquire a habit of thinking : nothing is more important."

**1015. RULE 2.**—When several *short sentences* follow in succession, each containing a complete sense in itself, but all having a common *dependence* on some *subsequent* clause ; these sentences are separated from the subsequent clause by a colon, and from each other by a semicolon ; as, "That Nature is unlimited in her



operations; that she has inexhaustible resources in reserve; that knowledge will always be progressive; and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries: *these* are among the assertions of philosophers."

**1016.** RULE 3.—A *colon* (sometimes a semicolon) may be used when an example, a *quotation*, or a speech is introduced; as, "Always remember this ancient maxim: 'Know thyself.'"—"The Scriptures give us an animated representation of the Deity in these words: 'God is love.'"

**1017.** RULE 4.—The insertion or omission of a conjunction before the concluding member of a sentence frequently determines the use of the colon or semicolon. When the *conjunction* is *not expressed* before the *concluding member*, which would otherwise be separated by a semicolon, the colon is used; but when the conjunction is expressed, the semicolon; as, "Apply yourself to learning: it will redound to your honor."—"Apply yourself to learning; for it will redound to your honor."

### The Period.

**1018.** The *period* separates sentences which are *complete in sense*, and not connected in either meaning or grammatical construction; thus, "Fear God. Honor the king. Have charity toward all men."

**1019.** But when short sentences are *connected in meaning*, but not in construction, they are separated by a *semicolon* (1010).

**1020.** *Long sentences*, if complete, even though grammatically connected by conjunctions, often insert a period (563); thus, "He who lifts up himself to the notice and observation of the world, is, of all men, the least likely to avoid censure. For he draws upon himself a thousand eyes that will narrowly inspect him in every part."

**1021.** A period must be used at the *end* of all *books, chapters, sections*, etc.; also, after all *abbreviations*; as, A. D., M. A., Art. II., Obs. 3., J. Smith, etc.—APPENDIX, XII.

### The Interrogation Point.

**1022.** A *question* is regarded as a *complete sentence*, and the interrogation point as equal to the period.

**1023.** The note of *interrogation* is always put at the end of a *direct question*; as, "What is truth?" But the *indirect question* does not require the interrogation point; as, "Pilate inquired what is truth."

NOTE.—Printers are generally the best punctuators, as they follow a uniform system. It is therefore for the most part best, in preparing matter for the press, to leave this matter to them, except where the meaning intended may not be clearly perceived without the punctuation.

### Other Characters Used in Writing.

**1024.** The *Dash* (—) is used where the sentence *breaks off abruptly*; also, to denote a significant pause—an unexpected turn in the sentiment—or that the first clause is common to all the rest, as in this definition.

**1025.** The note of *exclamation* (!) is used after expressions of *sudden emotion* of any kind; also, in invocations or addresses, as, "Eternity! thou pleasing, dreadful thought." *Oh* has the mark immediately after it, or after the next word; as, "Oh! that he would come." But when *O* is used, the note is placed after some intervening words; as, "O my friends!"

**1026.** The *Parenthesis* ( ) includes a *clause inserted in the body of a sentence*, in order to some useful or necessary information or remark, but which may be omitted without injuring the construction of the sentence; as, "Know ye not, brethren (for I speak to them that know the law), how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth?" In reading, the parenthetical part is distinguished by a lower or altered tone of voice. When the *clause is short*, and accords with the general tenor of the sentence, *commas* are now generally used instead of parentheses; as,

"Thou sluggish power, *if power thou be*,  
All destitute of energy."

The use of *parentheses should be avoided* as much as possible.

**1027.** *Brackets* [ ] are properly used to enclose a word or phrase *interpolated* for the purpose of explanation, or correction, or to supply a deficiency in a sentence quoted or regarded as such, and which did not belong to the original composition; thus, "It is said, the wisest men [and, it might be added, the best too] are not exempt from human frailty."

**1028.** The *Apostrophe* (') is used when a *letter* or *letters* are omitted; as *e'er* for *ever*, *tho'* for *though*; or to mark the possessive case.

**1029.** *Quotation marks* (" ") are put at the beginning and end

of a passage quoted from an author in his own words, or to mark a passage regarded as a quotation.

**1030.** The *Hyphen* ( - ) is used to *connect compound words* which are not *permanent* compounds, as *lap-dog* : also at the end of a line, to show that the rest of the word not completed is at the beginning of the next line.

**1031.** The *Section* ( § ) is used to *divide* a discourse or chapter into portions.

**1032.** The *Paragraph* ( ¶ ) was formerly used to denote the *beginning* of a new paragraph.

**1033.** The *Brace* ( { ) is used to connect words which have *one common term*, or three lines in poetry having the same rhyme, called a *triplet*.

**1034.** The *Ellipsis* ( — ) is used when some *letters are omitted* ; as, *K—g* for *King*. Several asterisks are sometimes used for the same purpose ; as, *K\*\*\*g*.

**1035.** The *Caret* ( ^ ) is used to show that some word or letter is either *omitted* or *interlined*. It is used only in manuscript.

**1036.** The *Index* ( ☞ ) is used to point out any thing remarkable.

**1037.** The *vowel marks* are : the *Dieresis* ( ¨ ), on the last of two concurrent vowels, showing that they are not to be pronounced as a diphthong ; the *Acute* accent ( ´ ) ; the *Grave* ( ` ) ; the *Long* sound ( ¯ ) ; the *Short* sound ( ˇ ).

**1038.** The *marks of reference* are : the *Asterisk* ( \* ) ; the *Obelisk* or *Dagger* ( † ) ; the *Double Dagger* ( ‡ ) ; the *Parallels* ( || ). Sometimes, also, the § and ¶. Also, small letters or *figures*, which refer to notes at the foot of the page.

---

## FIGURES.

**1039.** A *Figure*, in grammar, is some *deviation* from the *ordinary form*, or *construction*, or *application* of words in a sentence, for the purpose of greater precision, variety, or elegance of expression.

**1040.** There are *three kinds* of Figures, viz. : of *Etymology*, of *Syntax*, and of *Rhetoric*. The first refers to the *form* of words,

the second to their *construction*, and the last to their *application*.

### *Figures of Etymology.*

**1041.** A Figure of *Etymology* is a departure from the *usual or simple form of words*, merely.

**1042.** Of these, the most important are *eight*, viz. : *A-phær'-e-sis*, *Prost'-the-sis*, *Syn'-co-pe*, *A-poc'-o-pe*, *Par-a-gô'-ge*, *Di-ær'-e-sis*, *Syn-ær'-e-sis*, and *Tme'-sis*.

1. *Aphæresis* is the *elision* of a syllable from the *beginning* of a word ; as, 'gainst, 'gan, 'bove, 'neath, for *against, began, above, beneath*.

2. *Prosthesis* is the *prefixing* of a syllable to a word ; as, *adown, agoing*, etc., for *down, going*, etc.

3. *Syncope* is the *elision* of a letter or syllable, usually a short one, from the *middle* of a word ; as, *med'cine, sp'rit, e'en*, for *medicine, spirit, even*.

4. *Apocope* is the *elision* of a letter or syllable from the *end* of a word ; as, *tho'* for *though*, *th'* for *the*.

5. *Paragoge* is the *annexing* of a syllable to the *end* of a word ; as, *deary* for *dear*.

6. *Dicæresis* is the *division* of two concurrent vowels into different syllables, usually marked thus ( ' ' ) on the second vowel ; as, *coöperate, aërial*.

7. *Synæresis* is the *joining* of two *syllables* into one, in either orthography or pronunciation ; as, *dost, seest*, for *doest, seest*, or *loved* *learned*, pronounced in one syllable instead of two, *lov-ed, learn-ed*.

8. *Tmesis* is the *separating* of the parts of a compound word by an *intervening term* ; as, "*What time soever*."—" *On which side soever*."—" *To us ward*."

### *Figures of Syntax.*

**1043.** A figure of *Syntax* is a deviation from the *usual construction* of words in a sentence, used for the sake of greater beauty or force.

**1044.** Of these the most important are : *Ellip'-sis*, *Ple-o-nasm*, *Syllep'-sis*, *E-nal'-la-gé*, *Hy-per'-ba-ton*.

1. *Ellipsis* is the *omission* of a word or words necessary to the full construction of a sentence, but not necessary to convey the idea

intended (977). Such words are said to be *understood*; as, "The men, women, and children," for "The men, *the* women, and *the* children."

2. *Pleonasm* is the using of *more words than are necessary* to the full construction of a sentence, to give greater force or emphasis to the expression; as, "The boy, oh! where was *he*!"

3. *Syllepsis* is an inferior species of *personification*, by which we conceive the sense of words otherwise than the words import, and construe them according to the sense conceived. Thus, of the sun, we say, "*He* shines"—of a ship, "*She* sails" (130).

4. *Enallage* is the use of *one part of speech for another*, or of one modification of a word for another; as, an adjective for an adverb, thus, "They fall *successive*, and *successive* rise," for *successively*; the use of *we* and *you* in the plural, to denote an individual, etc. (245); the use of one case for another; as, "than *whom*" for than *who* (966).

5. *Hyperbaton* is the *transposition* of words and clauses in a sentence, to give variety, force, and vivacity, to the composition; as, "Now come *we* to the last."—"A man *he* was to all the country dear."—"He wanders *earth* around."

### *Figures of Rhetoric.*

1045. A Figure of *Rhetoric* is a deviation from the ordinary *application* of words in speech, to give animation, strength, and beauty, to the composition. These figures are sometimes called *tropes*.

1046. Of these, the most important are the following, viz. :—

<i>Personification,</i>	<i>Hyperbole,</i>	<i>Climax,</i>
<i>Simile,</i>	<i>Irony,</i>	<i>Exclamation,</i>
<i>Metaphor,</i>	<i>Metonymy,</i>	<i>Interrogation,</i>
<i>Allegory,</i>	<i>Synecdoche,</i>	<i>Paralepsis;</i>
<i>Vision,</i>	<i>Antithesis,</i>	<i>Apostrophe.</i>

1. *Personification* or *prosopopœia*, is that figure of speech by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects; as, "*The sea saw it and fled.*"

2. A *simile* expresses the *resemblance* that one object bears to another; as, "*He shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water.*"

3. A *metaphor* is a simile *without the sign* (*like*, or *as*, etc.) of comparison; as, "*He shall be a tree planted by,*" etc.

4. An *allegory* is a continuation of several metaphors, so connected in sense as to form a kind of *parable* or *fable*. Thus, the people of Israel are represented under the image of a vine: "*Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt,*" etc.—Ps. lxxx. 8-17. Of this style are Æsop's Fables, Bunyan's "*Pilgrim's Progress,*" etc.

5. *Vision* or *imagery*, is a figure by which the speaker represents *past events* or the objects of his imagination, as actually *present* to his senses; as, "Cæsar leaves Gaul, crosses the Rubicon, and enters Italy."—"The combat deepens. On, ye brave," etc.

6. An *hyperbole* is a figure that represents things as *greater* or *less, better* or *worse*, than they really are. Thus, David says of Saul and Jonathan, "*They were swifter than eagles; they were stronger than lions.*"

6. *Irony* is a figure by which we mean quite the *contrary* of what we say; as, when Elijah said to the worshipers of Baal, "*Cry aloud; for he is a god,*" etc.

7. *Metonymy* is a figure by which we put the *cause* for the *effect*, or the *effect* for the *cause*; as, when we say, "*He reads Milton,*" we mean Milton's *works*. "*Gray hairs* should be respected"—that is, *old age*.

9. *Synecdoche* is the putting of a *part* for the *whole*, or the *whole* for a *part*, a definite number for an indefinite, etc.; as, the *waves* for the *sea*, the *head* for the *person*, and *ten thousand* for any great number. This figure is nearly allied to *metonymy*.

10. *Antithesis*, or *contrast*, is a figure by which different or contrary objects are *contrasted*, to make them show one another to advantage. Thus, Solomon contrasts the timidity of the wicked with the courage of the righteous, when he says, "*The wicked flee when no man pursueth; but the righteous are as bold as a lion.*"

11. *Climax*, or *amplification*, is the heightening of all the circumstances of an object or action which we wish to place in a strong light; as, "Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? *Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?* Nay," etc. See, also, Rom. viii. 38, 39.

12. *Exclamation* is a figure that is used to express some *strong emotion* of the mind; as, "*Oh! the depth of the riches, both of the wisdom and knowledge of God!*"

13. *Interrogation* is a figure by which we express the emotion of our mind, and enliven our discourse *by proposing questions*; thus, "*Hath the Lord said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good?*"

14. *Paralepsis*, or *omission*, is a figure by which the speaker *pretends to conceal* what he is really declaring, and strongly enforcing; as, "Horatius was once a very promising young gentleman, but in process of time he became so addicted to gaming, *not to mention his drunkenness and debauchery*, that he soon exhausted his estate, and ruined his constitution."

15. *Apostrophe* is a turning-off from the subject, to address some other person or thing; "*Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death, where is thy sting?*"

1047. Besides the deviations from the usual form and construction of words, noted under the figures of Etymology and Syntax, there are still others, which can not be classed under proper heads, and which, from being used mostly in poetic composition, are commonly called—

#### Poetic Licenses.

1048. These are such as the following :—

1. In *poetry*, words, idioms, and phrases are often used, which would be *inadmissible in prose*; as—

"A man he was to all the country dear,

And *passing* rich with forty pounds a year."

"By fountain clear, or spangled starlight *sheen*."

"Shall I receive by gift, what of my own,

When and where *likes me* best, I can command."

"Thy voice we hear, and thy *behests* obey."

"The *whiles*, the vaulted shrine around,

Seraphic wires were heard to sound."

"On the first friendly bank he *throws him* down."

"I'll seek the solitude he sought,

And *stretch me* where he lay."

"Not Hector's *self* should want an equal foe."

2. More violent and peculiar *ellipses* are allowable in *poetry* than in prose; as—

"*Suffice*, to-night, these orders to obey."

*Time* is our tedious song should here have ending."

## ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

22

“For is there *aught* in sleep can charm the v

“T is *Faery*, in her fiery car,  
*Transports* me to the thickest war.”

“Who never *fasts*, no banquet e’er enjoys.”

“Bliss is the same in subject as in king,  
In who obtain *defonse*, or who defend.”

3. In poetry, *adjectives* are often elegantly connected with nouns *which they do not strictly qualify*; as—

“The *ploughman* homeward plods his *weary*

“The *tenants* of the *warbling* shade.”

“And *drowsy* tinklings lull the distant *folds*

4. The *rules of grammar* are often *violated* in poetry. The pronoun *it* and its pronoun are often used in reference to the

“It ceased, the melancholy *sound*.”

“My *banks they* are furnished with bees.”

5. An *adverb* is often admitted *between the* subject and the verb, as the sign of the infinitive; as—

“To sit on rocks, to muse o’er flood and fell;  
To *slowly* trace the forest’s shady scenes.”

6. A common poetic license consists in employing *instead of either and neither*; as—

————— “And first

Or on the listed plain, or stormy sea.”

“Nor grief nor fear shall break my rest.”

7. *Intransitive verbs* are often made *transitive* in poetry. They are used like abstract nouns; as—

“The lightnings *flash* a larger curve.”

“Still in harmonious intercourse, they *lived*  
The rural day, and *talked* the flowing heart.

“Meanwhile, whate’er of *beautiful* or *new*,  
By chance or search, was offered to his view,  
He scanned with curious eye.”

8. *Greek, Latin*, and other foreign idioms, are a *poetry*, though *inadmissible in prose*; as—

“He *knew* to sing, and *build* the lofty rhyme.”

“*Give* me to seize rich Nestor’s shield of gold.”



"*There are*, who, deaf to mad ambition's call,  
Would shrink to hear the obstreperous trump of fame."

"Yet to their general's voice they all obeyed."

———"Never, *since created man*,  
Met such embodied force."

**1049.** Such are a few of the licenses allowed to poets, but denied to prose writers; and, among other purposes which they obviously serve, they enhance the pleasure of reading poetic composition, by increasing the boundary of separation set up, especially in our language, between it and common prose.

#### EXERCISES.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Etymology in the following phrases and sentences:—

His courage 'gan fail.—Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast.—  
'Twas mine, 'tis his.—Vain tampering has but fostered his disease.—  
Enchained he lay, a monster.—What way soe'er he turned, it met him.—  
Th' aerial pencil forms the scene anew.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Syntax in the following sentences:—

The law I gave to nature him forbids.—So little mercy shows who needs so much.—My head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night.—Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow.—He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Rhetoric in the following sentences:—

As thy day is, so shall thy strength be.—Without discipline, the favorite, like a neglected forester, runs wild.—Thy name is as ointment poured forth.—The Lord God is a sun and shield.—I saw their chief, tall as a rock of ice, his spear the blasted fir.—At which the universal host sent up a shout that tore hell's concave.

"For is there aught in sleep *can* charm the wise?"

"T is Fancy, in her fiery car,  
*Transports* me to the thickest war."

"Who never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys."

"Bliss is the same in subject as in king,  
*In who* obtain defense, or who defend."

3. In poetry, *adjectives* are often elegantly connected with nouns *which they do not strictly qualify*; as—

"The *ploughman* homeward plods his *weary way*."

"The *tenants* of the *warbling* shade."

"And *drowsy* tinklings lull the distant *folds*."

4. The *rules of grammar* are often *violated* by the poets. A noun and its pronoun are often used in reference to the same verb; as—

"It ceased, the melancholy *sound*."

"My *banks they* are furnished with bees."

5. An *adverb* is often admitted *between the verb and to*, the sign of the infinitive; as—

"To sit on rocks, to muse o'er flood and fell;

To *slowly* trace the forest's shady scenes."

6. A common poetic license consists in employing *or* and *nor*, instead of *either* and *neither*; as—

—————"And first

Or on the listed plain, or stormy sea."

"Nor grief nor fear shall break my rest."

7. *Intransitive verbs* are often made *transitive*, and adjectives are used like abstract nouns; as—

"The lightnings *flash* a larger curve."

"Still in harmonious intercourse, they *lived*  
The rural day, and *talked* the flowing heart."

"Meanwhile, whate'er of *beautiful* or *new*,  
By chance or search, was offered to his view,  
He scanned with curious eye."

8. *Greek, Latin*, and other foreign idioms, are *allowable in poetry*, though *inadmissible in prose*; as—

"He *knew* to sing, and *build* the lofty rhyme."

"*Give* me to seize rich Nestor's shield of gold."

"*There are*, who, deaf to mad ambition's call,  
 Would shrink to hear the obstreperous trump of fame."  
 "Yet to their general's voice they all obeyed."  
 ————"Never, *since created man*,  
 Met such embodied force."

**1049.** Such are a few of the licenses allowed to poets, but denied to prose writers; and, among other purposes which they obviously serve, they enhance the pleasure of reading poetic composition, by increasing the boundary of separation set up, especially in our language, between it and common prose.

## EXERCISES.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Etymology in the following phrases and sentences:—

His courage 'gan fail.—Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast.—  
 'Twas mine, 'tis his.—Vain tampering has but fostered his disease.—  
 Enchained he lay, a monster.—What way soe'er he turned, it met  
 him.—Th' aerial pencil forms the scene anew.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Syntax in the following sentences:—

The law I gave to nature him forbids.—So little mercy shows who  
 needs so much.—My head is filled with dew, and my locks with the  
 drops of the night.—Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow.—  
 He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Rhetoric in the following sentences:—

As thy day is, so shall thy strength be.—Without discipline, the  
 favorite, like a neglected forester, runs wild.—Thy name is as ointment  
 poured forth.—The Lord God is a sun and shield.—I saw their  
 chief, tall as a rock of ice, his spear the blasted fir.—At which the  
 universal host sent up a shout that tore hell's concave.

"For is there aught in sleep *can* charm the wise?"

"'T is Fancy, in her fiery car,  
*Transports* me to the thickest war."

"Who never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys."

"Bliss is the same in subject as in king,  
*In who* obtain defense, or who defend."

3. In poetry, *adjectives* are often elegantly connected with nouns *which they do not* strictly qualify; as—

"The *ploughman* homeward plods his *weary* way."

"The *tenants* of the *warbling* shade."

"And *drowsy* tinklings lull the distant *folds*."

4. The *rules of grammar* are often *violated* by the poets. A noun and its pronoun are often used in reference to the same verb; as—

"It ceased, the melancholy *sound*."

"My *banks they* are furnished with bees."

5. An *adverb* is often admitted *between the verb and* to, the sign of the infinitive; as—

"To sit on rocks, to muse o'er flood and fell;  
To *slowly* trace the forest's shady scenes."

6. A common poetic license consists in employing *or* and *nor*, instead of *either* and *neither*; as—

—————"And first  
*Or* on the listed plain, or stormy sea."

"*Nor* grief nor fear shall break my rest."

7. *Intransitive verbs* are often made *transitive*, and adjectives are used like abstract nouns; as—

"The lightnings *flash* a larger curve."

"Still in harmonious intercourse, they *lived*  
The rural day, and *talked* the flowing heart."

"Meanwhile, whate'er of *beautiful* or *new*,  
By chance or search, was offered to his view,  
He scanned with curious eye."

8. *Greek, Latin*, and other foreign idioms, are *allowable in poetry*, though *inadmissible in prose*; as—

"He *knew* to sing, and *build* the lofty rhyme."

"*Give* me to seize rich Nestor's shield of gold."

"*There are*, who, deaf to mad ambition's call,  
 Would shrink to hear the obstreperous trump of fame."  
 "Yet to their general's voice they all obeyed."  
 ————"Never, *since created man*,  
 Met such embodied force."

**1049.** Such are a few of the licenses allowed to poets, but denied to prose writers; and, among other purposes which they obviously serve, they enhance the pleasure of reading poetic composition, by increasing the boundary of separation set up, especially in our language, between it and common prose.

## EXERCISES.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Etymology in the following phrases and sentences:—

His courage 'gan fail.—Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast.—  
 'Twas mine, 'tis his.—Vain tampering has but fostered his disease.—  
 Enchained he lay, a monster.—What way soe'er he turned, it met  
 him.—Th' aerial pencil forms the scene anew.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Syntax in the following sentences:—

The law I gave to nature him forbids.—So little mercy shows who  
 needs so much.—My head is filled with dew, and my locks with the  
 drops of the night.—Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow.—  
 He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Rhetoric in the following sentences:—

As thy day is, so shall thy strength be.—Without discipline, the  
 favorite, like a neglected forester, runs wild.—Thy name is as oint-  
 ment poured forth.—The Lord God is a sun and shield.—I saw their  
 chief, tall as a rock of ice, his spear the blasted fir.—At which the  
 universal host sent up a shout that tore hell's concave.

"For is there aught in sleep *can* charm the wise?"

"'T is Fancy, in her fiery car,  
*Transports* me to the thickest war."

"Who never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys."

"Bliss is the same in subject as in king,  
*In who* obtain defense, or who defend."

3. In poetry, *adjectives* are often elegantly connected with nouns *which they do not* strictly qualify; as—

"The *ploughman* homeward plods his *weary way*."

"The *tenants* of the *warbling* shade."

"And *drowsy* tinklings lull the distant *folds*."

4. The *rules of grammar* are often *violated* by the poets. A noun and its pronoun are often used in reference to the same verb; as—

"*It* ceased, the melancholy *sound*."

"My *banks they* are furnished with bees."

5. An *adverb* is often admitted *between the verb and* to, the sign of the infinitive; as—

"To sit on rocks, to muse o'er flood and fell;  
*To slowly* trace the forest's shady scenes."

6. A common poetic license consists in employing *or* and *nor*, instead of *either* and *neither*; as—

—————"And first

*Or* on the listed plain, or stormy sea."

"*Nor* grief nor fear shall break my rest."

7. *Intransitive verbs* are often made *transitive*, and *adjectives* are used like abstract nouns; as—

"The lightnings *flash* a larger curve."

"Still in harmonious intercourse, they *lived*  
The rural day, and *talked* the flowing heart."

"Meanwhile, whate'er of *beautiful* or *new*,  
By chance or search, was offered to his view,  
He scanned with curious eye."

8. *Greek, Latin*, and other foreign idioms, are *allowable in poetry*, though *inadmissible in prose*; as—

"He *knew* to sing, and *build* the lofty rhyme."

"*Give* me to seize rich Nestor's shield of gold."

"*There are, who, deaf to mad ambition's call,  
 Would shrink to hear the obstreperous trump of fame.*"  
 "*Yet to their general's voice they all obeyed.*"  
 "———" *Never, since created man,  
 Met such embodied force.*"

1049. Such are a few of the licenses allowed to poets, but denied to prose writers; and, among other purposes which they obviously serve, they enhance the pleasure of reading poetic composition, by increasing the boundary of separation set up, especially in our language, between it and common prose.

## EXERCISES.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Etymology in the following phrases and sentences:—

His courage 'gan fail.—Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast.—  
 "Twas mine, 'tis his.—Vain tam'ring has but fostered his disease.—  
 Enchained he lay, a monster—What way soe'er he turned, it met him.—Th' aerial pencil forms the scene anew.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Syntax in the following sentences:—

The law I gave to nature him forbids.—No little merry shows who needs so much.—My head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night.—Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow.—He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Rhetoric in the following sentences:—

As thy day is, so shall thy strength be.—Without discipline, the favorite, like a neglected forester, runs wild.—Thy name is an ointment poured forth.—The Lord God is a sun and shield.—I saw their chief, tall as a rick of ice, his spear the blasted fir.—At which the universal host sent up a shout that tore hell's concave.

"For is there aught in sleep *can* charm the wise?"

"T is Fancy, in her fiery car,  
*Transports* me to the thickest war."

"Who never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys."

"Bliss is the same in subject as in king,  
*In who* obtain defense, or who defend."

3. In poetry, *adjectives* are often elegantly connected with nouns *which they do not* strictly qualify; as—

"The *ploughman* homeward plods his *weary way*."

"The *tenants* of the *warbling* shade."

"And *drowsy* tinklings lull the distant *folds*."

4. The *rules of grammar* are often *violated* by the poets. A noun and its pronoun are often used in reference to the same verb; as—

"It ceased, the melancholy *sound*."

"My *banks they* are furnished with bees."

5. An *adverb* is often admitted *between the verb and* to, the sign of the infinitive; as—

"To sit on rocks, to muse o'er flood and fell;  
To *slowly* trace the forest's shady scenes."

6. A common poetic license consists in employing *or* and *nor*, instead of *either* and *neither*; as—

—————"And first  
Or on the listed plain, or stormy sea."

"Nor grief nor fear shall break my rest."

7. *Intransitive verbs* are often made *transitive*, and adjectives are used like abstract nouns; as—

"The lightnings *flash* a larger curve."

"Still in harmonious intercourse, they *lived*  
The rural day, and *talked* the flowing heart."

"Meanwhile, whate'er of *beautiful* or *new*,  
By chance or search, was offered to his view,  
He scanned with curious eye."

8. *Greek, Latin*, and other foreign idioms, are *allowable in poetry*, though *inadmissible in prose*; as—

"He *knew* to sing, and *build* the lofty rhyme."

"*Give* me to seize rich Nestor's shield of gold."



"*There are, who, deaf to mad ambition's call,  
 Would shrink to hear the obstreperous trump of fame.*"  
 "Yet to their general's voice they all obeyed."  
 ————"Never, *since created man,*  
 Met such embodied force."

**1049.** Such are a few of the licenses allowed to poets, but denied to prose writers; and, among other purposes which they obviously serve, they enhance the pleasure of reading poetic composition, by increasing the boundary of separation set up, especially in our language, between it and common prose.

## EXERCISES.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Etymology in the following phrases and sentences:—

His courage 'gan fail.—Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast.—  
 'Twas mine, 'tis his.—Vain tam'ring has but fostered his disease.—  
 Enchained he lay, a monster.—What way soe'er he turned, it met  
 him.—Th' aerial pencil forms the scene anew.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Syntax in the following sentences:—

The law I gave to nature him forbids.—So little mercy shows who  
 needs so much.—My head is filled with dew, and my locks with the  
 drops of the night.—Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow.—  
 He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Rhetoric in the following sentences:—

As thy day is, so shall thy strength be.—Without discipline, the  
 favorite, like a neglected forester, runs wild.—Thy name is as oint-  
 ment poured forth.—The Lord God is a sun and shield.—I saw their  
 chief, tall as a rock of ice, his spear the blasted fir.—At which the  
 universal host sent up a shout that tore hell's concave.

"For is there aught in sleep *can* charm the wise?"

"'T is Fancy, in her fiery car,  
*Transports* me to the thickest war."

"Who never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys."

"Bliss is the same in subject as in king,  
*In who* obtain defense, or who defend."

3. In poetry, *adjectives* are often elegantly connected with *nouns* *which they do not strictly qualify*; as—

"The *ploughman* homeward plods his *weary way*."

"The *tenants* of the *warbling shade*."

"And *drowsy tinklings* lull the distant *folds*."

4. The *rules of grammar* are often *violated* by the poets. A noun and its pronoun are often used in reference to the same verb; as—

"It ceased, the melancholy *sound*."

"My *banks they* are furnished with bees."

5. An *adverb* is often admitted *between the verb and to*, the sign of the infinitive; as—

"To sit on rocks, to muse o'er flood and fell;  
*To slowly* trace the forest's shady scenes."

6. A common poetic license consists in employing *or* and *nor*, instead of *either* and *neither*; as—

—————"And first  
*Or* on the listèd plain, or stormy sea."

"*Nor* grief nor fear shall break my rest."

7. *Intransitive verbs* are often made *transitive*, and *adjectives* are used like abstract nouns; as—

"The lightnings *flash* a larger curve."

"Still in harmonious intercourse, they *lived*  
The rural day, and *talked* the flowing heart."

"Meanwhile, whate'er of *beautiful* or *new*,  
By chance or search, was offered to his view,  
He scanned with curious eye."

8. *Greek, Latin*, and other foreign idioms, are *allowable in poetry*, though *inadmissible in prose*; as—

"He *knew* to sing, and *build* the lofty rhyme."

"*Give* me to seize rich Nestor's shield of gold."

"*There are*, who, deaf to mad ambition's call,  
 Would shrink to hear the obstreperous trump of fame."  
 "Yet to their general's voice they all obeyed."  
 ————"Never, *since created man*,  
 Met such embodied force."

**1049.** Such are a few of the licenses allowed to poets, but denied to prose writers; and, among other purposes which they obviously serve, they enhance the pleasure of reading poetic composition, by increasing the boundary of separation set up, especially in our language, between it and common prose.

## EXERCISES.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Etymology in the following phrases and sentences:—

His courage 'gan fail.—Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast.—  
 'Twas mine, 'tis his.—Vain tampering has but fostered his disease.—  
 Enchained he lay, a monster.—What way soe'er he turned, it met  
 him.—Th' aerial pencil forms the scene anew.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Syntax in the following sentences:—

The law I gave to nature him forbids.—So little mercy shows who  
 needs so much.—My head is filled with dew, and my locks with the  
 drops of the night.—Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow.—  
 He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Point out, name, and define, the figures of Rhetoric in the following sentences:—

As thy day is, so shall thy strength be.—Without discipline, the  
 favorite, like a neglected forester, runs wild.—Thy name is as ointment  
 poured forth.—The Lord God is a sun and shield.—I saw their  
 chief, tall as a rock of ice, his spear the blasted fir.—At which the  
 universal host sent up a shout that tore hell's concave.

## PART IV.

### PROSODY.

---

**1050.** *Prosody* treats of *Elocution* and *Versification*.

#### ELOCUTION.

**1051.** *Elocution* is correct *pronunciation*, and the proper *management of the voice* in reading or speaking.

In order to read and speak with *grace* and *effect*, attention must be paid to correct *enunciation*, the proper *pitch* of the voice, the *accent* and *quantity* of the syllables, and to *emphasis*, *pauses*, and *tones*.

**1052.**—1. The *enunciation* should be distinct and clear upon every letter and syllable, giving to each element its proper sound.

**1053.**—2. In the *pitch* and management of the voice, it should be neither too high nor too low; the utterance neither too quick nor too slow, and neither too varied nor too monotonous.

**1054.**—3. *Accent* is the laying of a particular stress of voice on a certain syllable in a word, as the syllable *vir-* in *vir' tue*, *vir' tuous*.

**1053.**—4. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time which is required to pronounce it. A long syllable, in quantity, is equal to two short ones. Thus, *pine*, *tube*, *note*, require to be sounded as long again as *pin*, *tub*, *not*. In English versification, an *accented syllable* is *long*, an *unaccented* one is *short*.

**1056.**—5. *Emphasis* means that greater stress of the voice which we lay on some particular word or words, in order to mark their superior importance in the sentence, and thereby the better to convey the idea intended by the writer or speaker.

**1057.**—6. *Pauses*, or rests, are cessations of the voice, in order to enable the reader or speaker to take breath, and to give the hearer a distinct perception of the meaning, not only of each sentence, but of the whole discourse (985). For poetic pauses, see (1115, 1118).

**1058.—7. *Tones*** consist in the modulation of the voice, and the notes, or variations of sound, which we employ in speaking, to express the different sentiments, emotions, or feelings, intended.

\*.\* A full consideration of these topics, in a work of this kind, would be as impracticable as it would be out of place, since it would require a volume for that purpose. They are fully treated of and exemplified in works on elocution,—a subject which is, or should be, taken up as a separate branch of study.

## VERSIFICATION.

**1059. *Versification*** is the art of arranging words into poetical lines, or *verses*.

**1060. A *Verse*, or *Poetical Line***, consists of a certain number of accented and unaccented syllables, arranged according to fixed rules. This regular alternation of long and short syllables constitutes *Rhythm*.

**1061. A *Couplet*, or *Distich***, consists of two lines or verses taken together, whether rhyming with each other or not. A *Triplet* consists of three lines rhyming together.

**1062. A *Stanza*** is a combination of several verses or lines, varying in number according to the poet's fancy, and constituting a regular division of a poem or song. This is often incorrectly called a *verse*.

**1063. *Rhyme*** is the similarity of sound in the last syllables of two or more lines arranged in a certain order. Poetry, the verses of which have this similarity, is sometimes called *Rhyme*.

**1064. *Blank Verse*** is the name given to that species of poetry which is without rhyme.

## Feet.

**1065. *Feet*** are the smaller portions into which a line is divided—each of which consists of two or more syllables, combined according to accent.

**1066.** In English versification, an *accented* syllable is accounted *long*; an *unaccented* syllable, *short*. In the following

examples, a straight line, or *macron* (—), over a syllable shows that it is accented, and a curved line, or *breve* (˘), that it is unaccented.

**1097. Monosyllables**, which, when alone, are regarded as without accent, often receive it when placed in a poetical line, and are *long* or *short*, according as they are with or without the accent. Thus—

“Tô rouse him with thě spŭr and rein,  
With mōre thăn rāptŭre's rāy.”

[In the ancient languages, each syllable has a certain quantity, long or short, independent of accent, for which there are certain definite rules. In this they differ widely from the English.]

**1068. Meter, or Measure**, is the arrangement of a certain number of poetical feet in a verse or line.

1. When a line has the proper metre, or number of feet, it is called *Acatalectic*.

2. When it is deficient, it is called *Catalectic*.

3. When it has a redundant syllable, it is called *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermeter*.

**1069.** A line consisting of one foot is called *monometer*; of two, *dimeter*; of three, *trimeter*; of four, *tetrameter*; of five, *pentameter*; of six, *hexameter*; of seven, *heptameter*.

**1070. Scanning** is dividing a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

**1071.** All feet in poetry are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables, and four of three, as follows:—

#### I. FEET OF TWO SYLLABLES.

1. An Iambus ˘ —; as, dĕfĕnd.
2. A Trochee — ˘; as, nŏblĕ.
3. A Spondee — —; as, vāin mān.
4. A Pyrrhic ˘ ˘; as, ŏn ŏ (hill).

#### II. FEET OF THREE SYLLABLES.

1. An Anapæst ˘ ˘ —; as, ĭntĕrcĕde.
2. A Dactyl — ˘ ˘; as, Dŭrāblĕ.
3. An Amphibrach ˘ — ˘; as, ābŭndānt.
4. A Tribrach ˘ ˘ ˘; as, (tol) ĕrāblĕ.

**1072.** Of all these, the *principal* are the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Anapæst*, and *Dactyl*. The other four feet are used chiefly in connection with these, in order to give variety to the measure.

**1073.** A *Trochee* has the first syllable accented, and the last unaccented; as, *nōblē, mūsic*.

**1074.** An *Iambus* has the first syllable unaccented, and the last accented; as, *ādōre, dēfēnd*.

**1075.** A *Spondee* has both the words or syllables accented; as, “*vāin mān*.”

**1076.** A *Pyrrhic* has both the words or syllables unaccented; as, “*ōn ā* (hill).

**1077.** A *Dactyl* has the first syllable accented, and the two last unaccented; as, *vīrtuōūs*.

**1078.** An *Amphibrach* has the first and the last syllable unaccented, and the middle one accented; as, *cōntēntmēt*.

**1079.** An *Anapæst* has the the two first syllables unaccented, and the last accented; as, *īntērcōde*.

**1080.** A *Tribrach* has all its syllables unaccented; as, *num|ēr-ōnē*.

**1081.** A verse is usually named from the name of the foot which predominates in it; thus, *Iambic, Trochaic, etc.*

### I. *Iambic Verse.*

**1082.** An *iambic* verse consists of iambuses, and consequently has the accent on the *second, fourth, sixth, etc.*, syllables. It has different metres, as follows:

1. Tis swēet.

2. With thēe | wē rise.

3. In plā | cēs fūr | ōr neār.

4. Hōw sleēp | thē brāve | whō sīnk | tō rēst.

5. Fōr mē | yoūr trīb | ūtā | rỹ stōres | cōmbīne.

6. His heārt | is sād, | his hōpe | is gōne, | his light | is pāssed.

7. Whēn āll | thỹ mēr | cīes, O | mỹ Gōd, | mỹ rīs | īng sōul | sūrvēys.

**1083.** Each of these kinds of *iambic* verse may have an *additional* short syllable, and so be called *iambic hypermeter*; thus:—

1. Disdāin | īng.

2. Upon | a moun | tāin.

3. When on | her Mak | er's bo | sōm.

4. But hail, | thou god | dess, sage | and ho | lỹ.

5. What slen | der youth | bedewed | with liq | uid o | dōr.

6. Whose front | can brave | the storm | but will | not rear | the flow | ēr.

7. To scat|ter o'er|his path|of fame|bright hues | of gem- | like show|ēra.

**1084.** It often happens that a *trochee*, or sometimes a *spondee*, is admitted in the place of the *first foot*, which gives a pleasing variety to the verse; as—

Plānēts | ānd sūns | rūn lāw | lēss through | thē sky.  
 Fīerce, hārd | y, proūd | in cōn | sciōus frēe | dōm bōld.

**1085. Iambic Monometer, Dimeter, and Trimeter.**—Of these meters there is no regular form, but they are sometimes introduced into stanzas.

**1086. Iambic Tetrameter.**—This verse may extend through a considerable number of stanzas.

**1087. Iambic Pentameter.**—Iambic verse of five feet is called *heroic* verse. Such is Milton's "Paradise Lost," etc. By the admission of trochees, anapaests, etc., in certain places, it is capable of many varieties.

**1088. Iambic Hexameter.**—A verse of six feet is called *Alexandrine*.

**1089.** The *Elegiac* stanza consists of four pentameter lines rhyming alternately; as—

Thē cūr | fēw tōlls | thē knēll | ōf pārt | īng dāy,  
 The lowing herd winds slowly o'er the lea;  
 The ploughman homeward plods his weary way,  
 And leaves the world to darkness and to me.

**1090.** The *Spenserian* stanza (which takes its name from the poet Spenser) consists of eight pentameter or heroic verses, followed by one hexameter, or Alexandrine verse. This is the stanza in which the "Fairie Queene" is written.

**1091. Iambic Heptameter.**—Iambic verses of seven feet, formerly written in one line, are now commonly *divided* into two, one of *four*, and one of *three* feet; as—

Whēn āll | thy mēr | cies, O | my Gōd,  
 My ris | ing soul | surveys,  
 Transport | ed with the view, | I'm lost  
 In won | der, love, | and praise.

**1092.** This is called *common meter*. Stanzas having *three* feet in the first, second, and fourth lines, and *four* in the third, are called *short meter*; and those consisting of four lines, each containing *four* feet, are called *long meter*.



*Trochaic Verse.*

**1093.** *Trochaic verse* consists of Trochees, and consequently has the accent on the *first, third, fifth, etc.*, syllables. It has different meters, as follows:—

1. Staying.
2. Rich thē | treāsūre.
3. Gō whēre | glōry | wāits thēe.
4. Māids āre | sittīng | by thē | fōuntain.
5. Oh! thē | strife ōf | thīs dī | vīdēd | bēīng.
6. On ā | mōuntain, | strētched bē | nēath ā | hōārē | wīllōw.

**1094.** Each of these may take an additional long syllable, and so become *hypercatalectic*, or *hypermeter*; thus—

1. Tūmūlt | cēāse.
2. In the | days of | ōld.
3. Restless | mortals | toil for | nōught.
4. Idle | after | dinner, | in his | chāīr.
5. Hail to | thee, blithe | spirit! | bird thou | never | wērt.
6. Night and | morning | were at | meeting, | over | Water | lōo.

**1095.** In the last two forms, each line is usually *divided into two*; thus—

5. Hail to | thee, blithe | spirit!  
Bird thou | never | wert.
6. Night and | morning | were at | meeting,  
Over | Water | loo.

**1096.** *Trochaic verse*, with an additional long syllable at the end, is the same as *Iambic verse* wanting a short syllable at the beginning.

*Anapæstic Verse.*

**1097.** *Anapæstic verse* consists chiefly of *Anapæsts*, and, when pure, has the accent on *every third* syllable. It has different meters, as follows:—

1. Būt tōo fār.
2. Būt hīs cōūr | āge 'gān fāil.
3. O yē woōds! | sprēad yōūr brānch | ēs āpāce.  
To your deep | est recess | es I fly;  
I wōuld hīde | with the beasts | of the chase,  
I wōuld vān | ish from ev | ery eye.
4. Māy I gōv | ērn mē pās | sīōns wīth āb | sōlūte swāy,  
And grow wīs | er and bet | ter as life | wears āway.

**1098.** Of these, the *first* is *ambiguous*; for by placing an accent on the first syllable, it becomes a *trochaic monometer hypermeter*.

**1099.** The *second* sometimes admits an additional short syllable at the end; as—

On thē rōad | bȳ thē vāl | lēy,  
As he wan | dered lament | īng;  
To the green | of the for | ēst,  
He returned | him repent | īng.

**1100.** The *third* is a very pleasing measure, and is much used in both solemn and cheerful subjects; but it seldom takes an *additional syllable*.

**1101.** The *fourth*, or *tetrameter*, admits an *additional syllable*, which often has a pleasing effect; as—

On the warm | cheek of youth | smiles and ros | es are blend | īng.

#### *Dactylic Verse.*

**1102.** *Dactylic* verse consists chiefly of Dactyls, and has the following varieties:—

1. Fēarfully.
2. Frēe frōm sǣ | tihtȳ,  
Care and anx | iety,  
Charms in va | riety  
Fall to his | share.
3. Weāring ā | wāy in his | yōuthfūlnēss

**1103.** Each of these sometimes takes an *additional long syllable*, and so becomes *hypermeter*; as—

1. Ovēr ā | mead,  
Pricking his | steed.
2. Cōvērēd with | snōw wās thē | vale,  
Sad was the | shriek of the | gale.
3. Time it hās | pāsēd, ānd thē | lādȳ is | pāle.

**1104.** By combining these kinds, examples of *tetrameter*, *pentameter*, and even *hexameter* are obtained; but they are *seldom used*.

**1105.** A *dactylic verse* seldom ends with a dactyl; it more commonly *adds a long syllable*, sometimes a *trochee*, as in the following lines:—

Brightēst ānd | bēst ōf thē | sōns ōf thē | mōrning,  
Dawn on our | darkness and | lend us thine | aid.

**1106.** The following is an example of *dactyls* and *spondees* alternately :—

Grēen in thē|wildwōod|prouđlŷ thē|tāll trēe|loōks ōn thē|brōwn plāin.

The following is an example of *pure dactylic hexameter* :—

Ovēr thē|vāllēy, with|spēed like thē|wind, āll thē|stēds wēre ā | gāl-  
lōping.

**1107.** Considering the beauty of this kind of verse, and its peculiar adaptedness to gay and cheerful movements, it is surprising that it has not been more cultivated.

### Mixed Verses.

**1108.** Scarcely any poem is perfectly regular in its feet. *Iambic* verse, for example, sometimes *admits other feet* into the line, particularly at the beginning, as has been already noticed. The following are examples of *iambic lines* with different feet introduced :—

*Trochee.* Prōphēt | of plagues, | forev | er bod | ing ill !

*Dactyl.* Mūrmūring, | and with | him fled | the shades | of night.

*Anapæst.* Before | all tem | plēs thē ūp | right heart | and pure.

*Pyrrhic.* Brought death | intō | the world | and all | our wo.

*Tribrach.* And thun | ders down | impet | ōōūs tō | the plain.

**1109.** In *iambic* verse, the initial short syllable is sometimes omitted; and the verse becomes *trochaic* with an additional long syllable.

**1110.** In *trochaic* verse, the initial long syllable is sometimes omitted; and the line becomes *iambic* with an additional short syllable.

**1111.** If the two short syllables are omitted at the beginning of an *anapæstic* line, it becomes *dactylic* with a long syllable added. So—

**1112.** If the initial long syllable is omitted in a *dactylic* verse, it becomes *anapæstic* with two short syllables added.

**1113.** A pleasing movement is produced by intermingling *iambuses* and *anapæsts*, as in the following lines :—

"I come, | I come! | yě hāve cāllēd | me long ;

I come | o'ēr thē moŭn | tains with light | and song!

Yě mǎy trāce | my steps | o'ēr thē wāk | ēning eārth.

Bŷ thē winds | which tell | ōf thē vī | ōlēt's birth,

Bŷ thē prīm | rose stars | ōf thē shād | ōwŷ grās,

Bŷ thē grēen | leaves op | ēning ās | I pās."

1114. In odes and lyric pieces, verses of *different kinds* and *different metres* or measures are often *intermingled*, after the manner of the ancient choral odes, with a pleasing effect. "Alexander's Feast," Collins's "Ode to the Passions," etc., are examples.

### Poetic Pauses.

1115. Besides the usual pauses required to mark the sense in reading, and which may be called *sentential pauses*, indicated by the punctuation, there are other pauses in poetic composition required by, and necessary to give proper effect to, the movement of the line.

1116. These are chiefly the *Final* pause and the *Cæsural* pause.

1117. The *final pause* is generally required at the end of every line of poetry, even where there is no sentential pause; but it should not be too distinctly marked, as it consists merely in a brief suspension of the voice without any change in the *tone* or *pitch*. When a sentential pause occurs at the end of the line, as it does very often, it takes the place of, and supersedes the *final* pause.

1118. The *cæsural pause* is a suspension of the voice somewhere in the line itself, for which no rule can be given, but which will always be manifest when poetry is well read. It does not occur in very short lines. In lines of some length, it generally occurs near the middle; sometimes, however, nearer the beginning, and sometimes nearer the end; often in the middle of a foot, but never in the middle of a word. Sometimes, besides this, a sort of *demicæsural* pause is required, to give full effect to the expression. The following lines furnish examples of the *cæsural* pause in different parts of the line, and also of the *demicæsural* pause. The former is marked (") and the latter ('):—

"The steer and lion" at one crib shall meet,  
And harmless serpents" lick the pilgrim's feet."

"The crested basilisk" and speckled snake."

"And on the sightless eyeballs" pour the day."

—————"But not to me returns  
Day," or the sweet approach of even or morn."

"No sooner had the Almighty ceased," but all  
The multitude of angels" with a shout,  
Loud" as from numbers without numbers," sweet  
As from blest voices" uttering joy."

" Warms' in the sun," refreshes' in the breeze,  
 Glows' in the stars," and blossoms' in the trees ;  
 Lives' through all life," extends' through all extent,  
 Spreads' undivided," operates' unspent."

These pauses depend in part upon emphasis.

EXERCISES.

As exercises in *scanning*, lines or stanzas from any poetical work may be selected.

---

COMPOSITION.

**1119.** *Composition* is the art of expressing our thoughts in spoken or written language. It is of two kinds, *Prose* and *Poetry*.

**1120.** *Prose* compositions are those in which the thoughts are expressed in the natural order, in common and ordinary language.

**1121.** *Poetic* compositions are those in which the thoughts and sentiments are expressed in measured verse, in loftier and more inverted style, by words and figures selected and arranged so as to please the ear, and captivate the fancy.

**1122.** In both of these, speech or discourse is either *direct* or *indirect*.

**1123.** *Direct discourse* is that in which a writer or speaker delivers his own sentiments.

**1124.** *Indirect* or *oblique discourse* is that in which a person relates, in his own language, what another speaker or writer said.

**1125.** In the *first*, when the speaker *refers to himself*, he uses the *first person I or we*. When he refers to the person or persons addressed, he uses the *second person thou, you*, etc.

**1126.** In the *second* or *indirect discourse*, whether the speaker is reported as referring to himself, or to those whom he addresses, the *third person* is used in either case ; as, *he, she, they*, etc. An example will best illustrate the distinction. Thus :—

## 1127.

## DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Then Paul stood in the midst of Mars-hill and said : " Ye men of Athens, I perceive that in all things ye are too superstitious ; for as I passed by and beheld your devotions, I found an altar with this inscription : ' To THE UNKNOWN GOD.' Whom, therefore, ye ignorantly worship, Him declare I unto you."

## 1128.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

The same, reported in indirect or oblique discourse, would run thus :—

Then Paul, standing on Mars-hill, told the men of Athens, *he* perceived that in all things *they* were too superstitious ; for as *he* passed by and beheld *their* devotions, *he* found an altar with this inscription : " To THE UNKNOWN GOD." Whom, therefore, *they* ignorantly worshipped, Him declared *he* unto them.

1129. When the reporter, the speaker reported, and the person or persons addressed, are different in gender or number, there is no danger of ambiguity. But when in these respects they are the same, ambiguity is unavoidable, from the same pronoun being used in the progress of the discourse, to designate different persons. Hence, to prevent mistakes, it is often necessary to insert the name or designation of the person meant by the pronoun. An example will best illustrate this also :—

" Then the son went to his father and said to him [*direct*], ' I have sinned against heaven and in thy sight.' "

" Then the son went to his father and said to him [*indirect*], that he (the son) had sinned against heaven and in his (his father's) sight."

It will at once be perceived that, without the words enclosed in parenthesis, for explanation, it would be impossible to tell whether by the word *he*, the *father* or the *son* was intended ; so also with respect to the word *his*. Hence, when by the *indirect* discourse, ambiguity is unavoidable, it is generally better to have recourse to the *direct* form, and quote the writer's or speaker's own words, as in (1127).

1130. The principal kinds of *prose* composition are—*narrative, letters, memoirs, history, biography, essays, philosophy, sermons, novels, speeches, and orations.*

1131. The principal kinds of *poetical* composition are—the *epigram, the epitaph, the sonnet, pastoral poetry, didactic poetry, satires, descriptive poetry, elegy, lyric poetry, dramatic poetry, and epic poetry.*

## The Use of Grammar in Composition.

**1132.** To speak and write with propriety, in every species of composition, is an attainment of no small importance ; and to lead to this attainment is the business of *grammar*. The *grammar* of a language is just a compilation of rules and directions, agreeably to which that language is spoken or written. These rules, however, are not the invention of the *grammarian*, nor dependent on his authority for their validity. As it is the business of the philosopher, not to *make* a law of Nature, nor to *dictate* how her operations should be performed, but, by close observation, to *ascertain what those laws are*, and to *state* them for the information of others ; so the business of the *grammarian* is, not to *make* the laws of language, for *language is before grammar*, but to observe and note those principles, and forms, and modes of speech, by which men are accustomed to express their sentiments, and to arrange the results of his observation into a system of rules for the guidance and assistance of others. It is obvious, then, that the ultimate principle or *test* to which the *rules* laid down by the *grammarian must conform, is the best usage*.

**1133.** Hence, when the inquiry is whether a particular word or form of speech is *right*, is *good English*, the only question to be decided is, "*Is it according to the best usage?*" On this subject, however, it has been made a question, "What is the best usage?" The following sentiments, abridged from Dr. CROMBIE's work on English Etymology and Syntax, seem to be just, and comprehensive of this whole subject :—

### *The Law of Language.*

**1134.** The *usage* which gives law to language, in order to establish its authority, or to entitle its suffrage to our assent, must be, in the first place, *reputable* ; by which is meant, not the usage of the court, nor great men, nor merely scientific men ; but of those whose works are *esteemed by the public*, and who may therefore be denominated *reputable* authors.

**1135.** In the second place, this usage must be *national*. It must not be confined to this or that province or district. "Those," to use Campbell's apposite similitude, "who deviate from the beaten road may be incomparably more numerous than those who travel in it ; yet, into whatever number of by-paths the former may be divided, there

may not be found in any one of these tracks so many as travel in the king's highway."

**1136.** *Thirdly*, This usage must be *present*. It is difficult to fix, with any precision, what usage may in all cases be deemed *present*. It is, perhaps, in this respect, different with different compositions. In general, words and forms of speech which have been long disused should not be employed. And so, on the contrary, the usage of the present day is not implicitly to be adopted. Mankind are fond of novelty, and there is a fashion in language as there is in dress. Whim, vanity, and affectation, delight in creating new words, and using new forms of phraseology. Now, to adopt every new-fangled upstart at its birth, would argue, not taste, nor judgment, but childish fondness for singularity and novelty. But should any of these maintain its ground, and receive the sanction of reputable usage, it must in that case be received.

**1137.** The usage, then, which gives law to language, and which is generally denominated good usage, must be *reputable*, *national*, and *present*. It happens, however, that "good usage" is not always uniform in her decisions, and that in unquestionable authorities are found far different modes of expression. In such cases, the following CANONS, proposed by Dr. Campbell, will be of service in enabling to decide to which phraseology the preference ought to be given. They are given nearly in the words of the author:—

**1138.** CANON 1.—When the *usage is divided* as to any particular words or phrases, and when one of the expressions is susceptible of a *different* meaning, while the other admits of only *one* signification, the expression which is strictly *univocal* should be *preferred*.

**1139:** CANON 2.—In *doubtful* cases, *analogy* should be regarded.

**1140.** CANON 3.—When expressions are, in other respects, *equal*, that should be preferred which is *most agreeable to the ear*.

**1141.** CANON 4.—When none of the preceding rules takes place, regard should be had to *simplicity*.

**1142.** But though no expression or mode of speech can be just-



fied which is not sanctioned by usage, yet the converse does not follow—that every phraseology sanctioned by usage should be retained. In many such cases, custom may properly be checked by criticism, whose province it is, not only to remonstrate against the introduction of any words or phraseology which may be either unnecessary or contrary to analogy, but also to extrude whatever is reprehensible, though in general use. It is by this, her prerogative, that languages are gradually refined and improved. In exercising this authority, she can not pretend to degrade instantly any phraseology which she may deem objectionable; but she may, by repeated remonstrances, gradually effect its dismissal. Her decisions in such cases may be properly regulated by the following rules, laid down by the same author:—

**1143. RULE 1.**—All words and phrases particularly *harsh*, and *not absolutely necessary*, should be dismissed.

**1144. RULE 2.**—When the *etymology* plainly points to a *different signification* from what the word bears, propriety and simplicity require its dismissal.

**1145. RULE 3.**—When words become *obsolete*, or are never used but in particular phrases, they should be *repudiated*, as they give the style an air of vulgarity and cant when this general disuse renders them obscure.

**1146. RULE 4.**—All words and phrases which, analyzed grammatically, include a *solecism*, should be dismissed.

**1147. RULE 5.**—All expressions which, according to the established rules of language, either have *no meaning*, or involve a *contradiction*, or, according to a fair construction of the words, convey a meaning *different* from the intention of the speaker, should be dismissed.

**1148.** In order to write any language with grammatical purity, three things are required:—

1. That the words be *all of that language*. The violation of this rule is called a *barbarism*.

2. That they be construed and arranged according to the *rules of syntax* in that language. A violation of this rule is called a *solecism*.

3. That they be employed in that sense which *usage* has annexed to them. A violation of this rule is called *impropriety*.

**1149.** A *barbarism* is an offense against *lexicography*; a *solecism* is an offense against the *rules of syntax*; and an *impropriety* is an offense against *lexicography*, by mistaking the meaning of words and phrases.

### *Hints for Correct and Elegant Writing.*

**1150.** Correct and elegant writing depends partly upon the *choice of words*, and partly upon the *form and structure of sentences*.

I. In so far as respects *single words*, the chief things to be observed are *purity*, *propriety*, and *precision*.

#### Purity.

**1151.** *Purity* consists in the rejection of such words and phrases as are not strictly English, nor in accordance with the practice of good writers or speakers.

1. Avoid *foreign* words and modes of expression; as, "*Fraicheur*" — "*politesse*" — "He repents him of his folly."
2. Avoid *obsolete* and *unauthorized* words; as, *albeit*, *aforetime*, *inspector*, *judgmatical*.

#### Propriety.

**1152.** *Propriety* consists in the use of such words as are best adapted to express our meaning.

1. Avoid *low* and *provincial* expressions; as, "To get into a scrape."
2. In writing *prose*, reject words that are merely poetical; as, "This morn." — "The celestial orbs."
3. Avoid *technical* terms, unless you write for those who perfectly understand them.
4. Do not use the *same word too frequently*, or in different senses; as, "The king communicated his intention to the minister, *who* disclosed it to the secretary, *who* made it known to the public." — "His own *reason* might have suggested better *reasons*."
5. *Supply words that are wanting*, and necessary to complete the sense. Thus, instead of "This action increased his former services," say, "This action increased the *merit* of his former services."

6. Avoid *equivocal* or *ambiguous* expressions; as, "His *memory* shall be lost on the earth."

7. Avoid *unintelligible* and *inconsistent* expressions; as, "I have an *opaque* idea of what you mean."

### Precision.

**1153.** *Precision* rejects superfluous words.

1. Avoid *tautology*; as, "His *faithfulness* and *fidelity* were unequalled."

2. Observe the *exact meaning* of words accounted synonymous. Thus, instead of "Though his actions and intentions were good, he lost his *character*," say, "He lost his *reputation*."

II. With respect to *sentences, clearness, unity, strength*, and a proper application of the *figures of speech*, are necessary.

### Clearness.

**1154.** *Clearness* demands a proper arrangement of words.

1. *Adverbs, relative pronouns, and explanatory phrases*, must be placed as near as possible to the words which they affect, and in such situation as the sense requires.

2. In *prose*, a poetic collocation must be avoided.

3. *Pronouns* must be so used as clearly to indicate the word for which they stand.

### Unity.

**1155.** *Unity* retains one predominant object throughout a sentence, or a series of clauses.

1. Separate into *distinct sentences* such clauses as have no immediate connection.

2. The *principal words* must, throughout a sentence, be the *most prominent*, and only one *leading subject* should be presented.

3. *Avoid* the introduction of *parentheses*, except when a lively remark may be thrown in, without too long suspending the sense of what goes before.

### Strength.

**1156.** *Strength* gives to every word and every member its due importance.

1. Reject all *superfluous words and members*. This is also one of the elements of *precision* (1153). In the following sen-

tence, the word printed in italics should be omitted: "*Being* conscious of his own integrity, he disdained submission."

2. Place the most *important words* in the situation in which they will make the strongest impression.

3. A *weaker assertion* should not follow a stronger; and, when the sentence consists of two members, the *longer* should be the *concluding one*.

4. When *two things* are compared or contrasted with each other where either resemblance or opposition is to be expressed, some *resemblance* in the language and construction should be preserved.

5. A sentence should not be *concluded with a preposition*, or any inconsiderable word or phrase, unless it is emphatic.

### 1157. Figures of Speech.

1. *Figurative language* must be used sparingly, and never except when it serves to illustrate or enforce what is said.

2. *Figures of speech*, when used, should be such as appear *natural*, not remote or foreign from the subject, and not pursued too far.

3. *Literal and figurative language* should *never be blended* together.

4. When figurative language is used, the *same figure* should be preserved throughout, and different figures never jumbled together.

### Transposition.

1158. As a preparatory step to the important business of composition, the pupil, after he has acquired a knowledge of grammar, may be exercised with great advantage upon the *transposition* of words and members in sentences, so as to try in how many different ways the same thought or sentiment may be expressed. This will give him a command of language, and prove, at the same time, a source of considerable mental cultivation. It is often necessary to give an entirely new turn to an expression, before a sentence can be rendered elegant, or even perspicuous.

1159. There are chiefly *four* ways in which the mode of expressing a thought may be varied:—

1. By changing an *active* into a *passive*, or a *passive* into an *active verb*; as, "The sun *dissolves* the snow."—"The snow *is dissolved* by the sun."

2. By inversions or transpositions, which consist in changing the *order* in which the words stand in a sentence; as, "Competence may be acquired by industry."—"By industry, competence may be acquired."

3. By changing an *affirmative* into a *negative*, or a negative into an affirmative, of an entirely contrary character; as, "Virtue promotes happiness."—"Virtue does not promote misery."

4. By either a partial or an entire *change of the words* employed to express any sentiment; as, "Diligence and application are the best means of improvement."—"Nothing promotes improvement like diligence and application."

#### EXERCISES ON TRANSPOSITION.

The Roman state evidently declined, in proportion to the increase of luxury. I am willing to remit all that is past, provided it can be done with safety. A good man has respect to the feelings of others in all that he says or does. Bravely to contend for a good cause is noble; silently to suffer for it is heroic.

#### EXAMPLE OF TRANSPOSITION

The Roman state evidently declined, in proportion to the increase of luxury. In proportion to the increase of luxury, the Roman state evidently declined. The Roman state, in proportion to the increase of luxury, evidently declined.

#### EXERCISES ON VARIETY OF EXPRESSION.

His conduct was less praiseworthy than his sister's. It is better to be moved by false glory than not to be moved at all. I shall attend the meeting, if I can do it with convenience. He who improves in modesty as he improves in knowledge, has an undoubted claim to greatness of mind. The spirit of true religion breathes gentleness and affability.

#### EXAMPLE OF VARIETY OF EXPRESSION.

His conduct was less praiseworthy than his sister's. His sister's conduct was more praiseworthy than his. His sister's mode of acting was entitled to more praise than his. His conduct was less entitled to praise than that of his sister, etc.

**1160.** Another exercise, not destitute of utility as a foundation for composition, consists in giving the pupil, especially if very young, a *list of words*, with directions to form from them such sentences as shall contain these words.

## EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

*Construct a number of such sentences as shall each contain one or more of the following words:—Contentment, behavior, consideration, elevation, distance, application, respect, duty, intercourse, evidence, social, bereavement, nonsensical, absurdity, elucidate, consternation, temperance, luxury, disarm, expatiate, etc.*

*Letters.*

**1161.** One of the simplest and yet most useful species of composition is *letter writing*. This species of composition may be practiced either by way of *real correspondence* between those pursuing the same studies, or it may consist of letters written to *imaginary* correspondents. The following are a few topics adapted to composition of this latter kind:—

**Letter 1.**—Write to a friend at a distance. State to him the object of your writing. Tell him what studies you are pursuing, and how you like them. Mention how yourself and friends are. Give an account of some of the alterations which have been lately made, or are now making, in your neighborhood; and conclude by expressing your desire either to see him or hear from him soon.

**Letter 2.**—Write to a companion an account of a long walk which you lately had. Tell him whether you were alone or in company. Mention what particular thing struck you by the way; and enumerate all the incidents of any moment that occurred.

**Letter 3.**—Write to a friend who is supposed to have sent you a present of books, and thank him for such kindness. Tell him the use you intend to make of them; and inform him to what particular books you are most partial. Conclude by giving some account of those you have lately been reading, and how you like them.

**Letter 4.**—Write to a friend supposed to be going abroad. Describe to him how you would feel if called to leave your friends and your native country. Express your regret at losing him, but state your hope that you will not forget each other when seas roll between you. Request him to write to you frequently; and advise him to be careful about his health and of the society he keeps.

**Letter 5.**—Write to a friend at a distance, and give him an account of a sail which you lately had in a steamboat. Mention what places you visited, and state the objects that most delighted you. Tell him how long you were away, what sort of weather you had, and what were your feelings upon returning home.

**Letter 6.**—Write to a friend an account of the church you were at last Sabbath. Tell who preached. Mention the psalms or hymns that were sung, and the portions of Scripture that were read. State the text from which the minister preached; and give your opinion of the different sermons.

**1162.** These have been given as mere specimens of the subjects upon which the student who has acquired a knowledge of grammar may be required to write. The prudent and skillful teacher will be enabled to multiply and vary them at pleasure to any extent.

### *Reproduction.*

**1163.** Another method of exercising the minds of pupils in composition consists in reading some *simple story* or *narrative*, till such time as they are acquainted with the *facts*, and then directing them to *express these in their own words*. A still further, and perhaps even a simpler method, is, to take advantage of a young person's having given some account of what he has either seen, heard, or read, and desire him to *commit to writing* what he has stated *orally*.

### *Impromptu Composition.*

**1164.** For the purpose of securing readiness and facility in the expression of thought, and cultivating vigor of mind, *impromptu exercises* in composition are earnestly recommended. The pupils are all seated with slate (or paper) and pencil in hand, when the teacher writes upon the blackboard or announces some *simple theme*. At a given signal all the pupils begin to write. The exercises may occupy from three to ten minutes. At a signal from the teacher all cease writing. No emendations are afterward to be made by any pupil, before the reading. Each pupil, or so many as it is deemed expedient, may now be called upon to read, and the pupils first, and afterward the teacher, criticize in a friendly spirit. The results at first will not be very promising, but practice will develop skill on the part of the pupils, and create interest in the exercise.

### *Themes.*

**1165.** The next step in composition is the writing of *regular themes*. The subject, however, should always be such as is *not above the capacity* of the person who is desired to compose, for, if it is, the whole benefit resulting from the exercise will be nullified.

A *theme* is a regular, set subject, upon which a person is required to write; or the dissertation that has been written upon such a sub-

ject. Some of the simplest subjects for themes are those drawn from *natural history* or *natural philosophy*. At all events, they should not, in the first instance, be drawn from subjects of an abstruse and abstract character.

**1166.** The following may serve as specimens in this department:—

**Theme 1.—The horse.**—1. Describe what sort of an animal the horse is. 2. Tell some of the different kinds. 3. Mention the various ways in which this noble animal is serviceable to man. 4. State what would be the consequence of wanting him. 5. Mention the treatment to which he is entitled, and the cruelty of ill-using such a creature.

Write themes upon the *cow*, the *dog*, the *sheep*, *poultry*; and follow the same plan as that followed in writing upon the horse.

**Theme 2.—The sun.**—1. Begin by stating what the sun is. 2. Tell all you know of its size, figure, and distance from our earth. 3. Mention the effect it has upon the earth, and the benefits we derive from it. 4. State what would be the consequence if the sun were extinguished; and what our feelings ought to be toward the Supreme Being for such an object.

Write themes upon the *moon*, the *stars*, *fire*, *air*, and *water*; and in all, follow the same plan.

**Theme 3.—Day and night.**—1. Tell what you mean by day and night. 2. State whether they are always alike long, and what is the advantage arising from their length being different at different seasons. 3. Mention the different purposes to which they are adapted. 4. Say of what the continued succession of day and night is fitted to remind us, and how this should lead us to act.

Write themes upon the *different seasons*, and upon the *mountains*, *rivers*, and the *tides of the sea*; and follow a similar plan in the whole.

**Theme 4.—On composition.**—1. Explain what you mean by this term. 2. Point out the necessity of studying this art, by showing how much it contributes to add to the value of one's knowledge. 3. Mention what is necessary to fit one for composing well. 4. State the means by which skill in this art is to be obtained.

**Theme 5.—On company.**—1. Explain what you mean by company. 2. Show how natural it is for man to seek society. 3. State the danger of keeping either too much company, or of keeping bad company. 4. Point out the advantages of good company.



Write themes upon *conversation, study, improvement of time, choice of books, memory*, and the *different organs of sense*, etc., and in all, follow the same general method as you did in writing on company.

**Theme 6.—Narratives.**—Describe the place or scene of the actions related, the persons concerned in, the time, posture of affairs, state of mind, motives, ends, etc., of the actors; results.

Write themes upon the *discovery of America*, the *French war*, the *Revolutionary war*, the *battle of Bunker Hill*, the *French Revolution*.

**Theme 7.—Dissertations on remarkable events** in sacred or profane history.—The place, the origin, the circumstances, results, moral influence, etc.

Following this or a similar arrangement of parts, write compositions on: *the creation; death of Abel; the deluge; the world after the flood; the tower of Babel; the Israelites in Egypt; their deliverance from it; the giving of the law from Sinai; the advent of the Messiah—his death—his resurrection; destruction of Jerusalem; the siege of Troy; rise and fall of the Roman Empire; the Crusades; the burning of Moscow; the battle of Waterloo; the death of Bonaparte*, etc.

**Theme 8.—Biographies.**—Give an account of some of the most distinguished characters in different ages of the world,—warriors, statesmen, artists, philosophers, poets, orators, philanthropists, divines,—mentioning what is known respecting their country, parentage, education, character, principles, exploits, influence on society for good or evil, death.

**1167.** The following *list of themes* is selected from Parker's Exercises in Composition:—

- |                      |                     |                       |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. On Attention,     | 12. On Charity,     | 23. On Early Rising,  |
| 2. " Adversity,      | 13. " Clemency,     | 24. " Envy,           |
| 3. " Ardor of Mind,  | 14. " Compassion,   | 25. " Friendship,     |
| 4. " Art, [cal,      | 15. " Conscience,   | 26. " Fortune,        |
| 5. " Attachment, lo- | 16. " Constancy,    | 27. " Fear,           |
| 6. " Anger.          | 17. " Carelessness, | 28. " Forgiveness,    |
| 7. " Air,            | 18. " Curiosity,    | 29. " Government,     |
| 8. " Benevolence,    | 19. " Cheerfulness, | 30. " Grammar,        |
| 9. " Beauty,         | 20. " Contentment,  | 31. " Greatness, tri- |
| 10. " Biography,     | 21. " Diligence,    | 32. " Genius,         |
| 11. " Bad Scholar,   | 22. " Duplicity,    | 33. " Habit.          |

- |                     |                     |                  |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 84. On Honor,       | 48. On Novelty,     | 62. On Piety,    |
| 85. " Happiness,    | 49. " Night.        | 63. " Religion,  |
| 86. " Humility,     | 50. " Order,        | 64. " Reading,   |
| 87. " Hypocrisy,    | 51. " Ocean,        | 65. " Sincerity, |
| 88. " History,      | 52. " Pride,        | 66. " Summer,    |
| 89. " Hope,         | 53. " Party Spirit, | 67. " Spring,    |
| 40. " Indolence,    | 54. " Poverty,      | 68. " Sun,       |
| 41. " Industry,     | 55. " Principle,    | 69. " System,    |
| 42. " Ingratitude,  | 56. " Perseverance, | 70. " Truth,     |
| 43. " Justice,      | 57. " Patriotism,   | 71. " Time,      |
| 44. " Learning,     | 58. " Politeness,   | 72. " Talent,    |
| 45. " Love of Fame, | 59. " Providence,   | 73. " Vanity,    |
| 46. " Music,        | 60. " Punctuality,  | 74. " Virtue,    |
| 47. " Moon,         | 61. " Poetry,       | 75. " Wealth.    |
- 
- |                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 76. Knowledge is Power,           | 91. Public Opinion,                |
| 77. Progress of Error,            | 92. Diligence insures Success,     |
| 78. Progress of Truth,            | 93. Idleness destroys Character,   |
| 79. Government of the Tongue,     | 94. Contrivance proves Design,     |
| 80. Government of the Temper,     | 95. Avoid Extremes,                |
| 81. Government of the Affections, | 96. Visit to an Almshouse,         |
| 82. Love of Country,              | 97. Pleasures of Memory,           |
| 83. The Power of Association,     | 98. Example better than Precept,   |
| 84. Immortality of the Soul,      | 99. Misery is wed to Guilt,        |
| 85. The Uses of Knowledge,        | 100. Value of Time,                |
| 86. The Power of Conscience.      | 101. Virtue, the way to Happiness, |
| 87. The Power of Habit,           | 102. No one lives for Himself,     |
| 88. Life is Short,                | 103. Thou God seest me,            |
| 89. Miseries of Idleness,         | 104. Trust not Appearances,        |
| 90. Never too old to Learn,       | 105. Whatever is, is right.        |
- 
106. "An honest man's the noblest work of God."  
 107. Every man's the architect of his own fortune.  
 108. Man, "Mysterious link in being's endless chain."  
 109. "A little learning is a dangerous thing."  
 110. "How blessings brighten as they take their flight!"  
 111. Advantages derived from the invention of the mariner's compass  
       —of the telescope—the steam-engine—the art of printing.  
 112. History of a needle—a cent—a Bible—a beaver hat.  
 113. Description of a voyage to England—coast of Africa—Constanti-  
       nople—South America—East Indies—China.

# APPENDIX.

---

## I. SUFFIXES.

The limits of a grammatical text-book forbid such a full discussion of *suffixes* as is usually presented in works on Analysis of Words, and it has therefore been deemed best to make a classification on a grammatical, rather than a philological, basis, leaving to the works named above their proper office. The following is taken substantially from Morell's "Grammar of the English Language."

### 1. Structure of the Noun.

English nouns are either—1. *Original Roots* ; 2. *Primary Derivatives* or *Stems* ; 3. *Secondary Derivatives* or *Branches* ; or, 4. *Compound Words*.

1. The *original noun roots* consist of the names of all the *common objects* of nature and human life around us ; as, Sun, moon, star, sea, store, father, mother, hope, fear, love, eye, ear, hand, cow, sheep, dog, *etc.*

These words, and many others of the same kind, have descended to us from the old Saxon stock, from a period lying beyond all historical research. Some of them have undergone partial changes in spelling and pronunciation, but without at all losing their original character.

2. English nouns, which come under the title of *primary derivatives*, are also, with few exceptions, of Saxon origin. They are, for the most part, formed as follows :—

(1). By *modifying* the *root-vowel* (generally of a primitive verb) ; as, *Bless, bliss* ; *feed, food* ; *bind, bond* ; *set, seat* ; *knit, knot, net* ; *sing, song* ; *strike, stroke*, *etc.*

[Sometimes the noun retains the original verb-form.]

(2). By *modifying* the *final consonant* of the root, or adding another consonant ; as, *Stick, stitch* ; *dig, ditch* ; *heal, health* ; *drive, drift* ; *believe, belief*, *etc.*

(3). By *modifying* both *vowel* and *consonant* ; as, *Live, life, choose, choice ; lose, loss ; thieve, theft, etc.*

3. *Secondary Derivatives* are formed by a considerable variety of *suffixes*.

(a). *Saxon* derivatives are formed by the following :—

(1). *Signifying Agent or Doer.*

<i>er,</i>	as,	sing,	singer.	} Derived from Verbs.
<i>ar,</i>	as,	lie,	liar.	
<i>ard,</i>	as,	drink,	drunkard.	
<i>art,</i>	as,	brag,	braggart.	
<i>ster,</i>	as,	pun,	punster.	
<i>ess</i> (fem.),	as,	seam,	seamstress.	

(2). *Forming Diminutives.*

<i>ling,</i>	as,	dear,	darling.	} Derived from Nouns.
<i>kin,</i>	as,	lamb,	lambkin.	
<i>ock,</i>	as,	hill,	hillock.	
<i>let, or et,</i>	as,	{ stream,	{ streamlet,	
		{ flower,	{ floweret.	

(3). *Denoting Abstract Ideas, such as State, Condition, Action, etc.*

<i>ship,</i>	as,	friend,	friendship.	} Derived from Nouns.
<i>hood, or head,</i>	as,	man,	manhood.	
<i>dom,</i>	as,	king,	kingdom.	
<i>ery,</i>	as,	slave,	slavery.	
<i>age,</i>	as,	till,	tillage.	} Derived from Verbs.
<i>ter,</i>	as,	laugh,	laughter.	
<i>lock,</i>	as,	wed,	wedlock.	
<i>ness,</i>	as,	white,	whiteness.	} Derived from Adjectives.

(4). *Denoting Instrument.*

<i>le,</i>	as,	gird,	girdle.	} Derived from Verbs.
<i>el,</i>	as,	shove,	shovel.	
<i>et,</i>	as,	hack,	hatchet.	

(b). *Latin* and *French* Derivatives are formed by the following *suffixes* :—

(1). *Signifying an Agent or a Person generally.*

<i>tor, sor,</i>	as,	auditor, sponsor,	From Latin nouns in <i>tor</i> and <i>sor</i> .
<i>trix,</i>	as,	executrix,	From Latin nouns in <i>trix</i> .
<i>eer,</i>	as,	auctioneer,	{ From French nouns in <i>aire, ier,</i> <i>eur</i> .
<i>ee,</i>	as,	legatee,	From French nouns in <i>é</i> .

(2). *Forming Diminutives.*

<i>aster,</i>	as,	poetaster,	From Italian nouns in <i>astro</i> .
<i>cule, le,</i>	as,	animalcule,	{ From Latin nouns in <i>culus</i> , —
<i>icla</i>	as,	particle,	{ <i>a,—um</i> ; as, <i>animalculum, par-</i> <i>ticula</i> , etc.

(3). *Signifying Abstract Ideas.*

<i>ary,</i>	as,	commentary,	{ From Latin words in <i>arius</i> ; as, <i>commentarius</i> .
<i>cy,</i>	as,	clemency,	{ From Latin words in <i>tia</i> ; as, <i>cle-</i> <i>mentia</i> .
<i>ence, }</i>	as,	penitence,	{ From Latin words in <i>entia</i> , or
<i>ance, }</i>			{ <i>antia</i> ; as, <i>penitentia</i> .
<i>ice,</i>	as,	justice,	{ From Latin words in <i>itia</i> ; as <i>justitia</i> .
<i>ion, }</i>	{	action,	{ From Latin words in <i>io</i> ; as, <i>actio</i> ,
<i>sion, }</i>	as,	passion,	{ etc.
<i>tion, }</i>		junction,	
<i>ment,</i>	as,	ornament,	{ From Latin words in <i>mentum</i> ; as, <i>ornamentum</i> .
<i>our, or,</i>	as,	ardo(u)r,	{ From Latin words in <i>or</i> , through the French ; as, <i>ardor, ardeur</i> .
<i>ty, ity.</i>	as,	dignity,	{ From Latin words in <i>tas</i> ; as, <i>dignitas</i> .
<i>tude,</i>	as,	multitude,	{ From Latin words in <i>tudo</i> ; as, <i>multitudo</i> .
<i>ture, }</i>	as,	{ tincture,	{ From Latin words in <i>ura</i> ; as,
<i>sure, }</i>		{ censure,	{ <i>tinctura</i> , etc.

REMARK.—Many nouns of the above description are formed directly

from verbs, by simply *changing* the *accent*; e. g., to *affix*, *an affix*; to *export*, *an export*; also some monosyllables are both nouns and verbs; as to *use*, *a use*.

(c.) *Greek Derivatives* are formed by the following suffixes:—

(1.) *Signifying Agent or Person.*

<i>an</i> ,	as,	musician,	From Greek words in <i>kos</i> (κος).
<i>ist</i> ,	as,	sophist,	“ “ <i>istes</i> (ιστης).
<i>ite</i> ,	as,	Israelite (patro- nymic),	“ “ <i>ites</i> (ιτης).

(2.) *Forming Diminutives.*

<i>isk</i> ,	as,	asterisk,	{ From the Greek <i>asteriskos</i> , (αστερισκος).
--------------	-----	-----------	---

(3.) *Signifying Abstract Ideas.*

<i>e, y</i> ,	as,	epitome, anarchy,	From Greek nouns in <i>ē</i> (η).
<i>ism, em</i> ,	as,	deism,	{ From Greek nouns in <i>ismos</i> , or <i>isma</i> (ισμος ισμα).
<i>ic, ics</i> ,	as,	arithmetic,	{ From Greek adjectives in <i>ikos, a</i> , <i>on</i> (ικος, α, ον).
<i>ma</i> ,	as,	panorama,	From Greek nouns in <i>ma</i> (μα).
<i>sis</i> ,	as,	hypothesis,	From Greek nouns in <i>sis</i> (σις).

4. *Compound Nouns* of Saxon origin exist largely in the present English language, and new ones are not unfrequently coined, as necessity requires; as, *housemaid*, *railroad*, *steamboat*, *cast-iron*, etc.

Compound words (except new terms in the sciences) derived from the Latin and Greek, are borrowed in their compound from those languages.

## 2. *Structure of the Adjective.*

English adjectives, like English nouns, are either—1. *Original Roots*; 2. *Primary Derivatives*; 3. *Secondary Derivatives*; or, 4. *Compound Words*.

1. Many adjectives derived from the Saxon are *roots*, inasmuch as no simpler form of the word can now be traced; such are *good*, *bad*, *long*, *short*, *high*, *thin*, *thick*, *white*, *black*, etc.

2. *Primary derivatives* are also of Saxon origin. They are formed, like the noun-stems, from verbs, nouns, and other adjectives, as follows:—

(1.) By *modifying* the *vowel*; as, *fill, full*; *wring, wrong*; *pride, proud*; *string, strong*.

(2.) By *modifying* or adding a *consonant*; as, *loathe, loth*; *four, fourth*.

(3.) By *modifying* both *vowel* and *consonant*; as, *wit, wise*; *five, fifth*.

3. English adjectives which come under the title of *secondary derivatives* are formed by a considerable variety of suffixes.

(a.) *Saxon* derivatives are formed by the following:—

<i>ed,</i>	as, left-handed,	(participial form).
<i>en,</i>	as, wooden,	meaning <i>material</i> .
<i>ern,</i>	as, northern, }	" { <i>direction</i> (of points of compass)
<i>erly,</i>	as, northerly, }	
<i>fold,</i>	as, fourfold,	" <i>repetition</i> .
<i>full,</i>	as, truthful,	" <i>full of</i> .
<i>ish,</i>	as, { whitish, boyish,	" { <i>somewhat</i> (diminutive) <i>likeness</i> .
<i>less,</i>	as, houseless,	" <i>without</i> .
<i>like,</i>	as, lifelike, }	" { <i>resemblance</i> ; or, <i>fitness</i> .
<i>ly,</i>	as, lovely, }	
<i>some,</i>	as, winsome,	" { <i>possessing</i> <i>the quality of</i> .
<i>ward,</i>	as, homeward,	" <i>direction toward</i> .
<i>y,</i>	as, mighty,	{ (adjectival form of a noun).
<i>un</i> (prefix),	as, unlovely,	" <i>not</i> .

(b.) *Latin* derivatives are formed by the following:—

<i>al,</i>	as, equal,	From Latin adjectives in <i>alis</i> .
<i>an,</i>	as, human,	" " <i>anus</i> .
<i>ant,</i>	as, elegant,	" " <i>ans</i> .
<i>ent,</i>	as, ancient,	" " <i>ens</i> .
<i>e</i> (preceded by a consonant), as }	marine,	" " { <i>inus</i> (preceded by a consonant).
<i>fic,</i>	as, terrific,	" " <i>in fici</i> .

<i>ferous,</i>	as,	pestiferous,	From Latin adjectives in { <i>fer</i> and <i>ferus</i> .		
<i>ible,</i>	as,	visible,	}	"	<i>bilis</i> .
<i>able,</i>	as,	culpable,			
<i>id,</i>	as,	timid,	"	"	<i>idus</i> .
<i>il, ile,</i>	as,	as fertile,	"	"	<i>ilis</i> .
<i>olent,</i>	as,	violent,	"	"	<i>olens</i> .
<i>ose,</i>	as,	verbose,	}	"	<i>osus</i> .
<i>ous,</i>	as,	copious,			
<i>ple,</i>	as,	triple,	}	"	<i>pus</i> .
<i>ble,</i>	as,	double,			
<i>tory, eory,</i>	as,	migratory,	"	"	{ <i>torious,</i> <i>vorious</i> .
<i>tive,</i>	as,	captive,	"	"	<i>tivus</i> .
<i>vous,</i>	as,	arduous,	"	"	<i>vus</i> .
<i>que</i> (French),	as,	oblique,	"	"	<i>quus</i> .

(c.) The principal *Greek* derivatives are formed by—

<i>ic,</i>	as,	hieroglyphic,	{ From Greek adjectives in <i>ikos</i> (ικος); as, αριθμητικός.
<i>ical,</i>	as,	arithmetical,	

### 3. Structure of the Pronoun.

Pronouns are either—1. *Original Roots*; 2. *Derivatives*; or, 3. *Compound words*. They are all of Saxon origin, except "*one*" (235).

1. The pronouns which may be regarded as *original roots*, are, *I, me, we, us, thou, ye, you, he, she, it, they, who* (self), *this, that*.

2. The following are *derivatives* (chiefly by inflection):—

*Thee* is the objective form from *thou*.

*Him*, originally a dative from the masculine *he*, and the neuter *hit*, of the Saxon *he, heo, hit* (he, she, it).

*Her*, originally a dative and possessive from Saxon *heo*.

*Them* " " " " *that*.

*Whom*, " " " " *who*.

*What*, neuter form from *who*.

*One* (235), derived from the French *on*, an abbreviation of *homme*.

*Which*, a compound form, from *who* and *like* (contracted in the Scottish dialect, *whilk*).

*My* is possessive form from *me*; *thy, thou*; *our, we*; *your, you*; *their, they*.



The possessive cases (239), *mine*, *thine*, etc., are derived from the corresponding possessive pronouns (291).

3. The *compound pronouns* are those formed by the union of the words, *self* (*selves*), and *ever*, with the simple pronouns. See list, page 59.

#### 4. Structure of the Verb.

English verbs are either—1. *Original Roots*; 2. *Primary Derivatives*; or, 3. *Secondary Derivatives*.

1. All the verbs of the “*old conjugation*” (irregular verbs) are of Saxon origin, and all are *original roots* of the English language.

A considerable number of these have, in recent times, assumed the regular form; as, *climb*, *laugh*, *quake*, etc.

2. The *primary derivatives* are also mostly of Saxon origin. They are formed from original nouns and verbs, as follows:—

(1.) By *modifying* the *vowel*; as, *lie*, *lay*; *fly*, *flee*; *fall*, *fell* (transitive), etc.

(2.) By *modifying* the *last consonant*, either as to form or pronunciation; as, *advise*, *advise*; *bath*, *bathe*; *grease*, *grease* (*greet*); *use*, *use*, etc.

NOTE.—This class is formed from nouns, and some of them are of Latin origin.

(3.) By *modifying* both *vowel* and *consonant*; as, *drink*, *drench*; *glass*, *glaze*; *hound*, *hunt*, etc.

(4.) By *prefixing* *s* or *t*; as, *dun*, *stun*; *melt*, *smelt*; *whirl*, *twirl*, etc.

3. *Secondary derivatives* are formed by a considerable variety of suffixes.

(a.) *Saxon* derivatives are formed by the following:—

<i>en</i> ,	signifying <i>to make</i> ;	as,	heighten, weaken.
<i>er</i> ,	“ ( <i>frequentative</i> );	as,	climb, clamber.
<i>ish</i> ,	“ ( <i>various</i> );	as,	burn, burnish.
<i>le</i> ,	“ ( <i>frequentative</i> );	as,	nip, nibble.
<i>y</i> ,	“ <i>to make</i> ;	as,	soil, sully.

REMARK.—Many nouns and adjectives have been turned into verbs

without any change; as, *dry*, to *dry*; *cool*, to *cool*; *rain*, to *rain*; *salt*, to *salt*, etc.

The growing tendency to use the same word for different parts of speech should be resisted; as, to *crop* a farm; to *ship* goods, etc. Avoid also such vulgarisms as, to *grow* corn, and the like.

(b.) *Latin* derivatives are formed—

(1.) From the *root* of the verb, by rejecting the termination of the infinitive; as—

Discern,	from	<i>discernere</i> .
Concur,	"	<i>concurrere</i> .
Condemn,	"	<i>condemnare</i> .
etc.		etc.

(2.) From the *supine* of the verb; as—

Act,	from	<i>actum</i> .
Audit,	"	<i>auditum</i> .
Accept,	"	<i>acceptum</i> .

(c.) *Greek* derivatives are formed by the terminations *ise* or *ize*; as, *baptize*, (from βαπτίζω.) This termination has been adopted to form many modern English verbs; as, to *Italicize*, to *Germanize*, to *scrutinize*, etc.

### 5. Structure of the Adverb.

English adverbs are either—1. *Original Roots*; 2. *Primary Derivatives*; 3. *Secondary Derivatives*; or, 4. *Compound words*.

1. The *original adverbs* consist of a few monosyllables derived from the *Saxon*: as, *now*, *then*, *there*, *here*, *oft*, *well*, *ill*, *not*, *so*, *thus*. Some of these were, doubtless, formerly *oblique cases* of Saxon pronouns.

2. *Primary derivatives* are formed—

(1.) From *numerals*; as, *one*, *once*; *two*, *twice*, etc.—originally genitive forms of the numerals.

(2.) From *nouns*, by adding *s*, as *need*, (must) *needs*, *so*, *also*, *mornings*, *Mondays*, etc.

(3.) From other adverbs; as, *there*, *thither*; *here*, *hither*, etc.

REMARKS.—(1.) A few adverbs are formed from adjectives and prepositions, by adding *s*; as, *unaware*, *unawares*; *beside*, *besides*.

(2.) Many words, ordinarily *prepositions*, are joined to verbs

without change of form, and used *adverbially*; as, to go *down*, come *up*, etc.

All the *primary derivatives* among English adverbs are of *Saxon* origin, and nearly all have been inflections of nouns, pronouns, or adjectives.

3. *Secondary derivatives* are formed as follows:—

(1.) By *suffixes*—

*ly*, as *wise*, *wisely*; *just*, *justly*.

This is the usual form of the adverb, when derived regularly from the corresponding adjective.

*ward* or *wards*; as, backward, from *back*,  
sideward, from *side*, } signifying direction.

*ways* or *wise*; as, always, from *all*; likewise, from *like*.

(2.) By *Prefixes*—

*a*; as, ashore, adrift, aboard, etc.

*be*; as, behind, betimes, etc.

4. *Compound adverbs* are formed by combining various parts of speech, in many instances being abridged forms of adverbial phrases or clauses; as, sometimes, somewhere, forthwith, thereabout, straightway, henceforward, headlong, etc.

[Some are derived in the usual way from compound adjectives; as, ill-naturedly, ill-manneredly, etc.]

## 6. Structure of the Preposition.

Prepositions may be divided, in reference to their structure, into three classes:—1. *Original prepositions*; 2. *Derivatives*; 3. *Verbal prepositions*.

1. The *simple prepositions* are the following:—*at*, *by*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *on*, *of*, *till*, *to*, *through*, *up*, *with*.

2. The *derived prepositions* are for the most part formed from verbs, adjectives, and other parts of speech, by means of *prefixes*; as—

*a*; amid, about, above, along, among, around, against, etc.

*be*; beside, before, behind, below, beneath, between, beyond.

[Some are formed by combining two simple prepositions together, or adding a syllable; as, *into*, *unto*, *upon*, *within*, *without*, *throughout*, etc.]

3. *Verbal prepositions* are the *imperative* and *parti-*

*cial* forms of verbs, used *prepositionally*, generally in abridged form ; as, concerning, during, except, excepting, respecting, touching, regarding, save, etc.

Prepositions of the first and second class are of *Saxon* origin ; those of the third class, of *Latin*.

### 7. Structure of the Conjunction.

Conjunctions are—1. *Simple* ; 2. *Derivative* ; or, 3. *Compound*.

1. The *simple conjunctions* are—*and, or, but, if, as*.

2. The *derivatives* are such as—*nor, neither, either, than, though, whether, even, for, that, since, etc.*

3. *Compound conjunctions* are made up of two or more other words ; as, *howbeit, in as far as, nevertheless, moreover, wherefore, whereas, etc.*

## II. GENDER OF NOUNS.

In all languages, the distinction of nouns with regard to sex has been noted. Every substantive denotes either a male or female, or that which is neither the one nor the other. This accident, or characteristic of nouns, is called their *Gender*. In English, all words denoting male animals are considered as *masculine* ; all those denoting female animals, *feminine* ; and those denoting things neither male nor female, are termed *neuter*. "In this distribution," says Crombie, "we follow the order of nature ; and our language is, in this respect, both simple and animated." Both in Latin and Greek, many words denoting things without sex are ranked as masculine or feminine, without any regard to their meaning, but simply on account of their terminations. In French, all nouns are regarded as either masculine or feminine, which is a still greater departure from the order and simplicity of nature, for which the English language on this point is distinguished.

Some have objected to the designation of three genders ; they think, that, as there are but two sexes, it would be more philosophical and accurate to say there are only two genders ; and to regard all words not belonging to these, as without gender. A little reflection, I think, will show that this objection has no just foundation, either in philosophy or in fact, and that the change it proposes would be no improvement. It has probably arisen from confounding the word *gender*,

which properly signifies a *kind, class, or species* (Lat. *genus*, French *genre*), with the word *sex*, and considering them as synonymous. This, however, is not the case; these words do not mean the same thing; and they can not be properly applied in the same way. We never say, "the masculine sex, the feminine sex;" nor "the male gender, the female gender." In strict propriety of speech, the word *sex* can be predicated only of animated beings; the word *gender*, only of the term by which that being is expressed. The *being* man, has sex, not gender; the *word* man, has gender, not sex. Though therefore it is very absurd to speak of three sexes, yet it may be very proper to speak of three genders; that is to say, there are three classes (genders) of nouns, distinguished from one another by their relations to sex. One denotes objects of the male sex, and is called *masculine*; another denotes objects of the female sex, and is called *feminine*; and the third denotes objects neither male nor female, for which a name more appropriate than the word *neuter* need not be desired.

The term "*common gender*," applied to such words as *parent, child, friend*, etc., does not constitute a distinct class of words, which are neither masculine, nor feminine, nor neuter, but is used for convenience, merely to indicate that such words sometimes denote a male, and sometimes a female. Instead of "*common*," those who prefer it, may call such words "*masculine or feminine*."

### III. THE PRONOUNS, MINE, THINE, etc.

Some grammarians have given it as their opinion that *mine, thine, ours, yours, theirs*, are not pronouns in the possessive case, but that that they are something or other in the nominative or objective case, but never in the possessive. This is surely a very singular notion. The anomaly which such an idea would introduce into our language would be a curious one. According to this view, these words could belong to no part of speech hitherto defined. They are not *nouns*, for they are not the *names* of any thing—nor *adjectives*, for they do not qualify nouns, nor can ever be joined with them—nor *pronouns*, for they never stand instead of a noun, but always instead of a noun and a possessive pronoun together. They have always the sense of the possessive case, and are always construed just as the possessive case of a noun is, not followed by a noun; and yet they are never in the posses-

sive case. These words, standing by themselves, have no fixed or determinate meaning, and yet in sentences they may have as many different meanings as there are objects capable of being possessed. *Mine*, for example, may mean *my horse*, *my farm*, *my hat*, *my stick*, *my gun*, *my*—any thing you please. And besides this, those of them which are singular in form, according to analogy, may have a *plural* verb; and those of them which are plural may have a *singular* verb; thus, "John's books are new; *mine are* old;" again, "John's house is built of stone; *ours is* built of brick." Such is the result to which this notion leads us; and if these words are not possessives, but in the nominative or objective, as some allege, there certainly are no more curious words in the English, nor in any other language.

---

#### IV. "WHAT" AS A RELATIVE.

"Various opinions have been entertained about the nature of the relative *what*. It is said to be 'a compound relative pronoun, including both the antecedent and the relative, and equivalent to *that which*, or *the thing which*.' Though this may seem plausible, yet we shall find, on examination, that *what* is nothing more than a relative pronoun, and includes nothing else. Compare these two sentences:—

" 'I saw *whom* I wanted to see;'

" 'I saw *what* I wanted to see.'

"If *what*, in the latter, is equivalent to *that which*, or *the thing which*, *whom*, in the former, is equivalent to *him whom*, or *the person whom*. 'Who steals my purse steals trash,' is equivalent to *he who*, or, *the man who*.

"And, on the same principle, when the relative is omitted, the antecedent should be represented as equivalent to the relative and the antecedent. Thus, 'I saw the man I wanted to see.' Here, *man* should be represented as equivalent to *the man whom*.

"The cause of the error in respect to *what*, is, that the antecedent is never expressed with it. It is not like the word *who*, which is used both when the antecedent is expressed, and when it is omitted. The relative *that*, however, was formerly used in many cases where we use *what*, that is, with the antecedent omitted. A few examples of this will help us to ascertain the nature of *what*: 'We speak *that* we do know.'—*English Bible*.—'I am *that* I am.'—*Id.*

“ ‘Who had been seen imagine mote thereby,  
*That* whylome of Hercules had been told.’—*Spenser*.

“ ‘*Eschewe that* wicked is.’—*Gower*.

“ ‘Is it possible he should not know what he is, and be *that* he is?’  
 —*Shakes*.

“ ‘Gather the sequel by *that* went before.’—*Ib*.

“In these examples, *that* is a relative, and is exactly synonymous with *what*. No one would contend that *that* stands for itself, and its antecedent at the same time. The antecedent is omitted because it is indefinite, or easily supplied.”—*Butler's Grammar*, p. 48.

These remarks appear to me just, and conclusive on this point.

## V. IS “AS” EVER A RELATIVE?

That the word *as* should not be considered a relative in any circumstances, I think is plain from the following considerations:—

1. It has neither the meaning nor the use of a relative. Its office is simply to connect things compared, and, together with its antecedent word, to express the idea of *equality*, *likeness*, etc., between them; thus, “James is *as* tall as his father.”—“Your hat is *as* such as mine.”

2. It does not, like a relative, relate to a noun or pronoun before it, called the antecedent, nor stand instead of it, or of any other word, but is related only to the comparative word, *as*, *such*, *so*, etc., in the preceding clause. Thus, in the sentence, “As many *as* received him,” the second *as* relates to the first, and the two convey the idea of equality. Again, “Send *such* books *as* you have.” Here, *as* refers, not to *books*, but to *such*. Take away *such*, and *as* can not be used.

3. *As* can never be used as a substitute for another relative pronoun, nor another relative pronoun as a substitute for it.

4. In sentences in which *as* is said to be a relative, it evidently has the same meaning and use as those in which it is allowed to be only a conjunction. Compare the following examples: “As many *as* five men received a reward.”—“As many *as* received him.”—“As many *as* they can give.” In all these, the phrase “as many *as*,” means, and is felt to mean, the same thing—equality of number. There surely, then, can be no propriety in calling the second *as* a conjunc-

tion in the first sentence, and a relative in the other two. The same thing will be evident if we change the antecedent word. Thus, "*Such books as* these are useful"—"*Such books as* are useful."—"*Such books as* you can give."

5. If the word *as* in the preceding sentences and clauses is a relative pronoun, for the same reason alleged for this, the word *than* must be a relative in those which follow. The construction is precisely the same: "More books *than* were wanted."—"More books *than* are useful."—"More books *than* you can give." Now, if, in the second of these examples, *than* is not a relative in the nominative case before *are*, nor in the third a relative in the objective case after *can give*, what need for considering *as* a relative in the same position, in the same construction, and for the same purpose, to denote comparison? There is the same ellipsis in both, and the same words necessary to be supplied, in the one case, as in the other. Thus, "More books than [those which] were wanted."—"More books than [those which] are useful," etc. So, "Such books as [those which] were wanted."—"As many books as [those which] are necessary," etc.

---

## VI. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The fourth class of pronouns, sometimes called *adjective pronouns*, and sometimes *pronominal adjectives*, is usually subdivided into *possessive*, *distributive*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*. Of these, the first, or *possessive*, are derived from the personal, and in meaning are strictly pronouns, being always the representative or substitute of a noun; but in construction they are adjectives, and are always joined with a noun, and hence are appropriately denominated adjective pronouns, *i.e.* pronouns used adjectively. By some, they are classed with adjectives, and called *pronominal adjectives*.

In many grammars the possessives *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your*, *their*, are set down as the possessive case of the personal pronouns, with *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *its*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, making two forms of the possessive case: thus, *my* or *mine*, *thy* or *thine*, etc. Which of these methods is adopted in teaching or studying grammar, is a matter of no practical moment: some grammarians adopt the one, and some the other, merely as a matter of taste, without any controversy on the subject. The classification in the text is preferred as being on the whole more simple, because the possessives *my*, *thy*,



etc., like the adjective, can never stand alone, as the possessive case does, but must be supported by a noun following them; thus, we say, "It is the king's;" "It is yours;" but we can not say, "It is your,"—the presence of a noun being necessary to the last expression.

This classification is favored by the analogy of other languages both ancient and modern. The possessives, *my*, *thy*, etc., for example, have precisely the same meaning as the Latin *meus*, *mea*, *meum*; or the French *mon*, *ma*; or the German *mein* (or *meiner*), *meine*, *mein*; or the Anglo-Saxon (which is the mother of the English language), *min*, *mine*, *min*; and they are used in precisely the same way. There seems, therefore, to be no good reason for giving them a different classification. Indeed, the only circumstance which renders it possible to regard them as a possessive case in English, is, that, like the English adjective, they are indeclinable. Had they been declinable, like the Latin or French, etc., they never could have been used as a possessive case.

The words belonging to the *other three divisions* have been found more difficult to arrange in a satisfactory manner. They seem to occupy a sort of middle ground between *adjectives* and *pronouns*, and are sometimes used as the one, and sometimes as the other, without the strict and appropriate character of either. They are generally adjectives in construction having a noun expressed or understood, which they serve to limit or restrict in various ways. On the other hand, with few exceptions, they are so often used without a noun, or as its substitute, that they are not improperly regarded as *pronouns*, though in a sense less strict than the others; thus, "Let *each* esteem *others* better than himself."—"Among men, *some* are good, *others* bad, *none* perfect." "*All* things come alike to *all*," etc.

From this equivocal, or rather double, character of these words, they have been variously arranged by different authors. Some, among whom are Grant, Crombie, Hiley, Sutcliffe, Allen, Cooper, Brown, etc., class them with adjectives, and call them "*Pronominal Adjectives*;" and others, such as Lowth, Priestly, Smart, Murray, Lennie, Booth, Churchill, Wright, Cobbet, Kirkham, Smith, and many others, class them with pronouns, and call them "*Adjective Pronouns*." Since all are agreed about the use of these words, it seems in itself a matter of less importance to which of these two classes they be attached, or whether they are more appropriately called *Pronominal Adjectives* or *Adjective Pronouns*.

## VII. THE VERB.

Though there is little, if any, difference of judgment among grammarians, as to what a *verb* is, yet all have probably found it a difficult matter to give an *accurate* and at the same time a *brief definition* of it; and, accordingly, nearly all grammars differ in their definition of this part of speech. The old definition, that "a verb is a word which signifies *to be, to do, or to suffer,*" though unexceptionable as any, as far as it goes, is yet greatly defective in stating nothing respecting the *functions* or *use* of this part of speech.

The use of the verb in simple propositions is to *affirm* or *declare*; and that of which it affirms is called its *subject*. This is always the office of the verb in the *indicative, potential, or subjunctive*. In the use of its other parts, however, namely, the *imperative, infinitive, and participles*, there is properly no affirmation, though the action or state expressed by the verb in these parts is clearly seen to be the act or state of *some person or thing*, and which for that reason is strictly and properly, though not technically, its *subject*. Thus, "For me to die is gain," is a simple proposition, containing two verbs, the first of which, *to die*, in the infinitive, expresses no affirmation, though it evidently, without affirming, attributes *dying* to a person, expressed by the word *me*. So, when we say, "I see a man *walking*," the word *walking* expresses an act of the person *man*, though there is properly no affirmation. In like manner, when I say, "Do this," the verb *do* attributes action imperatively to the person addressed, but there is no affirmation. To speak of "affirming imperatively" is certainly not very intelligible, though, for want of a better expression, we sometimes use it in a loose sense.

For these reasons, the definition of a verb which says it is "a part of speech which *asserts or affirms,*" appears to me to be defective. It states one function of this class of words, but excludes, or at least *does not include*, others. It gives, as the distinguishing characteristic of a verb, that which does not belong to it in several of its parts and uses. *It is too restrictive.*

The definition, "A verb is a word used to express an action or state," is liable to an objection of an opposite kind: *it is too general*, and not sufficiently distinctive. A verb does, indeed, "express an *action or state,*" but there are other words that do so also. Nouns, such as *love, desire, wish, hope*, etc., and most verbal nouns, such as *eruption, fiction*,

*collision, diffusion, progression, etc.*, express *action*, and many words, both nouns and adjectives, express a *state*.

The definition given in the text, though perhaps not unexceptionable, occupies a middle place between these extremes; avoids the indefiniteness of the old definition, and is probably less liable to objection than most of those which have been given.

---

### VIII. DIVISION OF VERBS.

The division of verbs into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*, which has been so generally adopted by grammarians, was a step in the right direction. The former of these terms is specific, and indicates a distinction demanded by the meaning and office of those verbs to which it is applied. The latter, as generally used, is only a denial of the special characteristic of the former, and does not provide for those cases in which, while there is *no object* required, there is demanded some *attribute* or limiter of the subject to complete the sense.

The present division (316, 1) is made upon the distinct characteristic and office of the verb, and divides all verbs into three classes, *transitive, intransitive, and attributive*, distinguished by a clear and definite characteristic derived from their use in the construction of sentences. To the first belong those which are used *transitively*, whatever be their meaning or form; to the second, those that are used *intransitively*, and require *no other word* as a complement, whether they denote action or not (319); and the third, those whose office is to *relate an attribute with the subject*.

This arrangement and nomenclature still leaves the terms *active* and *passive* at liberty to be applied exclusively to the two forms which all transitive verbs assume, called the *active* and the *passive voice*.

It dispenses with the term *neuter* altogether, as applied to verbs, and leaves it to be appropriated in grammar to the designation of gender only.

## IX. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE, AND THE PARTICIPLE IN "ING" IN A PASSIVE SENSE.

According to the definition, the *passive voice* expresses, *passively*, the same thing that the *active* does *actively*. For example, "Cæsar conquered Gaul," and "Gaul was conquered by Cæsar," express precisely the same idea. This, however, is *not always* done by the regular passive form in the *present tense*, though it generally is done in the other tenses. Thus, it will be felt at once that the expression, "Cæsar conquers Gaul," and "Gaul is conquered by Cæsar," do not express the same thing.

In regard to this matter, there are evidently *two classes* of verbs; namely, those whose present-passive expresses precisely the same thing passively, as the active voice does actively, and those in which it does not.

### I. To the *first* of these classes belong—

1. All those verbs which, in the regular present passive, imply a *continuance of the act*; such as, *to love, to hate, to regard, to esteem, to envy, to please*, etc. Thus, "James loves me," and "I am loved by James," express precisely the same idea, and consequently *continuance* is implied as much in the passive form as in the active. Hence, "*is loved*" is a *true passive*, in both form and meaning. In verbs of this class the progressive form in the active voice is seldom used, because it would express the same thing *generally* as the common form; thus, "James loves me," and "James is loving me" (though improper), express the same thing.

2. All verbs when used to express *general truths*, or what is *usual* or *customary* from time to time. Thus, "Vinegar *dissolves* pearls"—"Vice *produces* misery"—"The cobbler *mends* shoes," etc. Passive, "Pearls *are dissolved* by vinegar"—"Misery *is produced* by vice"—"Shoes *are mended* by the cobbler," etc. In verbs used in this way, the progressive form is not employed. The use of it would change the meaning from a general expression to a particular act. Thus, "Vice is producing misery," would immediately direct the mind, not to a *general truth*, but to a *particular case*.

But, when these verbs express a *particular act*, and not a general truth, the present active and the present passive express *different ideas*; thus, "James builds a house," represents an act

in progress ; but when we say, "A house is built by James," the act or operation of building is represented *as completed*.

3. To this class belong all verbs, which, by the figure called *vision* (1046, 5), are used in the *present tense to express what is past*. Thus, actively, "Cæsar *leaves* Gaul, *crosses* the Rubicon, *enters* Italy." Passively, "Gaul *is left* by Cæsar, the Rubicon *is crossed*, Italy *is entered*." In all these, used in this figurative way, the present-passive expresses the same thing as the present-active.

II. The *second* class of verbs, consists of those (perhaps the greater number) whose present-passive implies that the act expressed by the active voice has ceased, and the effect or result only remains as a finished act, and as such is predicated of the subject. Thus, "The house is built." Here it is implied that the act of *building is completed*, and has ceased, and the *result*, expressed by *built*, is predicated of the house. In all verbs of this kind, the past participle, after the verb *to be*, has reference to the *state* resulting from the act as predicated of the subject of the verb, and *not to the act* itself. Strictly speaking, then, the past participle with the verb *to be* is not the present tense in the passive voice of verbs thus used ; that is, this form does not express passively the *doing* of the act. These verbs either have no present-passive, or it is made by annexing the *participle* in *ing*, in its *passive* sense, to the verb *to be* ; as, "The house *is building*."

It is supposed by some that "*is built*," though in the form of the present passive, really is a present-perfect ; because it represents the act as completed, and because the perfect-definite, in Latin, is often translated by this form into English. Due consideration, however, I think, will show that it *differs* quite as much *from the present-perfect* as it does from the *present*. To be satisfied of this, compare the following expressions : "This garment *is torn*," merely asserts the present *state* of the garment, with no reference to the *act* but what is implied. But when we say, "This garment *has been torn*," the reference is chiefly to the *act* as having been done, with no reference to the *state* of the garment but what is implied. The one asserts that the garment remains torn, the other does not—it may have been mended ; the latter is the regular passive of the present-perfect active, the former is not. This will perhaps be more clearly perceived by means of another example : "This house *has been painted*, but the paint *is worn off*." This is good English. But if we

say, "This house *is painted*, but the paint is worn off," we would assert a contradiction.

There is properly *no passive* form, in English, *corresponding to the progressive* form in the *active* voice, except where it is made by the participle *ing*, in a passive sense; thus, "The house is building"—"The garments are making"—"Wheat is selling," etc. An attempt has been made by some grammarians, of late, to banish such expressions from the language, though they have been used in all time past by the best writers, and to justify and defend a clumsy solecism, which has been recently introduced chiefly through the newspaper press, but which has gained such currency, and is becoming so familiar to the ear, that it seems likely to prevail, with all its uncouthness and deformity. I refer to such expressions as, "The house is being built"—"The letter is being written"—"The mine is being worked"—"The news is being telegraphed," etc., etc.

Respecting this mode of expression, it may be noticed—

1. That it *had no existence* in the language till *within the last fifty years*. This, indeed, would not make the expression wrong, were it otherwise unexceptionable; but its recent origin shows that it is not, as is pretended, a *necessary* form.

2. This form of expression, when analyzed, is found not to express what it is intended to express, and would be used only by such as are either ignorant of its import, or are careless and loose in their use of language. To make this manifest, let it be considered, first, that there is *no progressive form* of the verb *to be*, and no need of it; hence, there is no such expression in English as *is being*. Of course the expression "*is being* built," for example, is not a compound of *is being* and *built*, but of *is* and *being built*; that is, of the verb *to be* and the *present participle passive*. Now, let it be observed, that the only verbs in which the present participle passive expresses a continued action are those mentioned above as the first class, in which the regular passive form expresses a *continuance* of the action; as, *is loved*, *is desired*, etc., and in which, of course, the form in question (*is being built*) is not required. Nobody would think of saying, "He is being loved"—"This result is being desired."

In all other verbs, then, the present participle passive, like the present tense, in the second class of verbs mentioned above, expresses, *not a continued action*, or the *continued receiving of an action*, but that the action had ceased, and the *result* only exists in a finished

state. Thus, "Our arrangements *being made*, we departed."—The house *being finished*, was immediately occupied."—"Our work *being finished*, we may rest," etc. In all such expressions, the present participle passive represents the action as now *finished*, and existing only in its *results* (509). This finished act, then, can not be made *unfinished* and *progressive*, by being asserted of a subject, which is all the verb *to be*, as a copula, can express. Hence it is manifest that *is being built*, if it mean any thing, can mean nothing more than *is built*, which is not the idea intended to be expressed.

3. For the same reason that *is being built*, etc., is contended for as a proper expression, we should contend also for "Has been being built."—"Had been being built."—"Shall have been being built."—"Might have been being built."—"To be being built."—"To have been being built."—"Being being built."—"Having been being built." When all these shall have been introduced, our language will be rich indeed!

4. The use of this form is justified only by *condemning an established usage* of the language; namely, the passive sense in some verbs of the participle in *ing* (459). In reference to this it is flippantly asked, "What does the house build?"—"What does the letter write," etc.—taking for granted, without attempting to prove, that the participle in *ing* can not have a passive sense in any verb. The following are a few examples from writers of the best reputation, which this novelty would condemn: "While the ceremony was performing."—*Tom. Brown*. "The court was then holding."—*Sir G. McKenzie*. "And still be doing, never done."—*Butler*. "The books are selling."—*Allen's Grammar*. "To know nothing of what is transacting in the regions above us."—*Dr. Blair*. "The spot where this new and strange tragedy was acting."—*E. Everett*. "The fortress was building."—*Irving*. "An attempt is making in the English parliament."—*D. Webster*. "The church now erecting in the city of New York."—*N. A. Review*. "These things were transacting in England."—*Bancroft*.

5. This new doctrine is in *opposition* to the almost unanimous judgment of the *most distinguished grammarians* and critics, who have considered the subject, and expressed their views concerning it. The following are a specimen: "Expressions of this kind are condemned by some critics; but the usage is unquestionably of far better authority, and (according to my apprehension) in far better taste, than the more complex phraseology which some late writers adopt in its stead;

as, 'The books are now being sold.'—*Goold Brown*. "As to the notion of introducing a new and more complex passive form of conjugation, as, 'The bridge *is being built*,' 'The bridge *was being built*,' and so forth, it is one of the most absurd and monstrous innovations ever thought of." "The work *is now being published*" is certainly no better English than, "The work *was being published, has been being published, had been being published, shall or will be being published, shall or will have been being published*," and so on through all the moods and tenses. What a language shall we have when our verbs are thus conjugated!—*Brown's Gr. of Eng. Gr.*, p. 361. De War observes: "The participle in *ing* is also passive in many instances; as, 'The house is building.'—'I heard of a plan forming,' " etc.—Quoted in *France's Grammar*, page 49. "It would be an absurdity, indeed, to give up the only way we have of denoting the incomplete state of action by a passive form" (viz., by the participle in *ing* in the passive sense).—*Arnold's English Grammar*, p. 46. "The present participle is often used passively; as, the 'The ship is building.' The form of expression, *is being built, is being committed*, etc., is almost universally condemned by grammarians, but it is sometimes met with in respectable writers; it occurs most frequently in newspaper paragraphs, and in hasty compositions. See Worcester's Universal and Critical Dictionary."—*Weld's Grammar*, pp. 118 and 180. "When we say, 'The house is building,' the advocates of the new theory ask, "Building what?" We might ask, in turn, when you say, 'The field ploughs well,'—'Ploughs what?'—'Wheat sells well,'—'Sells what?' If usage allows us to say, 'Wheat sells at a dollar,' in a sense that is not active, why may we not say, 'Wheat is selling at a dollar,' in a sense that is not active?"—*Hart's Gram.*, p. 76. "The prevailing practice of the best authors is in favor of the simple form; as, 'The house is building.'"—*Wells's School Gram.*, p. 148. "Several other expressions of this sort now and then occur, such as the new-fangled and most uncouth solecism '*is being done*,' for the good old English idiom '*is doing*'—an absurd periphrasis driving out a pointed and pithy turn of the English language."—*N. A. Review*, quoted by *Mr. Wells*, p. 148. "The phrase '*is being built*,' and others of a similar kind, have been for a few years insinuating themselves into our language; still they are not English."—*Harrison's Rise, Progress, and Present Structure of the English Language*. "This mode of expression [the house is being built] is becoming quite common. It is liable, however, to several important objections. It appears formal and pedantic. It has not, as far as I know, the support of any respectable



grammarian. The easy and natural expression is, 'The house is building.'—*Prof. J. W. Gibbs.*

### *Analysis of the English Verb.*

The analysis of the verb shows that, except for convenience in the use of established idioms, there are no more than *four* radical forms, viz :—

- I. { *love,*  
      *write.* } the simple name of the act, which has three uses.
  1. *Connected directly* with a subject, to affirm a present act, or state ; as, I love.
  2. Used *indefinitely*, to indicate an act or state, in a general sense, and depending upon some other word, generally a verb ; as, "He desires *to write*" (infinitive use).
  3. To express a simple *command* ; as, *write* (thou).
- II. The *participle in ing*, denoting the action or state, as continuing, or incomplete (397, 456). In the progressive form, as, "I am *writing* ;" the participle is an attributive of the subject.
- III. The *past tense*, in the regular conjugation, ending in *ed* (meaning *did*), and in the strong conjugation, changing, in some instances, the form of the root ; as—Present, *writes* ; past, *wrote*.
- IV. The *fourth* form (participial) takes, in regular verbs *ed*, and in irregular verbs sometimes changes the root ; as—Present, *love* ; part., *loved*. Present, *writes* ; part., *written*. This form, in transitive verbs, is used in both an active and a passive sense.
  1. The *past participle active* is never used except when preceded by *have*, and denotes the completion of the act it expresses, referring to the subject of the sentence, while the word *have* expresses its complete possession by that subject ; as, "I have written," *i.e.*, I am in possession of (have) written (by having performed the act). It is no longer in the future. I have attended to it. It is mine. I *have* written. In this sense, written is a *verbal*—the object of the verb have.
  2. In the *passive voice* this fourth form (loved, written) refers to some person or thing as the receiver to the act ; as, "He was a *man loved* by all." After the verb *to be*, the past participle passive is simply an attribute (see 508,) and till the pupil is thoroughly familiar with the nature and idiomatic use of the so-called passive conjugation, should always be so analyzed ; thus, "He is loved." "He" is the subject ; "*is* loved," is the predicate, of which "*is*" is the affirmer

tion in the first sentence, and a relative in the other two. The same thing will be evident if we change the antecedent word. Thus, "*Such books as these are useful.*"—" *Such books as are useful.*"—" *Such books as you can give.*"

5. If the word *as* in the preceding sentences and clauses is a relative pronoun, for the same reason alleged for this, the word *than* must be a relative in those which follow. The construction is precisely the same: "More books *than* were wanted."—"More books *than are useful.*"—"More books *than you can give.*" Now, if, in the second of these examples, *than* is not a relative in the nominative case before *are*, nor in the third a relative in the objective case after *can give*, what need for considering *as* a relative in the same position, in the same construction, and for the same purpose, to denote comparison? There is the same ellipsis in both, and the same words necessary to be supplied, in the one case, as in the other. Thus, "More books than [those which] were wanted."—"More books than [those which] are useful," etc. So, "Such books as [those which] were wanted."—"As many books as [those which] are necessary," etc.

---

## VI. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The fourth class of pronouns, sometimes called *adjective pronouns*, and sometimes *pronominal adjectives*, is usually subdivided into *possessive*, *distributive*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*. Of these, the first, or *possessive*, are derived from the personal, and in meaning are strictly pronouns, being always the representative or substitute of a noun; but in construction they are adjectives, and are always joined with a noun, and hence are appropriately denominated adjective pronouns, *i.e.* pronouns used adjectively. By some, they are classed with adjectives, and called *pronominal adjectives*.

In many grammars the possessives *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their*, are set down as the possessive case of the personal pronouns, with *mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs*, making two forms of the possessive case: thus, *my* or *mine, thy* or *thine*, etc. Which of these methods is adopted in teaching or studying grammar, is a matter of no practical moment: some grammarians adopt the one, and some the other, merely as a matter of taste, without any controversy on the subject. The classification in the text is preferred as being on the whole more simple, because the possessives *my, thy,*

etc., like the adjective, can never stand alone, as the possessive case does, but must be supported by a noun following them; thus, we say, "It is the king's;" "It is yours;" but we can not say, "It is your,"—the presence of a noun being necessary to the last expression.

This classification is favored by the analogy of other languages both ancient and modern. The possessives, *my*, *thy*, etc., for example, have precisely the same meaning as the Latin *meus*, *mea*, *meum*; or the French *mon*, *ma*; or the German *mein* (or *meiner*), *meine*, *mein*; or the Anglo-Saxon (which is the mother of the English language), *min*, *mine*, *min*; and they are used in precisely the same way. There seems, therefore, to be no good reason for giving them a different classification. Indeed, the only circumstance which renders it possible to regard them as a possessive case in English, is, that, like the English adjective, they are indeclinable. Had they been declinable, like the Latin or French, etc., they never could have been used as a possessive case.

The words belonging to the *other three divisions* have been found more difficult to arrange in a satisfactory manner. They seem to occupy a sort of middle ground between *adjectives* and *pronouns*, and are sometimes used as the one, and sometimes as the other, without the strict and appropriate character of either. They are generally adjectives in construction having a noun expressed or understood, which they serve to limit or restrict in various ways. On the other hand, with few exceptions, they are so often used without a noun, or as its substitute, that they are not improperly regarded as *pronouns*, though in a sense less strict than the others; thus, "Let *each* esteem *others* better than himself."—"Among men, *some* are good, *others* bad, *none* perfect." "*All* things come alike to *all*," etc.

From this equivocal, or rather double, character of these words, they have been variously arranged by different authors. Some, among whom are Grant, Crombie, Hiley, Sutcliffe, Allen, Cooper, Brown, etc., class them with adjectives, and call them "*Pronominal Adjectives*;" and others, such as Lowth, Priestly, Smart, Murray, Lennie, Booth, Churchill, Wright Cobbet, Kirkham, Smith, and many others, class them with pronouns, and call them "*Adjective Pronouns*." Since all are agreed about the use of these words, it seems in itself a matter of less importance to which of these two classes they be attached, or whether they are more appropriately called *Pronominal Adjectives* or *Adjective Pronouns*.

## VII. THE VERB.

Though there is little, if any, difference of judgment among grammarians, as to what a *verb* is, yet all have probably found it a difficult matter to give an *accurate* and at the same time a *brief definition* of it; and, accordingly, nearly all grammars differ in their definition of this part of speech. The old definition, that "a verb is a word which signifies *to be, to do, or to suffer,*" though unexceptionable as any, as far as it goes, is yet greatly defective in stating nothing respecting the *functions* or *use* of this part of speech.

The use of the verb in simple propositions is to *affirm* or *declare*; and that of which it affirms is called its *subject*. This is always the office of the verb in the *indicative, potential, or subjunctive*. In the use of its other parts, however, namely, the *imperative, infinitive, and participles*, there is properly no affirmation, though the action or state expressed by the verb in these parts is clearly seen to be the act or state of *some person or thing*, and which for that reason is strictly and properly, though not technically, its *subject*. Thus, "For me to die is gain," is a simple proposition, containing two verbs, the first of which, *to die*, in the infinitive, expresses no affirmation, though it evidently, without affirming, attributes *dying* to a person, expressed by the word *me*. So, when we say, "I see a man *walking*," the word *walking* expresses an act of the person *man*, though there is properly no affirmation. In like manner, when I say, "Do this," the verb *do* attributes action imperatively to the person addressed, but there is no affirmation. To speak of "affirming imperatively" is certainly not very intelligible, though, for want of a better expression, we sometimes use it in a loose sense.

For these reasons, the definition of a verb which says it is "a part of speech which *asserts or affirms,*" appears to me to be defective. It states one function of this class of words, but excludes, or at least *does not include*, others. It gives, as the distinguishing characteristic of a verb, that which does not belong to it in several of its parts and uses. *It is too restrictive.*

The definition, "A verb is a word used to express an action or state," is liable to an objection of an opposite kind: *it is too general*, and not sufficiently distinctive. A verb does, indeed, "express an *action or state,*" but there are other words that do so also. Nouns, such as *love, desire, wish, hope*, etc., and most verbal nouns, such as *eruption, fiction,*

*collision, diffusion, progression, etc.*, express *action*, and many words, both nouns and adjectives, express a *state*.

The definition given in the text, though perhaps not unexceptionable, occupies a middle place between these extremes; avoids the indefiniteness of the old definition, and is probably less liable to objection than most of those which have been given.

---

### VIII. DIVISION OF VERBS.

The division of verbs into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*, which has been so generally adopted by grammarians, was a step in the right direction. The former of these terms is specific, and indicates a distinction demanded by the meaning and office of those verbs to which it is applied. The latter, as generally used, is only a denial of the special characteristic of the former, and does not provide for those cases in which, while there is *no object* required, there is demanded some *attribute* or limiter of the subject to complete the sense.

The present division (§16, 1) is made upon the distinct characteristic and office of the verb, and divides all verbs into three classes, *transitive, intransitive, and attributive*, distinguished by a clear and definite characteristic derived from their use in the construction of sentences. To the first belong those which are used *transitively*, whatever be their meaning or form; to the second, those that are used *intransitively*, and require *no other word* as a complement, whether they denote action or not (§19); and the third, those whose office is to *relate an attribute with the subject*.

This arrangement and nomenclature still leaves the terms *active* and *passive* at liberty to be applied exclusively to the two forms which all transitive verbs assume, called the *active* and the *passive voice*.

It dispenses with the term *neuter* altogether, as applied to verbs, and leaves it to be appropriated in grammar to the designation of gender only.

## IX. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE, AND THE PARTICIPLE IN "ING" IN A PASSIVE SENSE.

According to the definition, the *passive voice* expresses, *passively*, the same thing that the *active* does *actively*. For example, "Cæsar conquered Gaul," and "Gaul was conquered by Cæsar," express precisely the same idea. This, however, is *not always* done by the regular passive form in the *present tense*, though it generally is done in the other tenses. Thus, it will be felt at once that the expression, "Cæsar conquers Gaul," and "Gaul is conquered by Cæsar," do not express the same thing.

In regard to this matter, there are evidently *two classes* of verbs; namely, those whose present-passive expresses precisely the same thing passively, as the active voice does actively, and those in which it does not.

### I. To the *first* of these classes belong—

1. All those verbs which, in the regular present passive, imply a *continuance of the act*; such as, *to love, to hate, to regard, to esteem, to envy, to please*, etc. Thus, "James loves me," and "I am loved by James," express precisely the same idea, and consequently *continuance* is implied as much in the passive form as in the active. Hence, "*is loved*" is a *true passive*, in both form and meaning. In verbs of this class the progressive form in the active voice is seldom used, because it would express the same thing generally as the common form; thus, "James loves me," and "James is loving me" (though improper), express the same thing.

2. All verbs when used to express *general truths*, or what is *usual* or *customary* from time to time. Thus, "Vinegar *dissolves* pearls"—"Vice *produces* misery"—"The cobbler *mends* shoes," etc. Passive, "Pearls *are dissolved* by vinegar"—"Misery *is produced* by vice"—"Shoes *are mended* by the cobbler," etc. In verbs used in this way, the progressive form is not employed. The use of it would change the meaning from a general expression to a particular act. Thus, "Vice is producing misery," would immediately direct the mind, not to a *general truth*, but to a *particular case*.

But, when these verbs express a *particular act*, and not a general truth, the present active and the present passive express *different ideas*; thus, "James builds a house," represents an act

in progress ; but when we say, "A house is built by James," the act or operation of building is represented *as completed*.

3. To this class belong all verbs, which, by the figure called *vision* (1040, 5), are used in the *present tense to express what is past*. Thus, actively, "Cæsar leaves Gaul, crosses the Rubicon, enters Italy." Passively, "Gaul is left by Cæsar, the Rubicon is crossed, Italy is entered." In all these, used in this figurative way, the present-passive expresses the same thing as the present-active.

II. The *second* class of verbs, consists of those (perhaps the greater number) whose present-passive implies that the act expressed, by the active voice has ceased, and the effect or result only remains as a finished act, and as such is predicated of the subject. Thus, "The house is built." Here it is implied that the act of *building is completed*, and has ceased, and the *result*, expressed by *built*, is predicated of the house. In all verbs of this kind, the past participle, after the verb *to be*, has reference to the *state* resulting from the act as predicated of the subject of the verb, and *not to the act* itself. Strictly speaking, then, the past participle with the verb *to be* is not the present tense in the passive voice of verbs thus used ; that is, this form does not express passively the *doing* of the act. These verbs either have no present-passive, or it is made by annexing the *participle* in *ing*, in its *passive* sense, to the verb *to be* ; as, "The house is *building*."

It is supposed by some that "*is built*," though in the form of the present passive, really is a present-perfect ; because it represents the act as completed, and because the perfect-definite, in Latin, is often translated by this form into English. Due consideration, however, I think, will show that it *differs* quite as much *from the present-perfect* as it does from the *present*. To be satisfied of this, compare the following expressions : "This garment is *torn*," merely asserts the present *state* of the garment, with no reference to the *act* but what is implied. But when we say, "This garment *has been torn*," the reference is chiefly to the *act* as having been done, with no reference to the *state* of the garment but what is implied. The one asserts that the garment remains torn, the other does not—it may have been mended ; the latter is the regular passive of the present-perfect active, the former is not. This will perhaps be more clearly perceived by means of another example : "This house *has been painted*, but the paint is worn off." This is good English. But if we

say, "This house *is painted*, but the paint is worn off," we would assert a contradiction.

There is properly *no passive* form, in English, *corresponding to the progressive* form in the *active* voice, except where it is made by the participle *ing*, in a passive sense; thus, "The house is building"—"The garments are making"—"Wheat is selling," etc. An attempt has been made by some grammarians, of late, to banish such expressions from the language, though they have been used in all time past by the best writers, and to justify and defend a clumsy solecism, which has been recently introduced chiefly through the newspaper press, but which has gained such currency, and is becoming so familiar to the ear, that it seems likely to prevail, with all its uncouthness and deformity. I refer to such expressions as, "The house is being built"—"The letter is being written"—"The mine is being worked"—"The news is being telegraphed," etc., etc.

Respecting this mode of expression, it may be noticed—

1. That it *had no existence* in the language till *within the last fifty years*. This, indeed, would not make the expression wrong, were it otherwise unexceptionable; but its recent origin shows that it is not, as is pretended, a *necessary* form.

2. This form of expression, when analyzed, is found not to express what it is intended to express, and would be used only by such as are either ignorant of its import, or are careless and loose in their use of language. To make this manifest, let it be considered, first, that there is *no progressive form* of the verb *to be*, and no need of it; hence, there is no such expression in English as *is being*. Of course the expression "*is being* built," for example, is not a compound of *is being* and *built*, but of *is* and *being built*; that is, of the verb *to be* and the *present participle passive*. Now, let it be observed, that the only verbs in which the present participle passive expresses a continued action are those mentioned above as the first class, in which the regular passive form expresses a *continuance* of the action; as, *is loved*, *is desired*, etc., and in which, of course, the form in question (*is being built*) is not required. Nobody would think of saying, "He is being loved"—"This result is being desired."

In all other verbs, then, the present participle passive, like the present tense, in the second class of verbs mentioned above, expresses, *not a continued action*, or the *continued receiving of an action*, but that the action had ceased, and the *result* only exists in a finished



state. Thus, "Our arrangements *being made*, we departed."—The house *being finished*, was immediately occupied."—"Our work *being finished*, we may rest," etc. In all such expressions, the present participle passive represents the action as now *finished*, and existing only in its *results* (509). This finished act, then, can not be made *unfinished* and *progressive*, by being asserted of a subject, which is all the verb *to be*, as a copula, can express. Hence it is manifest that *is being built*, if it mean any thing, can mean nothing more than *is built*, which is not the idea intended to be expressed.

3. For the same reason that *is being built*, etc., is contended for as a proper expression, we should contend also for "Has been being built."—"Had been being built."—"Shall have been being built."—"Might have been being built."—"To be being built."—"To have been being built."—"Being being built."—"Having been being built." When all these shall have been introduced, our language will be rich indeed !

4. The use of this form is justified only by *condemning an established usage* of the language ; namely, the passive sense in some verbs of the participle in *ing* (459). In reference to this it is flippantly asked, "What does the house build ?"—"What does the letter write," etc.—taking for granted, without attempting to prove, that the participle in *ing* can not have a passive sense in any verb. The following are a few examples from writers of the best reputation, which this novelty would condemn : "While the ceremony was performing."—*Tom. Brown*. "The court was then holding."—*Sir G. McKenzie*. "And still be doing, never done."—*Butler*. "The books are selling."—*Allen's Grammar*. "To know nothing of what is transacting in the regions above us."—*Dr. Blair*. "The spot where this new and strange tragedy was acting."—*E. Everett*. "The fortress was building."—*Irving*. "An attempt is making in the English parliament."—*D. Webster*. "The church now erecting in the city of New York."—*N. A. Review*. "These things were transacting in England."—*Bancroft*.

5. This new doctrine is in *opposition* to the almost *unanimous judgment* of the *most distinguished grammarians* and critics, who have considered the subject, and expressed their views concerning it. The following are a specimen : "Expressions of this kind are condemned by some critics ; but the usage is unquestionably of far better authority, and (according to my apprehension) in far better taste, than the more complex phraseology which some late writers adopt in its stead ;

as, 'The books are now being sold.'—*Goold Brown*. "As to the notion of introducing a new and more complex passive form of conjugation, as, 'The bridge *is being built*,' 'The bridge *was being built*,' and so forth, it is one of the most absurd and monstrous innovations ever thought of." "The work *is now being published*" is certainly no better English than, "The work *was being published, has been being published, had been being published, shall or will be being published, shall or will have been being published*," and so on through all the moods and tenses. What a language shall we have when our verbs are thus conjugated!—*Brown's Gr. of Eng. Gr.*, p. 361. De War observes: "The participle in *ing* is also passive in many instances; as, 'The house is building.'—'I heard of a plan forming,' etc.—Quoted in *Freese's Grammar*, page 49. "It would be an absurdity, indeed, to give up the only way we have of denoting the incomplete state of action by a passive form" (viz., by the participle in *ing* in the passive sense).—*Arnold's English Grammar*, p. 46. "The present participle is often used passively; as, the 'The ship is building.' The form of expression, *is being built, is being committed*, etc., is almost universally condemned by grammarians, but it is sometimes met with in respectable writers; it occurs most frequently in newspaper paragraphs, and in hasty compositions. See Worcester's Universal and Critical Dictionary."—*Weld's Grammar*, pp. 118 and 180. "When we say, 'The house is building,' the advocates of the new theory ask, "Building what?" We might ask, in turn, when you say, 'The field ploughs well,'—'Ploughs what?'—'Wheat sells well,'—'Sells what?' If usage allows us to say, 'Wheat sells at a dollar,' in a sense that is not active, why may we not say, 'Wheat is selling at a dollar,' in a sense that is not active?"—*Hart's Gram.*, p. 76. "The prevailing practice of the best authors is in favor of the simple form; as, 'The house is building.'"—*Wells's School Gram.*, p. 148. "Several other expressions of this sort now and then occur, such as the new-fangled and most uncouth solecism '*is being done*,' for the good old English idiom '*is doing*'—an absurd periphrasis driving out a pointed and pithy turn of the English language."—*N. A. Review*, quoted by *Mr. Wells*, p. 148. "The phrase '*is being built*,' and others of a similar kind, have been for a few years insinuating themselves into our language; still they are not English."—*Harrison's Rise, Progress, and Present Structure of the English Language*. "This mode of expression [the house is being built] is becoming quite common. It is liable, however, to several important objections. It appears formal and pedantic. It has not, as far as I know, the support of any respectable

grammarian. The easy and natural expression is, 'The house is building.'"—*Prof. J. W. Gibbs.*

### *Analysis of the English Verb.*

The analysis of the verb shows that, except for convenience in the use of established idioms, there are no more than *four* radical forms, viz :—

- I. { *love,*  
     *write.* } the simple name of the act, which has three uses.

1. *Connected directly* with a subject, to affirm a present act, or state ; as, I love.

2. Used *indefinitely*, to indicate an act or state, in a general sense, and depending upon some other word, generally a verb ; as, "He desires *to write*" (infinitive use).

3. To express a simple *command* ; as, *write* (thou).

II. The *participle* in *ing*, denoting the action or state, as continuing, or incomplete (397, 456). In the progressive form, as, "I am *writing* ;" the participle is an attributive of the subject.

III. The *past tense*, in the regular conjugation, ending in *ed* (meaning *did*), and in the strong conjugation, changing, in some instances, the form of the root ; as—Present, *write* ; past, *wrote*.

IV. The *fourth* form (participial) takes, in regular verbs *ed*, and in irregular verbs sometimes changes the root ; as—Present, *love* ; part., *loved*. Present, *write* ; part., *written*. This form, in transitive verbs, is used in both an active and a passive sense.

1. The *past participle active* is never used except when preceded by *have*, and denotes the completion of the act it expresses, referring to the subject of the sentence, while the word *have* expresses its complete possession by that subject ; as, "I have written," i.e., I am in possession of (have) written (by having performed the act). It is no longer in the future. I have attended to it. It is mine. I *have* written. In this sense, written is a *verbal*—the object of the verb *have*.

2. In the *passive voice* this fourth form (loved, written) refers to some person or thing as the receiver to the act ; as, "He was a *man loved* by all." After the verb *to be*, the past participle passive is simply an attribute (see 508,) and till the pupil is thoroughly familiar with the nature and idiomatic use of the so-called passive conjugation, should always be so analyzed ; thus, "He is loved." "He" is the subject ; "*is* loved," is the predicate, of which "*is*" is the affirmer

(copula), and "loved" the attribute. "Loved" is found in the past participle passive, from love, loving, etc., and limits "*he*," which is also its subject. This is, strictly speaking, the *only* form in the passive voice.

See "Analysis and Composition."

## X. FIRST AND SECOND, etc.

*Two* or more *adjectives* connected, without an article intervening, belong to the *same noun*; as, "A red and white rose"—that is, *one* rose partly red and partly white. Hence, care should be taken to see that the qualities expressed by adjectives so used be consistent, or such as may be found in one object. Thus, it would be improper to say, "An old and young man"—"A round and square hole."—"A hot and cold spring"—because a man can not be *old* and *young* at the same time, nor a hole *round* and *square*, nor a spring *hot* and *cold*. Hence—

When *two* or more *adjectives* express qualities that belong to *different objects* of the same name, and that name expressed only with the last, the article should be placed before each adjective. Thus, "A red and a white rose," means *two* roses—one red, and one white. In this case, it makes no difference whether the qualities expressed by the adjective be consistent or not, since they belong to different individuals. Thus, we can say, "A young and an old man"—"A round and a square hole"—"A hot and a cold spring"—that is, one young man, and another old, etc. It is therefore manifest that we can not properly say, "The first and second page"—"The fifth and sixth verse"—"The Old and New Testament"—because no page can be at once *first* and *second*—no verse *fifth* and *sixth*—and no Testament *Old* and *New*. It is equally improper in principle to say, "The first and second pages"—"The fifth and sixth verses," because two adjectives can not be joined with a word *jointly* which can not be joined with it *separately*. We can not say, "The *first pages*," nor "the *second pages*," when we mean but *one first* and *one second*. Besides, when the ellipsis is supplied, it stands "the *first page* and the *second page*," and the omission of the first noun can not, on any correct principle, affect the number of the *second*. In many cases, too, the use of the plural, if it would relieve from the absurdity of uniting

inconsistent qualities in an object, will as certainly lead into ambiguity. For if, to avoid the absurdity of saying "the old and young man," we say "the old and young men," the latter expression may mean fifty, or a hundred, or any number of men, instead of two—one young and one old. Notwithstanding, however, usage has prevailed over principle in this as well as in other cases; and it has become quite common to say, "The first and second verses"—"The Old and New Testaments"—"The hot and cold springs"—"The indicative and subjunctive moods," etc. Where no ambiguity exists in the use of such expressions, they must be tolerated. The correct expression, however, when *more than one* is intended, is made by repeating the article with the adjective, and retaining the noun in the singular; thus, "The first and the second verse"—"The Old and the New Testament"—"The hot and the cold spring," etc. Or, "The first verse and the second," etc.

---

## XI. TWO FIRST—THREE LAST, etc.

The expressions, *two first*, *three last*, and the like, have been opposed and ridiculed by some, on the ground, as they allege, that there can be only *one* first, and *one* last. The objectors evidently have not well considered their position; for—

1. The terms *first* and *last* do not necessarily mean only *one*. *First*, according to Webster, means, "*preceding all others.*" The *two first*, then, means the two preceding all others, and the *three last* means the three succeeding all others—expressions in which there is surely nothing either ridiculous or absurd.

2. If we say, "The first *days* of summer"—"The first *years* of our life"—"The last *days* of Pompeii," which nobody doubts, then, it is not true that there can be only *one* first and *one* last; and so the ground of objection fails. If we can say, "The last *days* of summer," why not the *two last*, or the *three last*?

3. The expression objected to *is used* by the *best authorities* in the language, and has been in use hundreds of years; and therefore, on the well-known maxim, "*Usage is the law of language,*" if it were absurd, it can not be rejected. The following are examples, most of them mentioned by Mr. Wells: "The four first acts."—*Bp. Berkeley*.—"The three first monarchies."—*Warburton*.—"The two first persons."—*Latham's Eng. Gram.*—"My two last letters."—*Ad-dison*.—"The two first lines."—*Blair*.—"The three first generations."

—*E. Everett*.—"The two first years."—*Bancroft*.—"The two first days."—*Iving*.—"The two first cantos."—*A. H. Everett*.—"The four first centuries."—*Prescott*.

4. This *expression* is, in some cases, evidently *better* than the other. It is probably always so, when the number characterized as *first* or *last* constitutes a majority of the whole. When we say, "the first four," there is evidently a reference to a second four, or a last four. But if the first four constitute a majority of the whole, there remains no second four to justify the reference. Thus, when we say, "The first four acts of a play were well performed," there remains only *one* to which any other reference can be made. On the other hand, when a whole is divided into equal portions, each containing a certain number, as the recurrence of the census every five years—of the Olympic games every four—of the sabbath every seven days—of four lines in each stanza of a poem, and the like—then the expression *first four, second four, last four, etc.*, is *preferable*, because it implies a reference to other portions of equal extent. Also, even when there is no such reference, it is often properly used, especially when the number is *large*; as, "The first hundred"—"The last thousand," etc.

5. Several *distinguished scholars* and grammarians have examined this point, and expressed their *views* respecting it as follows:—"It has been doubted whether the *cardinal* should *precede* or *follow* the ordinal numeral."—Atterbury says in one of his letters to Pope: "Not but that the four first lines are good."—"We conceive the expression to be quite correct, though the other form be often employed to denote the same conception."—*Crombie's English Syntax*, p. 240.—"Some grammarians object to the use of the numerals *two, four, etc.*, before the adjectives *first* and *last*. There seems, however, to be no good reason for the objection, and the expressions *two first, two last, etc.*, are fully sanctioned by good usage."—*Wells's Grammar*, p. 137.—The following is a note on the same page:—"It has been fashionable of late to write the *first three*, and so on, instead of the *three first*. People write in this way to avoid the seeming absurdity of implying that more than *one* thing can be *first*; but it is at least equally as absurd to talk about the *first four*, when, as often happens, there is no second four."—*Arnold*.—"Surely, if there can be only *one* last, *one* first, there can be only 'a last one,' 'a first one.' I need only observe, that usage is decidedly in favor of the former phraseology."—*Grant*.

"The only argument against the use of *two first*, and in favor of

substituting *first two*, so far as I can recollect, is this:—In the nature of things, there can be only *one* first and *one* last in any series of things. But is it true that there can never be more than *one first*, and *one last*? If it be so, then the adjectives *first* and *last* must always be of the *singular* number, and can never agree with nouns in the *plural*. 'We are told that the *first years* of a lawyer's practice are seldom very lucrative.'—'The poet tells us that his *first essays* were severely handled by the critics, but his *last efforts* have been well received.' Examples like these might be produced, without number; they occur everywhere, in all our standard writers. \* \* \* When a numeral adjective, and a qualifying epithet, both refer to the same noun, the *general rule* of the English language is to place the numeral *first* then the qualifying epithet, and then the noun. Thus, we say, 'The two wise men'—'The two tall men,' and not 'The *wise two* men'—'The *tall two* men.' And the same rule holds in superlatives. We say, 'The two wisest men'—'The two tallest men,' and not 'The *wisest two* men'—'The *tallest two* men.' Now if this be admitted to be the general rule of the English language, then it follows that *generally* we should say, 'The two *first*'—'The two *last*,' etc., rather than 'The *first two*'—'The *last two*,' etc. This, I say, should *generally* be the order of the words. Yet there are some cases in which it seems preferable to say, 'The *first two*'—'The *last two*,' etc."—*Dr. Murdoch.*

## XII.—ABBREVIATIONS.

[The following list contains those most commonly in use:—]

A. or Ans.	Answer.	[Academy.	A. M.	In the year of the world. <sup>5</sup>
A. A. S.	Fellow of the American		Amt.	Amount.
A.B. or B.A.	Bachelor of Arts. <sup>1</sup>		Anon.	Anonymous.
Abp.	Archbishop.		Apr.	April.
Acct.	Account.		Ark.	Arkansas.
A. D.	In the year of our Lord. <sup>3</sup>		Atty.	Attorney.
Admr.	Administrator.		Aug.	August.
Ala.	Alabama.		Bal.	Balance.
A. M. or M. A.	Master of Arts. <sup>3</sup>		B.C. or A.C.	Before Christ. <sup>6</sup>
A. M.	In the forenoon. <sup>4</sup>		Bp.	Bishop.
			Cal.	California.
			Capt.	Captain.

<sup>1</sup> *Artium Baccalaureus.*

<sup>2</sup> *Anno Domini.*

<sup>3</sup> *Artium Magister.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ante Meridiem.*

<sup>5</sup> *Anno Mundi.*

<sup>6</sup> *Ante Christum.*

# INDEX

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy, Peace.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy, Sea.

Index, Italy, Sea.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy, Miss.

Index, Italy, Miss.

Index, Italy, Miss.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy, Parliament.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy, New.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy, Land.

Index, Italy, New Eng.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy.

Index, Italy, New Style.



N. W.	North-west.	S. C.	South Carolina.
N. Y.	New York.	S. E.	South-east.
O.	Ohio.	Sec.	Secretary.
Obj.	Objective; Objection.	Sect.	Section.
Obt.	Obedient.	Sen.	Senator; Senior.
Oct.	October.	Sept.	September.
O. S.	Old Style.	Serg.	Sergeant.
P., pp.	Page, pages.	Servt.	Servant.
Pa. or Penn.	Pennsylvania.	ss. or viz.	Namely or to wit. <sup>18</sup>
per. or pr.	By the; as, per yard.	St.	Saint; Street.
Per cent.	By the hundred.	S. T. D.	Doctor of Divinity. <sup>19</sup>
Phila.	Philadelphia.	S. T. P.	Professor of Theology. <sup>20</sup>
P. M.	Postmaster.	Supt.	Superintendent.
P. M.	Afternoon. <sup>15</sup>	S. W.	South-west.
P. O.	Post-Office.	Tenn.	Tennessee.
pp.	Population.	Tex.	Texas.
Pres.	President.	Ult.	Last or the last month. <sup>21</sup>
Prof.	Professor.	U. S.	United States.
P. S.	Postscript. <sup>16</sup>	U. S. A.	United States of America,
P.	Psalm.		or U. S. Army.
Pb. Doc.	Public Documents.	Va.	Virginia.
Q. or Qu.	Question. [strated. <sup>17</sup>	Via.	By the way of.
Q. E. D.	Which was to be demon-	Vol., Vols.	Volume, Volumes.
Qr.	Quarter.	V. P.	Vice-President.
Re'd Pay't.	Received Payment.	Vs.	Against; in opposition. <sup>22</sup>
Rep.	Representative.	Vt.	Vermont.
Rev.	Reverend; Revelation.	W.	West.
R. I.	Rhode Island.	W. I.	West Indies.
R. R.	Railroad.	Wis.	Wisconsin.
Rt. Hon.	Right Honorable.	Wt.	Weight.
S.	South; Shilling; Sign.	Yr.	Year.
S. A.	South America.		

<sup>15</sup> *Post Meriditem.*<sup>16</sup> *Post scriptum.*<sup>17</sup> *Quod erat demonstrandum.*<sup>18</sup> *Videlicet*<sup>19</sup> *Sanctus Theologia Doctor.*<sup>20</sup> *Sanctus Theologia Professor.*<sup>21</sup> *Ultimo.*<sup>22</sup> *Versus.*

### XIII. WORDS AND PHRASES FROM FOREIGN LANGUAGES.

#### *French Words and Phrases.*

<i>Apropos</i>	[ap' ro po],	to the point.
<i>Beau idéal</i>	[bō i dē' al],	a mode of beauty.
<i>Beau monde</i>	[bō mond'],	the fashionable world.
<i>Coup de main</i>	[coo de mang'],	a dextrous movement.
<i>Coup de soleil</i>	[coo de so lāle'],	a stroke of the sun.

BALCONY COLLECTION  
CURRICULUM LIBRARY

Tx  
425.1  
B937  
Cp.1

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD

